<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>10.3.1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release date</td>
<td>November 2018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Licence</td>
<td>LGPL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Copyright ©2018 Peter Corke
peter.i.corke@gmail.com
[http://www.petercorke.com](http://www.petercorke.com)
Preface

This, the tenth major release of the Toolbox, representing over twenty five years of continuous development and a substantial level of maturity. This version corresponds to the second edition of the book “Robotics, Vision & Control” published in June 2017 – RVC2.

This MATLAB® Toolbox has a rich collection of functions that are useful for the study and simulation of robots: arm-type robot manipulators and mobile robots. For robot manipulators, functions include kinematics, trajectory generation, dynamics and control. For mobile robots, functions include path planning, kinodynamic planning, localization, map building and simultaneous localization and mapping (SLAM).

The Toolbox makes strong use of classes to represent robots and such things as sensors and maps. It includes Simulink® models to describe the evolution of arm or mobile robot state over time for a number of classical control strategies. The Toolbox also provides functions for manipulating and converting between datatypes such as vectors, rotation matrices, unit-quaternions, quaternions, homogeneous transformations and twists which are necessary to represent position and orientation in 2- and 3-dimensions.

The code is written in a straightforward manner which allows for easy understanding, perhaps at the expense of computational efficiency. If you feel strongly about computational efficiency then you can always rewrite the function to be more efficient, compile the M-file using the MATLAB compiler, or create a MEX version.

The bulk of this manual is auto-generated from the comments in the MATLAB code itself. For elaboration on the underlying principles, extensive illustrations and worked examples please consult “Robotics, Vision & Control, second edition” which provides a detailed discussion (720 pages, nearly 500 figures and over 1000 code examples) of how to use the Toolbox functions to solve many types of problems in robotics.
## Functions by category

### Homogeneous transformations 3D

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>angvec2r</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>angvec2tr</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eul2r</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eul2tr</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ishomog</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isrot</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isunit</td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oa2r</td>
<td>184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oa2tr</td>
<td>184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rotx</td>
<td>268</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>roty</td>
<td>269</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rotz</td>
<td>269</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rpy2r</td>
<td>270</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rpy2tr</td>
<td>271</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tr2angvec</td>
<td>391</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tr2eul</td>
<td>393</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tr2rpy</td>
<td>394</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>transl</td>
<td>398</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trchain</td>
<td>399</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trexp</td>
<td>401</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trinterp</td>
<td>403</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trlog</td>
<td>404</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trnorm</td>
<td>404</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trotx</td>
<td>406</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>troty</td>
<td>406</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trotz</td>
<td>407</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trprint</td>
<td>410</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trscale</td>
<td>411</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rot2</td>
<td>268</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>transl2</td>
<td>398</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trchain2</td>
<td>400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trexp2</td>
<td>402</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trinterp2</td>
<td>403</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trot2</td>
<td>405</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trprint2</td>
<td>411</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Homogeneous transformation utilities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>r2t</td>
<td>254</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rt2tr</td>
<td>276</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t2r</td>
<td>388</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tr2rt</td>
<td>395</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Homogeneous points and lines

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>e2h</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h2e</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>homline</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>homtrans</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Differential motion

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>delta2tr</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eul2jac</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rpy2jac</td>
<td>270</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skewa</td>
<td>364</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skew</td>
<td>363</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tr2delta</td>
<td>392</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tr2jac</td>
<td>394</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vexa</td>
<td>450</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vex</td>
<td>449</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wtrans</td>
<td>482</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Trajectory generation
ctraj .............................................. 78
jtraj .............................................. 123
lspb .............................................. 141
mstraj ............................................ 171
mtraj .............................................. 173
tpoly .............................................. 391
trinterp2 ...................................... 403
trinterp ......................................... 403

Pose representation classes
Quaternion ..................................... 243
RTBPose ......................................... 278
SE2 ................................................. 290
SE3 ................................................. 298
SO2 ............................................... 365
SO3 ................................................. 372
Twist ............................................. 412
UnitQuaternion .................................. 423

Serial-link manipulator
DHFactor ........................................ 79
Link ................................................ 130
PrismaticMDH ................................... 237
Prismatic ......................................... 235
RevoluteMDH .................................... 265
Revolute ........................................... 263
SerialLink.friction ................................ 327
SerialLink.nofriction ............................ 348
SerialLink.perturb ................................ 351
SerialLink.plot ................................... 351
SerialLink.teach .................................. 359
SerialLink ......................................... 317
mdl_irb140 ........................................ 147
mdl_jaco .......................................... 149
mdl_mico ........................................... 151
mdl_nao ............................................ 153
mdl_p8 ............................................. 155
mdl_panda ......................................... 156
mdl_phantomx ..................................... 156
mdl_planar1 ....................................... 157
mdl_planar2 ....................................... 158
mdl_planar3 ....................................... 159
mdl_puma560akb .................................. 160
mdl_puma560 ..................................... 159
mdl_quadrotor .................................... 161
mdl_sawyer ....................................... 163
mdl_stanford_mdh ................................ 165
mdl_stanford ..................................... 164
mdl_twolink_mdh ................................ 166
mdl_twolink_sym ................................ 167
mdl_twolink ...................................... 165
mdl_ur10 ......................................... 168
mdl_ur3 ............................................ 168
mdl_ur5 ............................................. 169
models ............................................. 170

Kinematics
DHFactor ........................................ 79
ETS2 .............................................. 100
ETS3 .............................................. 108
SerialLink.fkine .................................. 327
SerialLink Ikine6s ................................ 335
SerialLink.ikine ................................... 332
SerialLink.jacob0 ................................ 343
SerialLink.jacob .................................. 344
SerialLink.maniply ............................... 346
jsingu ............................................. 123
trchain2 .......................................... 400
trchain ........................................... 399

Dynamics
SerialLink.accel .................................. 320
SerialLink.cinertia ................................ 321
SerialLink.coriolis ................................ 323
SerialLink.fdyn ................................... 325
SerialLink.gravity ................................ 330
SerialLink.inertial ................................ 340
SerialLink.itorque ................................ 342
SerialLink.me ..................................... 358

Models
mdl_KR5 .......................................... 149
mdl_LWR ............................................ 150
mdl_S4ABB2p8 ................................... 162
mdl_ball .......................................... 142
mdl_baxter ........................................ 143
mdl_cobra600 ..................................... 144
mdl_coil .......................................... 144
mdl_hyper2d ...................................... 146
mdl_hyper3d ...................................... 146
mdl_irb140_mdh .................................. 148

Robotics Toolbox 10.3.1 for MATLAB®
6 ©Peter Corke 2018
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code generation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CodeGenerator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ccodefunctionstring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>distributeblocks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>doesblockexist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multidprintf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>simulinkext</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mobile robot</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bicycle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LandmarkMap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Navigation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RandomPath</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RangeBearingSensor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sensor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unicycle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plot_vehicle</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Localization</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EKF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ParticleFilter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PoseGraph</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Path planning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bug2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DXform</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dstar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lattice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RRT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>makemap</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Graphics</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>circle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mplot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plot2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plot_arrow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plot_box</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plot_circle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plot_ellipse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plot_homline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plot_point</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plot_poly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plot_sphere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plotp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plotvol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qplot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tranimate2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tranimate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trplot2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trplot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xaxis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xyzlabel</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Utility</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Animate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PGraph</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plucker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polygon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RTBPlot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>about</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>angdiff</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bresenham</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chi2inv_rtb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>colnorm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diff2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>distancexfm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>edgelist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gauss2d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isunit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isvec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>numcols</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>numrows</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>peak2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>peak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pickregion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>polydiff</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>randinit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>runscript</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stlRead</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>th_optparse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Robotics Toolbox 10.3.1 for MATLAB® 7
Copyright © Peter Corke 2018
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Demonstrations</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rtbdemo</td>
<td>plotbotopt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Contents

Preface ............................................. 2  
Functions by category .............................. 5  

1 Introduction ........................................ 8  
1.1 Changes in RTB 10 ............................... 8  
  1.1.1 Incompatible changes ........................ 8  
  1.1.2 New features ............................... 9  
  1.1.3 Enhancements .............................. 10  
1.2 Changes in RTB 10.3 ............................ 12  
1.3 Changes in RTB 10.2 ............................ 14  
1.4 How to obtain the Toolbox ..................... 14  
  1.4.1 From .matbx file ........................... 14  
  1.4.2 From .zip file ............................. 15  
  1.4.3 MATLAB Online™ ........................... 15  
  1.4.4 Simulink® ................................ 16  
  1.4.5 Notes on implementation and versions ...... 19  
  1.4.6 Documentation ............................ 19  
1.5 Compatible MATLAB versions ................... 20  
1.6 Use in teaching ............................... 20  
1.7 Use in research ............................... 20  
1.8 Support ....................................... 20  
1.9 Related software ............................. 21  
  1.9.1 Robotics System Toolbox™ ................. 21  
  1.9.2 Octave .................................. 21  
  1.9.3 Machine Vision toolbox ................. 21  
1.10 Contributing to the Toolboxes ............... 22  
1.11 Acknowledgements ........................... 22  

2 Functions and classes ............................ 24  
  about ......................................... 24  
  angdiff ..................................... 24  
  angvec2r ................................... 25  
  angvec2tr .................................. 26  
  Animate .................................... 26  
  Arbotix ...................................... 28  
  Bicycle ...................................... 37  
  bresenham .................................. 42  
  Bug2 ........................................ 42

Robotics Toolbox 10.3.1 for MATLAB® 9  
Copyright © Peter Corke 2018
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ccodefunctionstring</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chi2inv_rtb</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>circle</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CodeGenerator</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>colnorm</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ctraj</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>delta2tr</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DHFactor</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diff2</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>distance2form</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>distributeblocks</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>doesblockexist</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dstar</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DXform</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e2h</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>edgelist</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EKF</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETS2</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETS3</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eul2jac</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eul2tr</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eul2tr</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gauss2d</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h2e</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>homline</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>homtrans</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ishomog</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ishomog2</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isrot</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isrot2</td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isunit</td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isvec</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jsingu</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jtraj</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LandmarkMap</td>
<td>124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lattice</td>
<td>127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Link</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ls pb</td>
<td>141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>makemap</td>
<td>142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mdl_ball</td>
<td>142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mdl_baxter</td>
<td>143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mdl_cobra600</td>
<td>144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mdl_coil</td>
<td>144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mdl_fanuc10L</td>
<td>145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mdl_hyper2d</td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mdl_hyper3d</td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mdl_irb140</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mdl_irb140_mdh</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mdl_jaco</td>
<td>149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mdl_KR5</td>
<td>149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plot_poly</td>
<td>215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plot_sphere</td>
<td>216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plot_vehicle</td>
<td>217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plotbotopt</td>
<td>218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plotp</td>
<td>219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plotvol</td>
<td>219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plucker</td>
<td>219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>polydiff</td>
<td>228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polygon</td>
<td>229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PoseGraph</td>
<td>234</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prismatic</td>
<td>235</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PrismaticMDH</td>
<td>237</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRM</td>
<td>240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qplot</td>
<td>243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quaternion</td>
<td>243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r2t</td>
<td>254</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>randinit</td>
<td>254</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RandomPath</td>
<td>255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RangeBearingSensor</td>
<td>258</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Revolute</td>
<td>263</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RevoluteMDH</td>
<td>265</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rot2</td>
<td>268</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rotx</td>
<td>268</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>roty</td>
<td>269</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rotz</td>
<td>269</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rpy2jac</td>
<td>270</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rpy2r</td>
<td>270</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rpy2tr</td>
<td>271</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RRT</td>
<td>272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rt2tr</td>
<td>276</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rtbdemo</td>
<td>276</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RTBPlot</td>
<td>277</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RTBPose</td>
<td>278</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>runscript</td>
<td>289</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SE2</td>
<td>290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SE3</td>
<td>298</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sensor</td>
<td>315</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SerialLink</td>
<td>317</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>simulinext</td>
<td>362</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skew</td>
<td>363</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skew3</td>
<td>364</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SO2</td>
<td>365</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SO3</td>
<td>372</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>startup_rtb</td>
<td>387</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stilRead</td>
<td>387</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>symexpr2slblock</td>
<td>388</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t2r</td>
<td>388</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tb_optparse</td>
<td>389</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tpoly</td>
<td>391</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tr2angvec</td>
<td>391</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


CONTENTS

tr2delta .................................................. 392
tr2eul .................................................. 393
tr2jac .................................................. 394
tr2rpy .................................................. 394
t2rt ..................................................... 395
tranimate .............................................. 396
tranimate2 ............................................. 397
transl .................................................. 398
transl2 .................................................. 398
trchain .................................................. 399
trchain2 .................................................. 400
trexp .................................................... 401
trexp2 ................................................... 402
trinterp .................................................. 403
trinterp2 ................................................. 403
trlog ..................................................... 404
tnorm ..................................................... 404
trot2 ..................................................... 405
trotx ..................................................... 406
troty ..................................................... 406
trotz ..................................................... 407
trplot .................................................... 407
trplot2 ................................................... 409
trprint ................................................... 410
trprint2 ................................................... 411
trscale ................................................... 411
Twist ..................................................... 412
Unicycle ................................................ 418
unit ....................................................... 423
UnitQuaternion .......................................... 423
Vehicle ................................................... 441
vex ....................................................... 449
vexa ...................................................... 450
VREP ...................................................... 451
VREP_arm .................................................. 467
VREP_camera ............................................ 471
VREP_mirror ............................................. 475
VREP_obj .................................................. 479
wtrans .................................................... 482
xaxis ....................................................... 483
xyzlabel .................................................. 483
yaxis ....................................................... 483
Chapter 1

Introduction

1.1 Changes in RTB 10

RTB 10 is largely backward compatible with RTB 9.

1.1.1 Incompatible changes

- The class `Vehicle` no longer represents an Ackerman/bicycle vehicle model. `Vehicle` is now an abstract superclass of `Bicycle` and `Unicycle` which represent car-like and differentially-steered vehicles respectively.
- The class `LandmarkMap` replaces `PointMap`.
- Robot-arm forward kinematics now returns an `SE3` object rather than a $4 \times 4$ matrix.
- The `Quaternion` class used to represent both unit and non-unit quaternions which was untidy and confusing. They are now represented by two classes `UnitQuaternion` and `Quaternion`.
- The method to compute the arm-robot Jacobian in the end-effector frame has been renamed from `jacobn` to `jacobe`.
- The path planners, subclasses of `Navigation`, the method to find a path has been renamed from `path` to `query`.
- The Jacobian methods for the `RangeBearingSensor` class have been renamed to $H_x$, $H_p$, $H_w$, $G_x$, $G_z$.
- The function `se2` has been replaced with the class `SE2`. On some platforms (Mac) this is the same file. Broadly similar in function, the former returns a $3 \times 3$ matrix, the latter returns an object.
- The function `se3` has been replaced with the class `SE3`. On some platforms (Mac) this is the same file. Broadly similar in function, the former returns a $4 \times 4$ matrix, the latter returns an object.
These changes are summarized in Table 1.1.

### 1.1.2 New features

- **SerialLinkplot3d()** renders realistic looking 3D models of robots. STL models from the package ARTE by Arturo Gil ([https://arvc.umh.es/arte](https://arvc.umh.es/arte)) are now included with RTB, by kind permission.

- **ETS2 and ETS3** packages provide a gentle (non Denavit-Hartenberg) introduction to robot arm kinematics, see Chapter 7 for details.

- Distribution as an `.mltbx` format file.

- A comprehensive set of functions to handle rotations and transformations in 2D, these functions end with the suffix 2, eg. `transl2`, `rot2`, `trot2` etc.

- Matrix exponentials are handled by `trexp`, `trlog`, `trexp2` and `trlog2`.

- The class **Twist** represents a twist in 3D or 2D. Respectively, it is a 6-vector representation of the Lie algebra `se(3)`, or a 3-vector representation of `se(2)`.

- The method **SerialLink.jointdynamics** returns a vector of `tf` objects representing the dynamics of the joint actuators.

- The class **Lattice** is a simple kino-dynamic lattice path planner.

- The class **PoseGraph** solves graph relaxation problems and can be used for bundle adjustment and pose graph SLAM.

- The class **Plucker** represents a line using Plücker coordinates.

- The folder **RST** contains Live Scripts that demonstrate some capabilities of the MATLAB Robotics System Toolbox™.

- The folder **symbolic** contains Live Scripts that demonstrate use of the MATLAB Symbolic Math Toolbox™ for deriving Jacobians used in EKF SLAM (vehicle and sensor), inverse kinematics for a 2-joint planar arm and solving for roll-pitch-yaw angles given a rotation matrix.

- All the robot models, prefixed by `mdl_`, now reside in the folder **models**.
• New robot models include Universal Robotics UR3, UR5 and UR10; and Kuka light weight robot arm.

• A new folder data now holds various data files as used by examples in RVC2: STL models, occupancy grids, Hershey font, Toro and G2O data files.

Since its inception RTB has used matrices\(^1\) to represent rotations and transformations in 2D and 3D. A trajectory, or sequence, was represented by a 3-dimensional matrix, eg. \(4 \times 4 \times N\). In RTB10 a set of classes have been introduced to represent orientation and pose in 2D and 3D: \(SO_2\), \(SE_2\), \(SO_3\), \(SE_3\), Twist and UnitQuaternion. These classes are fairly polymorphic, that is, they share many methods and operators\(^2\). All have a number of static methods that serve as constructors from particular representations. A trajectory is represented by a vector of these objects which makes code easier to read and understand. Overloaded operators are used so the classes behave in a similar way to native matrices\(^3\). The relationship between the classical Toolbox functions and the new classes are shown in Fig 1.1.

You can continue to use the classical functions. The new classes have methods with the names of classical functions to provide similar functionality. For instance

\begin{verbatim}
>> T = transl(1,2,3); % create a 4x4 matrix
>> trprint(T) % invoke the function trprint
>> T = SE3(1,2,3); % create an SE3 object
>> trprint(T) % invoke the method trprint
>> T.T % the equivalent 4x4 matrix
>> double(T) % the equivalent 4x4 matrix

>> T = SE3(1,2,3); % create a pure translation SE3 object
>> T2 = T*T; % the result is an SE3 object
>> T3 = trinterp(T, T2,, 5); % create a vector of five SE3 objects between T and T2
>> T3(1) % the first element of the vector
>> T3*T % each element of T3 multiplies T, giving a vector of five SE3 objects
\end{verbatim}

1.1.3 Enhancements

• Dependencies on the Machine Vision Toolbox for MATLAB (MVTB) have been removed. The fast dilation function used for path planning is now searched for in MVTB and the MATLAB Image Processing Toolbox (IPT) and defaults to a provided M-function.

• A major pass over all code and method/function/class documentation.

• Reworking and refactoring all the manipulator graphics, work in progress.

• An “app” is included: tripleangle which allows graphical experimentation with Euler and roll-pitch-yaw angles.

• A tidyup of all Simulink models. Red blocks now represent user settable parameters, and shaded boxes are used to group parts of the models.

---

\(^1\)Early versions of RTB, before 1999, used vectors to represent quaternions but that changed to an object once objects were added to the language.

\(^2\)For example, you could substitute objects of class \(SO_3\) and UnitQuaternion with minimal code change.

\(^3\)The capability is extended so that we can element-wise multiple two vectors of transforms, multiply one transform over a vector of transforms or a set of points.
## 1.1. Changes in RTB 10

Functions starting with dot are methods on the new objects. You can use them in functional form \( \text{dot1}(b) \) or in dot form \( \text{dot1}(b) \) of \( \text{R} \). It is a personal preference. The trailing parentheses are not required if no arguments are passed, but it is a useful convention and reminder that you are invoking a method not reading a property. The old function \( \text{transl} \) appears twice since it maps a vector to a matrix as well as the inverse.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Orientation</th>
<th>Pose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Classic</td>
<td>New</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rot2</td>
<td>SO2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trplot2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>trplot2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eul2r, rpy2r</td>
<td>SO3.eul, SO3.rpy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>angvec3r</td>
<td>SO3.angvec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ea2r</td>
<td>SO3.ea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tr2eul, tr2rpy</td>
<td>tr2eul, tr2rpy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tr2angvec</td>
<td>tr2angvec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trexp</td>
<td>trexp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trlog</td>
<td>trlog</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trplot</td>
<td>trplot</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Output type</th>
<th>Input type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Euler</td>
<td>T (3-vector)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>euler</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RPY</td>
<td>euler</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Angle</td>
<td>euler</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T (3x3 matrix)</td>
<td>tr2eul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T (4x4 matrix)</td>
<td>tr2eul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Twist vector</td>
<td>trexp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Twist Quaternion</td>
<td>.t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SO3</td>
<td>.t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SE3</td>
<td>.t</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 1.1: (top) new and classic methods for representing orientation and pose, (bottom) functions and methods to convert between representations. Reproduced from “Robotics, Vision & Control, second edition, 2017”
• RangeBearingSensor animation
• All the java code that supports the DHFactor functionality now lives in the folder java. The Makefile in there can be used to recompile the code. There are java version issues and the shipped class files are built to java 1.7 which allows operation

1.2 Changes in RTB 10.3

This release includes minor new features and a number of bug fixes compared to 10.2:

• Serial-link manipulators
  – The Symbolic Robot Modeling Toolbox component by Jörn Malzahn has been updated. It offers amazing speedups by using symbolic algebra to create robot specific MATLAB code or MEX files and it can even generate optimised Simulink blocks. I’ve seen speedups of over 50,000x. You need to have the Symbolic Math Toolbox.
  – New robot kinematic models: Franka-Emika PANDA and Rethink Sawyer.
  – Methods DH and MDH on the SerialLink class convert models between DH and MDH kinematics. Dynamics not yet supported.
  – plot3d behaves like plot for the ‘trail’ and ‘movie’ options.
  – Experimental feature: Manipulator configuration (joint angle) vectors can be kept inside the SerialLink object. At constructor time the option ‘configs’, {'qz', qz, 'qr', qr} adds these two configurations to the class instance, and they can be referenced later as, for example, p560.qz. This reduces the number of workspace variables and confusion when working with several robots at the same time.
  – Fix bug in the ‘trail’ option for SerialLink.plot.

Figure 1.2: Car animation drawn with demos/car_anim using plot_vehicle
CHAPTER 1. INTRODUCTION

1.2. CHANGES IN RTB 10.3

- Fixed bug in ikunc, ikcon which ignored q0.

- Mobile robotics
  - Added the ability to animate a picture of a vehicle to plot_vehicle, see demos/car_demo and Figure 1.2. Also added a ‘trail’ feature, and updated documentation.
  - Experimental feature: A Reeds-Shepp path planner, see rReedsShepp.m and demos/reedsshepp.mlx, this is not (yet) properly integrated into the Navigation class architecture.

- Simulink
  - Simulink blocks for Euler angles now have a checkbox to allow degrees mode.
  - Simulink blocks for roll-pitch-yaw angles now have a checkbox to allow degrees mode and radio buttons to select the angle sequence.
  - New Simulink block for mstraj gives full access to all capabilities of that function.
  - A folder simulink/R2015a contains all the Simulink models exported as .slx files for Simulink R2015a. This might ease problems for those using older versions of Simulink on the models in the top folder, many of which have been edited and saved under R2018a. Check the README file for details.

- A new script rvccheck which attempts to diagnose installation and MATLAB path issues.

- The demos folder now includes LiveScript versions of each demo, these are .mlx files. I’ve done a first pass at formatting the content and in a few cases updating the content a little. From here on, the .m files are deprecated. You need MATLAB 2016a or later to run the LiveScripts.

- Major tidyup and documentation improvements for the Twist and Plucker objects.

- Changes to the RTBPose.mtimes method which now allows you to:
  - postmultiply an SE3 object by a Plucker object which returns a Plucker object. This applies a rigid-body transformation to the line in space.
  - postmultiply an SE2 object by a MATLAB polyshape object which returns a polyshape object. This applies a rigid-body transformation to the polygon.

- Added a disp method to various toolbox objects, invokes display, which provides a display of the type from within the debugger.

- Quaternion == operator

- UnitQuaternion == accounts for double mapping

- UnitQuaternion has a rand method that generates a randomly distributed rotation, also used by SO3.rand and SE3.rand.
1.3 Changes in RTB 10.2

This release has a relatively small number of bug fixes compared to 10.1:

- Fixed bugs in jacobec and coriolis when using symbolic arguments.
- New robot models: UR3, UR5, UR10, LWR.
- Fixed bug for interp method of SE3 object.
- Fixed bug with detecting Optimisation Toolbox for ikcon and ikunc.
- Fixed bug in ikine_sym.
- Fixed various bugs related to plotting robots with prismatic joints.

1.4 How to obtain the Toolbox

The Robotics Toolbox is freely available from the Toolbox home page at http://www.petercorke.com

The file is available in MATLABtoolbox format (.mltbx) or zip format (.zip).

1.4.1 From .mltbx file

Since MATLAB R2014b toolboxes can be packaged as, and installed from, files with the extension .mltbx. Download the most recent version of robot.mltbx or vision.mltbx to your computer. Using MATLAB navigate to the folder where you downloaded the file and double-click it (or right-click then select Install).
CHAPTER 1. INTRODUCTION

Toolbox will be installed within the local MATLAB file structure, and the paths will be appropriately configured for this, and future MATLAB sessions.

1.4.2 From .zip file

Download the most recent version of robot.zip or vision.zip to your computer. Use your favourite unarchiving tool to unzip the files that you downloaded. To add the Toolboxes to your MATLAB path execute the command

```matlab
>> addpath RVCDIR ;
>> startup_rvc
```

where RVCDIR is the full pathname of the folder where the folder rvctools was created when you unzipped the Toolbox files. The script startup_rvc adds various subfolders to your path and displays the version of the Toolboxes. After installation the files for both Toolboxes reside in a top-level folder called rvctools and beneath this are a number of folders:

- `robot` The Robotics Toolbox
- `vision` The Machine Vision Toolbox
- `common` Utility functions common to the Robotics and Machine Vision Toolboxes
- `simulink` Simulink blocks for robotics and vision, as well as examples
- `contrib` Code written by third-parties

If you already have the Machine Vision Toolbox installed then download the zip file to the folder above the existing rvctools directory, and then unzip it. The files from this zip archive will properly interleave with the Machine Vision Toolbox files.

You need to setup the path every time you start MATLAB but you can automate this by setting up environment variables, editing your `startup.m` script, using `pathtool` and saving the path, or by pressing the “Update Toolbox Path Cache” button under MATLAB General preferences. You can check the path using the command `path` or `pathtool`.

A menu-driven demonstration can be invoked by

```matlab
>> rtbdemo
```

1.4.3 MATLAB Online™

The Toolbox works well with MATLAB Online™ which lets you access a MATLAB session from a web browser, tablet or even a phone. The key is to get the RTB files into the filesystem associated with your Online account. The easiest way to do this is to install MATLAB Drive™ from MATLAB File Exchange or using the Get Add-Ons option from the MATLAB GUI. This functions just like Google Drive or Dropbox, a local filesystem on your computer is synchronized with your MATLAB Online account. Copy the RTB files into the local MATLAB Drive cache and they will soon be synchronized, invoke `startup_rvc` to setup the paths and you are ready to simulate robots on your mobile device or in a web browser.

Robotics Toolbox 10.3.1 for MATLAB® 21

Copyright ©Peter Corke 2018
1.4. Simulink®

Simulink® is the block-diagram-based simulation environment for MATLAB. It provides a very convenient way to create and visualize complex dynamic systems, and is particularly applicable to robotics. RTB includes a library of blocks for use in constructing robot kinematic and dynamic models. The block library is opened by

```
>> roblocks
```

and a window like that shown in Figure 1.3(a) will be displayed. Double click a particular category and it will expand into a palette of blocks, like Figure 1.3(b), that can be dragged into your model.

Users with no previous Simulink experience are advised to read the relevant Mathworks manuals and experiment with the examples supplied. Experienced Simulink users should find the use of the Robotics blocks quite straightforward. Generally there is a one-to-one correspondence between Simulink blocks and Toolbox functions. Several demonstrations have been included with the Toolbox in order to illustrate common topics in robot control and demonstrate Toolbox Simulink usage. These could be considered as starting points for your own work, just select the model closest to what you want and start changing it. Details of the blocks can be found using the File/ShowBrowser option on the block library window.
1.4. HOW TO OBTAIN THE TOOLBOX

**Arm robots**

**Robot** represents a robot, with generalized joint force input and joint coordinates, velocities and accelerations as outputs. The parameters are the robot object to be simulated and the initial joint angles. It is similar to the `fdyn()` function and represents the forward dynamics of the robot.

**rne** computes the inverse dynamics using the recursive Newton-Euler algorithm (function `rne`). Inputs are joint coordinates, velocities and accelerations and the output is the generalized joint force. The robot object is a parameter.

**cinertia** computes the manipulator Cartesian inertia matrix. The parameters are the robot object to be simulated and the initial joint angles.

**inertia** computes the manipulator joint-space inertia matrix. The parameters are the robot object to be simulated and the initial joint angles.

**inertia** computes the gravity load. The parameters are the robot object to be simulated and the initial joint angles.

**jacob0** outputs a manipulator Jacobian matrix, with respect to the world frame, based on the input joint coordinate vector. Outputs the Jacobian matrix. The robot object is a parameter.

**jacobn** outputs a manipulator Jacobian matrix, with respect to the end-effector frame, based on the input joint coordinate vector. Outputs the Jacobian matrix. The robot object is a parameter.

**ijacob** inverts a Jacobian matrix. Currently limited to square Jacobians only, i.e. for 6-axis robots.

**fkine** outputs a homogeneous transformation for the pose of the end-effector corresponding to the input joint coordinates. The robot object is a parameter.

**plot** creates a graphical animation of the robot in a new window. The robot object is a parameter.

**Mobile robots**

**Bicycle** is the kinematic model of a mobile robot that uses the bicycle model. The inputs are speed and steer angle and the outputs are position and orientation.

**Unicycle** is the kinematic model of a mobile robot that uses the unicycle, or differential steering, model. The inputs are speed and turn rate and the outputs are position and orientation.

**Quadrotor** is the dynamic model of a quadrotor. The inputs are rotor speeds and the output is translational and angular position and velocity. Parameter is a quadrotor structure.

**N-rotor** is the dynamic model of a N-rotor flyer. The inputs are rotor speeds and the output is translational and angular position and velocity. Parameter is a quadrotor structure.

**ControlMixer** accepts thrust and torque commands and outputs rotor speeds for a quadrotor.

**Quadrotor plot** creates a graphical animation of the quadrotor in a new window. Parameter is a quadrotor structure.

**Trajectory**
## 1.4. HOW TO OBTAIN THE TOOLBOX

### CHAPTER 1. INTRODUCTION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>jtraj</strong></td>
<td>outputs coordinates of a point following a quintic polynomial as a function of time, as well as its derivatives. Initial and final velocity are assumed to be zero. The parameters include the initial and final points as well as the overall motion time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>lspb</strong></td>
<td>outputs coordinates of a point following an LSPB trajectory as a function of time. The parameters include the initial and final points as well as the overall motion time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>circle</strong></td>
<td>outputs the xy-coordinates of a point around a circle. Parameters are the centre, radius and angular frequency.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Vision**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>camera</strong></td>
<td>input is a camera pose and the output is the coordinates of points projected on the image plane. Parameters are the camera object and the point positions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>camera2</strong></td>
<td>input is a camera pose and point coordinate frame pose, and the output is the coordinates of points projected on the image plane. Parameters are the camera object and the point positions relative to the point frame.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>image Jacobian</strong></td>
<td>input is image points and output is the point feature Jacobian. Parameter is the camera object.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>image sphere</strong></td>
<td>input is image points in spherical coordinates and output is the point feature Jacobian. Parameter is a spherical camera object. computes camera pose from image points. Parameter is the camera object.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pose estimation</strong></td>
<td>computes camera pose from image points. Parameter is the camera object.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Miscellaneous**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Inverse</strong></td>
<td>outputs the inverse of the input matrix.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pre multiply</strong></td>
<td>outputs the input homogeneous transform pre-multiplied by the constant parameter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Post multiply</strong></td>
<td>outputs the input homogeneous transform post-multiplied by the constant parameter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>inv Jac</strong></td>
<td>inputs are a square Jacobian $J$ and a spatial velocity $\nu$ and outputs are $J^{-1}$ and the condition number of $J$.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>pinv Jac</strong></td>
<td>inputs are a Jacobian $J$ and a spatial velocity $\nu$ and outputs are $J^{+}$ and the condition number of $J$.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>tr2diff</strong></td>
<td>outputs the difference between two homogeneous transformations as a 6-vector comprising the translational and rotational difference.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>xyz2T</strong></td>
<td>converts a translational vector to a homogeneous transformation matrix.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>rpy2T</strong></td>
<td>converts a vector of roll-pitch-yaw angles to a homogeneous transformation matrix.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>eul2T</strong></td>
<td>converts a vector of Euler angles to a homogeneous transformation matrix.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>T2xyz</strong></td>
<td>converts a homogeneous transformation matrix to a translational vector.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>T2rpy</strong></td>
<td>converts a homogeneous transformation matrix to a vector of roll-pitch-yaw angles.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1.4. HOW TO OBTAIN THE TOOLBOX

T2eul converts a homogeneous transformation matrix to a vector of Euler angles.
angdiff computes the difference between two input angles modulo $2\pi$.

A number of models are also provided:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Robot manipulator arms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sl_rrmc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sl_rrmc2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sl_ztorque</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sl_jspace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sl_ctorque</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sl_ffforward</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sl_opspace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sl_sea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vloop_test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ploop_test</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mobile ground robot</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sl_braitenberg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sl_lanecchange</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sl_drivepoint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sl_driveline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sl_drivepose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sl_pursuit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Flying robot</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sl_quadrotor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sl_quadrotor_vs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1.4.5 Notes on implementation and versions

The Simulink blocks are implemented in Simulink itself with calls to MATLAB code, or as Level-1 S-functions (a proscribed coding format which MATLAB functions to interface with the Simulink simulation engine).

Simulink allows signals to have matrix values but not (yet) object values. Transformations must be represented as matrices, as per the classic functions, not classes. Very old versions of Simulink (prior to version 4) could only handle scalar signals which limited its usefulness for robotics.

1.4.6 Documentation

This document robot.pdf is a comprehensive manual that describes all functions in the Toolbox. It is auto-generated from the comments in the MATLAB code and is fully hyperlinked: to external web sites, the table of content to functions, and the “See also” functions to each other.
1.5 Compatible MATLAB versions

The Toolbox has been tested under R2018a and R2018bPRE. Compatibility problems are increasingly likely the older your version of MATLAB is.

1.6 Use in teaching

This is definitely encouraged! You are free to put the PDF manual (robot.pdf or the web-based documentation html/*.html on a server for class use. If you plan to distribute paper copies of the PDF manual then every copy must include the first two pages (cover and licence).

Link to other resources such as MOOCs or the Robot Academy can be found at www.petercorke.com/moocs.

1.7 Use in research

If the Toolbox helps you in your endeavours then I’d appreciate you citing the Toolbox when you publish. The details are:

@book{Corke17a,
    Author = {Peter I. Corke},
    Note = {ISBN 978-3-319-54413-7},
    Edition = {Second},
    Publisher = {Springer},
    Title = {Robotics, Vision \& Control: Fundamental Algorithms in {MATLAB}},
    Year = {2017}}

or


which is also given in electronic form in the CITATION file.

1.8 Support

There is no support! This software is made freely available in the hope that you find it useful in solving whatever problems you have to hand. I am happy to correspond with people who have found genuine bugs or deficiencies but my response time can be long and I can’t guarantee that I respond to your email.

I can guarantee that I will not respond to any requests for help with assignments or homework, no matter how urgent or important they might be to you. That’s what your teachers, tutors, lecturers and professors are paid to do.

You might instead like to communicate with other users via the Google Group called “Robotics and Machine Vision Toolbox”
which is a forum for discussion. You need to signup in order to post, and the signup process is moderated by me so allow a few days for this to happen. I need you to write a few words about why you want to join the list so I can distinguish you from a spammer or a web-bot.

1.9 Related software

1.9.1 Robotics System Toolbox™

The Robotics System Toolbox™ (RST) from MathWorks is an official and supported product. System toolboxes (see also the Computer Vision System Toolbox) are aimed at developers of systems. RST has a growing set of functions for mobile robots, arm robots, ROS integration and pose representations but its design (classes and functions) and syntax is quite different to RTB. A number of examples illustrating the use of RST are given in the folder RST as Live Scripts (extension .mlx), but you need to have the Robotics System Toolbox™ installed in order to use it.

1.9.2 Octave

GNU Octave (www.octave.org) is an impressive piece of free software that implements a language that is close to, but not the same as, MATLAB. The Toolboxes currently do not work well with Octave, though as time goes by compatibility improves. Many Toolbox functions work just fine under Octave, but most classes do not.

For uptodate information about running the Toolbox with Octave check out the page http://petercorke.com/wordpress/toolboxes/other-languages.

1.9.3 Machine Vision toolbox

Machine Vision toolbox (MVTB) for MATLAB. This was described in an article

@article{Corke05d,
   Author = {P.I. Corke},
   Journal = {IEEE Robotics and Automation Magazine},
   Month = nov,
   Number = {4},
   Pages = {16–25},
   Title = {Machine Vision Toolbox},
   Volume = {12},
   Year = {2005})

and provides a very wide range of useful computer vision functions and is used to illustrate principals in the Robotics, Vision & Control book. You can obtain this from http://www.petercorke.com/vision. More recent products such as MATLAB Image Processing Toolbox and MATLAB Computer Vision System Toolbox provide functionality that overlaps with MVTB.
1.10 Contributing to the Toolboxes

I am very happy to accept contributions for inclusion in future versions of the toolbox. You will, of course, be suitably acknowledged (see below).

1.11 Acknowledgements

I have corresponded with a great many people via email since the first release of this Toolbox. Some have identified bugs and shortcomings in the documentation, and even better, some have provided bug fixes and even new modules, thankyou. See the file CONTRIB for details.

I would especially like to thank the following. Giorgio Grisetti and Gian Diego Tipaldi for the core of the pose graph solver. Arturo Gil for allowing me to ship the STL robot models from ARTE. Jörn Malzahn has donated a considerable amount of code, his Robot Symbolic Toolbox for MATLAB. Bryan Moutrie has contributed parts of his open-source package phiWARE to RTB, the remainder of that package can be found online. Other special mentions to Gautam Sinha, Wynand Smart for models of industrial robot arm, Pauline Pounds for the quadrotor and related models, Paul Newman for inspiring the mobile robot code, and Giorgio Grissetti for inspiring the pose graph code.
Chapter 2

Functions and classes

about

Compact display of variable type

about(x) displays a compact line that describes the class and dimensions of x.
about x as above but this is the command rather than functional form

Examples

>> a=1;
>> about a
a [double] : 1x1 (8 bytes)
>> a = rand(5,7);
>> about a
a [double] : 5x7 (280 bytes)

See also

whos

angdiff

Difference of two angles

angdiff(th1, th2) is the difference between angles th1 and th2 on the circle. The result is in the interval [-pi, pi). Either or both arguments can be a vector:
• If \( \text{th1} \) is a vector, and \( \text{th2} \) a scalar then return a vector where \( \text{th2} \) is modulo subtracted from the corresponding elements of \( \text{th1} \).

• If \( \text{th1} \) is a scalar, and \( \text{th2} \) a vector then return a vector where the corresponding elements of \( \text{th2} \) are modulo subtracted from \( \text{th1} \).

• If \( \text{th1} \) and \( \text{th2} \) are vectors then return a vector whose elements are the modulo difference of the corresponding elements of \( \text{th1} \) and \( \text{th2} \).

\( \text{angdiff}(\text{th}) \) as above but \( \text{th}=[\text{th1} \ \text{th2}] \).

\( \text{angdiff}(\text{th}) \) is the equivalent angle to \( \text{th} \) in the interval \([-\pi, \pi)\).

Notes

• If \( \text{th1} \) and \( \text{th2} \) are both vectors they should have the same orientation, which the output will assume.

---

**angvec2r**

Convert angle and vector orientation to a rotation matrix

\[ \text{R} = \text{angvec2r}(\text{theta, v}) \] is an orthonormal rotation matrix \((3 \times 3)\) equivalent to a rotation of \( \text{theta} \) about the vector \( \text{v} \).

Notes

• If \( \text{theta} = 0 \) then return identity matrix.

• If \( \text{theta} \neq 0 \) then \( \text{v} \) must have a finite length.

See also

\( \text{angvec2tr, eul2r, rpy2r, tr2angvec, trexp, SO3.angvec} \)
angvec2tr

Convert angle and vector orientation to a homogeneous transform

\[ T = \text{angvec2tr}(\theta, v) \]

is a homogeneous transform matrix \((4 \times 4)\) equivalent to a rotation of \(\theta\) about the vector \(v\).

**Note**

- The translational part is zero.
- If \(\theta = 0\) then return identity matrix.
- If \(\theta \neq 0\) then \(v\) must have a finite length.

**See also**

angvec2r, eul2tr, rpy2tr, angvec2r, tr2angvec, trexp, SO3.angvec

---

**Animate**

Create an animation

Helper class for creating animations. Creates a movie file or saves snapshots of a figure as individual PNG format frames numbered 0000.png, 0001.png and so on.

**Example**

```matlab
anim = Animate('movie.mp4');
for i=1:100
    plot(...);
    anim.add();
end
anim.close();
```

will save the frames in an MP4 movie file using VideoWriter.
Alternatively

```matlab
anim = Animate('movie');
for i=1:100
    plot(...);
    anim.add();
end
anim.close();
```

To convert the image files to a movie you could use a tool like ffmpeg

```bash
ffmpeg -r 10 -i movie/%04d.png out.mp4
```

**Animate.Animate**

Create an animation class

```matlab
a = ANIMATE(name, options) initializes an animation, and creates a movie file or a folder holding individual frames.
```

```matlab
a = ANIMATE({name, options}) as above but arguments are passed as a cell array, which allows a single argument to a higher-level option like 'movie',M to express options as well as filename.
```

**Options**

- `'resolution', R` Set the resolution of the saved image to R pixels per inch.
- `'profile', P` Create an MP4 file directly, see VideoWriter
- `'fps', F` Frame rate (default 30)

**Notes**

- if a profile is given a movie is created, see VideoWriter for allowable profiles.
- if the file has an extension a movie is created.
- otherwise a folder full of frames is created.

**See also**

`VideoWriter`
**Animate.add**

Adds current plot to the animation

A. **ADD()** adds the current figure in PNG format to the animation folder with a unique sequential filename.

A. **ADD(fig)** as above but captures the figure **fig**.

See also

print

---

**Animate.close**

Closes the animation

A. **CLOSE()** closes the video file.

---

**Arbotix**

Interface to Arbotix robot-arm controller

A concrete subclass of the abstract Machine class that implements a connection over a serial port to an Arbotix robot-arm controller.

**Methods**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Arbotix</td>
<td>Constructor, establishes serial communications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>delete</td>
<td>Destructor, closes serial connection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>getpos</td>
<td>Get joint angles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>setpos</td>
<td>Set joint angles and optionally speed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>setpath</td>
<td>Load a trajectory into Arbotix RAM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relax</td>
<td>Control relax (zero torque) state</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>setled</td>
<td>Control LEDs on servos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gettemp</td>
<td>Temperature of motors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>writedata1</td>
<td>Write byte data to servo control table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>writedata2</td>
<td>Write word data to servo control table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>readdata</td>
<td>Read servo control table</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Robotics Toolbox 10.3.1 for MATLAB® 34  
Copyright © Peter Corke 2018
### CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

command | Execute command on servo  
flush    | Flushes serial data buffer  
receive  | Receive data

#### Example

```python
arb = Arbotix('port', '/dev/tty.usbserial-A800JDPN', 'nservos', 5);
q = arb.getpos();
arb.setpos(q + 0.1);
```

#### Notes

- This is experimental code.
- Considers the robot as a string of motors, and the last joint is assumed to be the gripper. This should be abstracted, at the moment this is done in RobotArm.
- Connects via serial port to an Arbotix controller running the pypose sketch.

#### See also

- [Machine](#), [RobotArm](#)

### Arbotix.Arbotix

**Create Arbotix interface object**

```python
arb = Arbotix(options)
```

is an object that represents a connection to a chain of Arbotix servos connected via an Arbotix controller and serial link to the host computer.

#### Options

- `port`, P Name of the serial port device, eg. `/dev/ttyUSB0`
- `baud`, B Set baud rate (default 38400)
- `debug`, D Debug level, show communications packets (default 0)
- `nservos`, N Number of servos in the chain
Arbotix.a2e

Convert angle to encoder

\[ E = \text{ARB.A2E}(a) \]

is a vector of encoder values \( E \) corresponding to the vector of joint angles \( a \).

TODO:
- Scale factor is constant, should be a parameter to constructor.

Arbotix.char

Convert Arbotix status to string

\[ C = \text{ARB.char}() \]

is a string that succinctly describes the status of the Arbotix controller link.

Arbotix.command

Execute command on servo

\[ R = \text{ARB.COMMAND}(id, \text{instruct}) \]

executes the instruction \text{instruct} on servo \text{id}.

\[ R = \text{ARB.COMMAND}(id, \text{instruct}, \text{data}) \]

as above but the vector \text{data} forms the payload of the command message, and all numeric values in \text{data} must be in the range 0 to 255.

The optional output argument \( R \) is a structure holding the return status.

Notes

- \text{id} is in the range 0 to \( N-1 \), where \( N \) is the number of servos in the system.
- Values for \text{instruct} are defined as class properties INS_*.
- If ‘debug’ was enabled in the constructor then the hex values are echoed to the screen as well as being sent to the Arbotix.
- If an output argument is requested the serial channel is flushed first.

See also

Arbotix.receive, Arbotix.flush
Arbotix.connect

Connect to the physical robot controller

ARB.connect() establish a serial connection to the physical robot controller.

See also

Arbotix.disconnect

Arbotix.disconnect

Disconnect from the physical robot controller

ARB.disconnect() closes the serial connection.

See also

Arbotix.connect

Arbotix.display

Display parameters

ARB.display() displays the servo parameters in compact single line format.

Notes

- This method is invoked implicitly at the command line when the result of an expression is a Arbotix object and the command has no trailing semicolon.

See also

Arbotix.char
### Arbotix.e2a

**Convert encoder to angle**

\[ a = \text{ARB.E2A}(E) \]

is a vector of joint angles \( a \) corresponding to the vector of encoder values \( E \).

**TODO:**
- Scale factor is constant, should be a parameter to constructor.

### Arbotix.flush

**Flush the receive buffer**

\[ \text{ARB.FLUSH}() \]

flushes the serial input buffer, data is discarded.

\[ s = \text{ARB.FLUSH}() \]

as above but returns a vector of all bytes flushed from the channel.

**Notes**
- Every command sent to the Arbotix elicits a reply.
- The method receive() should be called after every command.
- Some Arbotix commands also return diagnostic text information.

**See also**

Arbotix.receive, Arbotix.parse

### Arbotix.getpos

**Get position**

\[ p = \text{ARB.GETPOS}(\text{id}) \]

is the position (0-1023) of servo \( \text{id} \).

\[ p = \text{ARB.GETPOS}([]) \]

is a vector \( (1 \times N) \) of positions of servos 1 to \( N \).

**Notes**
- \( N \) is defined at construction time by the ‘\text{n servos}’ option.
See also

Arbotix.e2a

**Arbotix.gettemp**

Get temperature

\[ T = \text{ARB.GETTEMP}(\text{id}) \]

is the temperature (deg C) of servo \( \text{id} \).

\[ T = \text{ARB.GETTEMP}() \]

is a vector \((1 \times N)\) of the temperature of servos 1 to \( N \).

**Notes**

- \( N \) is defined at construction time by the ‘nservos’ option.

**Arbotix.parse**

Parse Arbotix return strings

\( \text{ARB.PARSE}(s) \)

parses the string returned from the Arbotix controller and prints diagnostic text. The string \( s \) contains a mixture of Dynamixel style return packets and diagnostic text.

**Notes**

- Every command sent to the Arbotix elicits a reply.
- The method receive() should be called after every command.
- Some Arbotix commands also return diagnostic text information.

See also

Arbotix.flush, Arbotix.command
Arbotix.readdata

Read byte data from servo control table

\[ R \] = ARB.READDATA(id, addr) reads the successive elements of the servo control table for servo \( id \), starting at address \( addr \). The complete return status in the structure \( R \), and the byte data is a vector in the field 'params'.

Notes

- \( id \) is in the range 0 to N-1, where N is the number of servos in the system.
- If ‘debug’ was enabled in the constructor then the hex values are echoed to the screen as well as being sent to the Arbotix.

See also

Arbotix.receive, Arbotix.command

Arbotix.receive

Decode Arbotix return packet

\[ R \] = ARB.RECEIVE() reads and parses the return packet from the Arbotix and returns a structure with the following fields:

- **id**: The id of the servo that sent the message
- **error**: Error code, 0 means OK
- **params**: The returned parameters, can be a vector of byte values

Notes

- Every command sent to the Arbotix elicits a reply.
- The method receive() should be called after every command.
- Some Arbotix commands also return diagnostic text information.
- If ‘debug’ was enabled in the constructor then the hex values are echoed
Arbotix.relax

Control relax state

ARB.RELAX(id) causes the servo id to enter zero-torque (relax state) ARB.RELAX(id, FALSE) causes the servo id to enter position-control mode ARB.RELAX([]) causes servos 1 to N to relax ARB.RELAX() as above ARB.RELAX([], FALSE) causes servos 1 to N to enter position-control mode.

Notes

• N is defined at construction time by the ‘nservos’ option.

Arbotix.setled

Set LEDs on servos

ARB.led(id, status) sets the LED on servo id to on or off according to the status (logical). ARB.led([], status) as above but the LEDs on servos 1 to N are set.

Notes

• N is defined at construction time by the ‘nservos’ option.

Arbotix.setpath

Load a path into Arbotix controller

ARB.setpath(jt) stores the path jt (P × N) in the Arbotix controller where P is the number of points on the path and N is the number of robot joints. Allows for smooth multi-axis motion.

See also

Arbotix.a2e
Arbotix.setpos

Set position

`ARB_SETPOS(id, pos)` sets the position (0-1023) of servo `id`. `ARB_SETPOS(id, pos, SPEED)` as above but also sets the speed.

`ARB_SETPOS(pos)` sets the position of servos 1-N to corresponding elements of the vector `pos` \((1 \times N)\). `ARB_SETPOS(pos, SPEED)` as above but also sets the velocity `SPEED` \((1 \times N)\).

**Notes**

- `id` is in the range 1 to N
- N is defined at construction time by the ‘nservos’ option.
- `SPEED` varies from 0 to 1023, 0 means largest possible speed.

**See also**

`Arbotix.a2e`

Arbotix.writedata1

Write byte data to servo control table

`ARB_WRITEDATA1(id, addr, data)` writes the successive elements of `data` to the servo control table for servo `id`, starting at address `addr`. The values of `data` must be in the range 0 to 255.

**Notes**

- `id` is in the range 0 to N-1, where N is the number of servos in the system.
- If ‘debug’ was enabled in the constructor then the hex values are echoed to the screen as well as being sent to the Arbotix.

**See also**

`Arbotix.writedata2, Arbotix.command`
Arbotix.writedata2

Write word data to servo control table

ARB.WRITEDATA2(id, addr, data) writes the successive elements of data to the servo control table for servo id, starting at address addr. The values of data must be in the range 0 to 65535.

Notes

- id is in the range 0 to N-1, where N is the number of servos in the system.
- If ‘debug’ was enabled in the constructor then the hex values are echoed to the screen as well as being sent to the Arbotix.

See also

Arbotix.writedata1, Arbotix.command

Bicycle

Car-like vehicle class

This concrete class models the kinematics of a car-like vehicle (bicycle or Ackerman model) on a plane. For given steering and velocity inputs it updates the true vehicle state and returns noise-corrected odometry readings.

Methods

- Bicycle: constructor
- add_driver: attach a driver object to this vehicle
- control: generate the control inputs for the vehicle
- deriv: derivative of state given inputs
- init: initialize vehicle state
- f: predict next state based on odometry
- Fx: Jacobian of f wrt x
- Fv: Jacobian of f wrt odometry noise
- update: update the vehicle state
- run: run for multiple time steps
- step: move one time step and return noisy odometry
Plotting/display methods

- **char**: convert to string
- **display**: display state/parameters in human readable form
- **plot**: plot/animate vehicle on current figure
- **plot_xy**: plot the true path of the vehicle
- **Vehicle.plotv**: plot/animate a pose on current figure

Properties (read/write)

- **x**: true vehicle state: x, y, theta (3 × 1)
- **V**: odometry covariance (2 × 2)
- **odometry**: distance moved in the last interval (2 × 1)
- **rdim**: dimension of the robot (for drawing)
- **L**: length of the vehicle (wheelbase)
- **alphalim**: steering wheel limit
- **maxspeed**: maximum vehicle speed
- **T**: sample interval
- **verbose**: verbosity
- **x_hist**: history of true vehicle state (N × 3)
- **driver**: reference to the driver object
- **x0**: initial state, restored on init()

Examples

Odometry covariance (per timestep) is

\[
V = \text{diag}([0.02, 0.5\times\pi/180].^2);
\]

Create a vehicle with this noisy odometry

\[
v = \text{Bicycle( 'covar', \text{diag}([0.1 0.01].^2 ));}
\]

and display its initial state

\[
v
\]

now apply a speed (0.2m/s) and steer angle (0.1rad) for 1 time step

\[
odo = v.\text{step}(0.2, 0.1)
\]

where odo is the noisy odometry estimate, and the new true vehicle state

\[
v
\]

We can add a driver object

\[
v.\text{add\_driver( RandomPath(10) )}
\]

which will move the vehicle within the region -10<x<10, -10<y<10 which we can see by

\[
v.\text{run}(1000)
\]
which shows an animation of the vehicle moving for 1000 time steps between randomly selected waypoints.

Notes

- Subclasses the MATLAB handle class which means that pass by reference semantics apply.

Reference

Robotics, Vision & Control, Chap 6 Peter Corke, Springer 2011

See also

RandomPath, EKF

Bicycle.Bicycle

Vehicle object constructor

\( v = \text{Bicycle(options)} \) creates a Bicycle object with the kinematics of a bicycle (or Ackerman) vehicle.

Options

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>'steermax', M</td>
<td>Maximu steer angle [rad] (default 0.5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'accelmax', M</td>
<td>Maximum acceleration [m/s²] (default Inf)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'covar', C</td>
<td>specify odometry covariance (2 x 2) (default 0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'speedmax', S</td>
<td>Maximum speed (default 1m/s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'L', L</td>
<td>Wheel base (default 1m)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'x0', x0</td>
<td>Initial state (default (0,0,0))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'dt', T</td>
<td>Time interval (default 0.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'rdim', R</td>
<td>Robot size as fraction of plot window (default 0.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'verbose'</td>
<td>Be verbose</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

- The covariance is used by a “hidden” random number generator within the class.

- Subclasses the MATLAB handle class which means that pass by reference semantics apply.
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Notes

- Subclasses the MATLAB handle class which means that pass by reference semantics apply.

Bicycle.char

Convert to a string

s = V.char() is a string showing vehicle parameters and state in a compact human readable format.

See also

Bicycle.display

Bicycle.deriv

Time derivative of state

\[ dx = V.deriv(T, x, u) \] is the time derivative of state (3 \times 1) at the state \( x \) (3 \times 1) with input \( u \) (2 \times 1).

Notes

- The parameter \( T \) is ignored but called from a continuous time integrator such as ode45 or Simulink.

Bicycle.f

Predict next state based on odometry

\[ xn = V.f(x, odo) \] is the predicted next state \( xn \) (1 \times 3) based on current state \( x \) (1 \times 3) and odometry \( odo \) (1 \times 2) = [distance, heading_change].

\[ xn = V.f(x, odo, w) \] as above but with odometry noise \( w \).

Notes

- Supports vectorized operation where \( x \) and \( xn \) (\( N \times 3 \)).
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Bicycle.Fv

Jacobian df/dv

\[ J = V.Fv(x, \text{odo}) \] is the Jacobian df/dv (3 × 2) at the state \( x \), for odometry input \( \text{odo} \) (1 × 2) = [distance, heading_change].

See also

Bicycle.F, Vehicle.Fx

Bicycle.Fx

Jacobian df/dx

\[ J = V.Fx(x, \text{odo}) \] is the Jacobian df/dx (3 × 3) at the state \( x \), for odometry input \( \text{odo} \) (1 × 2) = [distance, heading_change].

See also

Bicycle.f, Vehicle.Fv

Bicycle.update

Update the vehicle state

\( odo = V.update(u) \) is the true odometry value for motion with \( u = \text{[speed,steer]} \).

Notes

- Appends new state to state history property \( x_{\text{hist}} \).
- Odometry is also saved as property \( \text{odometry} \).
bresenham

Generate a line

\[ p = \text{bresenham}(x_1, y_1, x_2, y_2) \] is a list of integer coordinates \((2 \times N)\) for points lying on the line segment joining the integer coordinates \((x_1, y_1)\) and \((x_2, y_2)\).

\[ p = \text{bresenham}(p_1, p_2) \] as above but \(p_1=[x_1; y_1]\) and \(p_2=[x_2; y_2]\).

Notes

- Endpoint coordinates must be integer values.

Author

- Based on code by Aaron Wetzler

See also

icanvas

---

Bug2

Bug navigation class

A concrete subclass of the abstract Navigation class that implements the bug2 navigation algorithm. This is a simple automaton that performs local planning, that is, it can only sense the immediate presence of an obstacle.

Methods

- Bug2 Constructor
- query Find a path from start to goal
- plot Display the obstacle map
- display Display state/parameters in human readable form
- char Convert to string

Example
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

```
load map1  % load the map
bug = Bug2(map);  % create navigation object
start = [20,10];
goal = [50,35];
bug.query(start, goal);  % animate path
```

Reference


See also

`Navigation, DXform, Dstar, PRM`

**Bug2.Bug2**

Construct a Bug2 navigation object

```
b = Bug2(map, options) is a bug2 navigation object, and map is an occupancy grid, a representation of a planar world as a matrix whose elements are 0 (free space) or 1 (occupied).
```

Options

- `'goal', G` Specify the goal point (1 × 2)
- `'inflate', K` Inflate all obstacles by K cells.

See also

`Navigation.Navigation`

**Bug2.query**

Find a path

```
B.query(start, goal, options) is the path (N × 2) from start (1 × 2) to goal (1 × 2). Row are the coordinates of successive points along the path. If either start or goal is []
```
the grid map is displayed and the user is prompted to select a point by clicking on the plot.

**Options**

- ‘animate’ show a simulation of the robot moving along the path
- ‘movie’, M create a movie
- ‘current’ show the current position position as a black circle

**Notes**

- **start** and **goal** are given as X,Y coordinates in the grid map, not as MATLAB row and column coordinates.
- **start** and **goal** are tested to ensure they lie in free space.
- The Bug2 algorithm is completely reactive so there is no planning method.
- If the bug does a lot of back tracking it’s hard to see the current position, use the ‘current’ option.
- For the movie option if M contains an extension a movie file with that extension is created. Otherwise a folder will be created containing individual frames.

**See also**

Animate

---

**ccodegenfunctionstring**

Converts a symbolic expression into a C-code function

\[ \text{[funstr, hdrstr]} = \text{ccodegenfunctionstring(symexpr, arglist)} \] returns a string representing a C-code implementation of a symbolic expression `symexpr`. The C-code implementation has a signature of the form:

```c
void funname(double[][n_o] out, const double in1,  
const double* in2, const double[][n_i] in3);
```

depending on the number of inputs to the function as well as the dimensionality of the inputs (n_i) and the output (n_o). The whole C-code implementation is returned in `funstr`, while `hdrstr` contains just the signature ending with a semi-colon (for the use in header files).
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Options

‘funname’, name Specify the name of the generated C-function. If this optional argument is omitted, the variable name of the first input argument is used, if possible.

‘output’, outVar Defines the identifier of the output variable in the C-function.

‘vars’, varCells The inputs to the C-code function must be defined as a cell array. The elements of this cell array contain the symbolic variables required to compute the output. The elements may be scalars, vectors or matrices symbolic variables. The C-function prototype will be composed accordingly as exemplified above.

‘flag’, sig Specifies if function signature only is generated, default (false).

Example

% Create symbolic variables
syms q1 q2 q3
Q = [q1 q2 q3];
% Create symbolic expression
myrot = rotz(q3)*roty(q2)*rotx(q1)
% Generate C-function string
[funstr, hdrstr] = ccodefunctionstring(myrot,’output’,’foo’, ...
'vars',(Q),’funname’,’rotate_xyz’)

Notes

• The function wraps around the built-in Matlab function ‘ccode’. It does not check for proper C syntax. You must take care of proper dimensionality of inputs and outputs with respect to your symbolic expression on your own. Otherwise the generated C-function may not compile as desired.

Author

Joern Malzahn, (joern.malzahn@tu-dortmund.de)

See also

code, matlabFunction

chi2inv_rtb

Inverse chi-squared function

x = chi2inv_rtb(p, n) is the inverse chi-squared cdf function of n-degrees of freedom.
Notes

- only works for $n=2$
- uses a table lookup with around 6 figure accuracy
- an approximation to chi2inv() from the Statistics & Machine Learning Toolbox

See also

chi2inv

circle

Compute points on a circle

circle(C, R, options) plots a circle centred at $C$ ($1 \times 2$) with radius $R$ on the current axes.

$x = \text{circle}(C, R, \text{options})$ is a matrix ($2 \times N$) whose columns define the coordinates [x,y] of points around the circumference of a circle centred at $C$ ($1 \times 2$) and of radius $R$.

$C$ is normally $2 \times 1$ but if $3 \times 1$ then the circle is embedded in 3D, and $x$ is $N \times 3$, but the circle is always in the xy-plane with a $z$-coordinate of $C(3)$.

Options

‘n’, N Specify the number of points (default 50)

CodeGenerator

Class for code generation

Objects of the CodeGenerator class automatically generate robot specific code, as either M-functions, C-functions, C-MEX functions, or real-time capable Simulink blocks.

The various methods return symbolic expressions for robot kinematic and dynamic functions, and optionally support side effects such as:
• M-functions with symbolic robot specific model code
• real-time capable robot specific Simulink blocks
• mat-files with symbolic robot specific model expressions
• C-functions and -headers with symbolic robot specific model code
• robot specific MEX functions based on the generated C-code (C-compiler must be installed).

Example

```matlab
% load robot model
mdl_twolink

cg = CodeGenerator(twolink);
cg.geneverything();

% a new class has been automatically generated in the robot directory.
addpath robot

tl = @robot();
% this class is a subclass of SerialLink, and thus polymorphic with
% SerialLink but its methods have been overloaded with robot-specific code,
% for example
T = tl.fkine([0.2 0.3]);
% uses concise symbolic expressions rather than the generalized A-matrix
% approach

% The Simulink block library containing robot-specific blocks can be
% opened by
open robot/robotslib.slx
% and the blocks dragged into your own models.
```

Methods

- `gencoriolis` - generate Coriolis/centripetal code
- `genfdyn` - generate forward dynamics code
- `genfkine` - generate forward kinematics code
- `genfriction` - generate joint friction code
- `gengravload` - generate gravity load code
- `geninertia` - generate inertia matrix code
- `geninvdyn` - generate inverse dynamics code
- `genjacobian` - generate Jacobian code
- `geneverything` - generate code for all of the above

Properties (read/write)

- `basepath` - basic working directory of the code generator
- `robjpath` - subdirectory for specialized MATLAB functions
- `sympath` - subdirectory for symbolic expressions
- `slib` - filename of the Simulink library
- `slibpath` - subdirectory for the Simulink library
verbose print code generation progress on console (logical)
saveresult save symbolic expressions to .mat-files (logical)
logfile print modeling progress to specified text file (string)
genmfun generate executable M-functions (logical)
genblkblock generate Embedded MATLAB Function blocks (logical)
genccode generate C-functions and -headers (logical)
genmex generate MEX-functions as replacement for M-functions (logical)
compilemex automatically compile MEX-functions after generation (logical)

Properties (read only)

rob SerialLink object to generate code for (1 × 1).

Notes

• Requires the MATLAB Symbolic Toolbox.
• For robots with > 3 joints the symbolic expressions are massively complex, they are slow and you may run out of memory.
• As much as possible the symbolic calculations are down row-wise to reduce the computation/memory burden.
• Requires a C-compiler if robot specific MEX-functions shall be generated as m-functions replacement (see MATLAB documentation of MEX files).

Author

Joern Malzahn, (joern.malzahn@tu-dortmund.de)

See also

SerialLink, Link

CodeGenerator.CodeGenerator

Construct a code generator object

cGen = CodeGenerator(rob, options) is a code generator object for the SerialLink object rob.
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Options

CodeGenGenerator has many options, and useful sets of options are called optionSets, and the following are recognized:

- ‘default’ set the options: verbose, saveResult, genMFun, genSLBlock
- ‘debug’ set the options: verbose, saveResult, genMFun, genSLBlock and create a logfile named ‘robModel.log’ in the working directory
- ‘silent’ set the options: saveResult, genMFun, genSLBlock
- ‘disk’ set the options: verbose, saveResult
- ‘workspace’ set the option: verbose; just outputs symbolic expressions to workspace
- ‘mfun’ set the options: verbose, saveResult, genMFun
- ‘slblock’ set the options: verbose, saveResult, genSLBlock
- ‘ccode’ set the options: verbose, saveResult, genCcode
- ‘mex’ set the options: verbose, saveResult, genMEX

If no optionSet is provided, then ‘default’ is used.

The options themselves control the code generation and user information:

- ‘verbose’ write code generation progress to command window
- ‘saveResult’ save results to hard disk (always enabled, when genMFun and genSLBlock are set)
- ‘logfile’, ‘logfile’ write code generation progress to specified logfile
- ‘genMFun’ generate robot specific m-functions
- ‘genSLBlock’ generate real-time capable robot specific Simulink blocks
- ‘genCcode’ generate robot specific C-functions and -headers
- ‘mex’ generate robot specific MEX-functions as replacement for the m-functions
- ‘compilemex’ select whether generated MEX-function should be compiled directly after generation

Any option may also be modified individually as optional parameter value pairs.

Author


CodeGenGenerator.addpath

Adds generated code to search path

cGen.addpath() adds the generated m-functions and block library to the MATLAB function search path.
**CodeGenerator.gencodecoriolis**

*Generate C-function for robot inertia matrix*

cGen.gencodecoriolis() generates robot-specific C-functions to compute the robot coriolis matrix.

**Notes**

- Is called by CodeGenerator.gencoriolis if cGen has active flag genccode or genmex.
- The .c and .h files are generated in the directory specified by the ccodepath property of the CodeGenerator object.

**CodeGenerator.genccodefdyn**

*Generate C-code for forward dynamics*

cGen.gencodeinfdyn() generates a robot-specific C-code to compute the forward dynamics.
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Notes

- Is called by CodeGenerator.genfdyn if cGen has active flag genccode or genmex.
- The .c and .h files are generated in the directory specified by the ccodepath property of the CodeGenerator object.
- The resulting C-function is composed of previously generated C-functions for the inertia matrix, Coriolis matrix, vector of gravitational load and joint friction vector. This function recombines these components to compute the forward dynamics.

Author

Joern Malzahn, (joern.malzahn@tu-dortmund.de)

See also

CodeGenGenerator.CodeGenerator, CodeGenerator.genfdyn, CodeGenerator.genccodeinvdyn, CodeGenerator.genccodefkine

CodeGenGenerator.genccodefkine

Generate C-code for the forward kinematics

cGen.genccodefkine() generates a robot-specific C-function to compute forward kinematics.

Notes

- Is called by CodeGenerator.genfkine if cGen has active flag genccode or genmex
- The generated .c and .h files are written to the directory specified in the ccodepath property of the CodeGenerator object.

Author

Joern Malzahn, (joern.malzahn@tu-dortmund.de)

See also

CodeGenGenerator.CodeGenerator, CodeGenerator.genfkine, CodeGenerator.genmexfkine
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

CodeGen.genccodefriction

Generate C-code for the joint friction

cGen.genccodefriction() generates a robot-specific C-function to compute vector of friction torques/forces.

Notes

- Is called by CodeGenerator.genfriction if cGen has active flag genccode or genmex
- The generated .c and .h files are written to the directory specified in the ccodepath property of the CodeGenerator object.

Author

Joern Malzahn, (joern.malzahn@tu-dortmund.de)

See also

CodeGen.CodeGenerator, CodeGenerator.genfriction, CodeGenerator.genmexfriction

CodeGen.genccodegravload

Generate C-code for the vector of gravitational load torques/forces

cGen.genccodegravload() generates a robot-specific C-function to compute vector of gravitational load torques/forces.

Notes

- Is called by CodeGenerator.gengravload if cGen has active flag genccode or genmex
- The generated .c and .h files are written to the directory specified in the ccodepath property of the CodeGenerator object.

Author

Joern Malzahn, (joern.malzahn@tu-dortmund.de)
See also

CodeGen.CodeGenerator, CodeGenerator.gengravload, CodeGenerator.genmexgravload

CodeGen.genccodeinertia

Generate C-function for robot inertia matrix

cGen.genccodeinertia() generates robot-specific C-functions to compute the robot inertia matrix.

Notes

- Is called by CodeGenerator.geninertia if cGen has active flag genccode or genmex.
- The generated .c and .h files are generated in the directory specified by the ccodepath property of the CodeGenerator object.

Author

Joern Malzahn, (joern.malzahn@tu-dortmund.de)

See also

CodeGen.CodeGenerator, CodeGenerator.geninertia, CodeGenerator.genmexinertia

CodeGen.genccodeinvdyn

Generate C-code for inverse dynamics

cGen.genccodeinvdyn() generates a robot-specific C-code to compute the inverse dynamics.

Notes

- Is called by CodeGenerator.geninvdyn if cGen has active flag genccode or genmex.
- The .c and .h files are generated in the directory specified by the ccodepath property of the CodeGenerator object.
• The resulting C-function is composed of previously generated C-functions for the inertia matrix, coriolis matrix, vector of gravitational load and joint friction vector. This function recombines these components to compute the inverse dynamics.

Author

Joern Malzahn, (joern.malzahn@tu-dortmund.de)

See also

CodeGenGenerator.CodeGenerator, CodeGenerator.geninvdyn, CodeGenerator.genccodefdyn

CodeGenGenerator.genccodejacobian

Generate C-functions for robot jacobians

cGen.genccodejacobian() generates a robot-specific C-function to compute the jacobians with respect to the robot base as well as the end effector.

Notes

• Is called by CodeGenerator.genjacobian if cGen has active flag genccode or genmex.

• The generated .c and .h files are generated in the directory specified by the ccode-path property of the CodeGenerator object.

Author

Joern Malzahn, (joern.malzahn@tu-dortmund.de)

See also

CodeGenGenerator.CodeGenerator, CodeGenerator.genccodefkine, CodeGenerator.genjacobian
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

CodeGenGenerator.gencoriolis

Generate code for Coriolis force

coriolis = cGen.gencoriolis() is a symbolic matrix ($N \times N$) of centrifugal and Coriolis forces/torques.

Notes

- The Coriolis matrix is stored row by row to avoid memory issues. The generated code recombines these rows to output the full matrix.
- Side effects of execution depends on the cGen flags:
  - saveresult: the symbolic expressions are saved to disk in the directory specified by cGen.sympath
  - genmfun: ready to use m-functions are generated and provided via a subclass of SerialLink stored in cGen.robipath
  - genslblock: a Simulink block is generated and stored in a robot specific block library cGen.slib in the directory cGen.basepath
  - genccode: generates C-functions and -headers in the directory specified by the ccodepath property of the CodeGenerator object.
  - mex: generates robot specific MEX-functions as replacement for the m-functions mentioned above. Access is provided by the SerialLink subclass. The MEX files rely on the C code generated before.

Author

Joern Malzahn, (joern.malzahn@tu-dortmund.de)

See also

CodeGenGenerator.CodeGenerator, CodeGenerator.geninertia, CodeGenerator.genfkine, CodeGenerator.genfdyn

CodeGenGenerator.genfdyn

Generate code for forward dynamics

Iqdd = cGen.genfdyn() is a symbolic vector ($1 \times N$) of joint inertial reaction forces/torques.
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Notes

- Side effects of execution depends on the cGen flags:
  - saveresult: the symbolic expressions are saved to disk in the directory specified by cGen.sympath
  - genmfun: ready to use m-functions are generated and provided via a subclass of SerialLink stored in cGen.robjpath
  - genslblock: a Simulink block is generated and stored in a robot specific block library cGen.slib in the directory cGen.basepath
  - genccode: generates C-functions and -headers in the directory specified by the ccodepath property of the CodeGenerator object.
  - mex: generates robot specific MEX-functions as replacement for the m-functions mentioned above. Access is provided by the SerialLink subclass. The MEX files rely on the C code generated before.

Author

Joern Malzahn, (joern.malzahn@tu-dortmund.de)

See also

CodeGenGeneratorCodeGenGenerator, CodeGenerator.geninertia, CodeGenerator.genfkine

CodeGenGenerator.genfkine

Generate code for forward kinematics

\[ T = \text{cGen}.\text{genfkine}() \] generates a symbolic homogeneous transform matrix \((4 \times 4)\) representing the pose of the robot end-effector in terms of the symbolic joint coordinates \(q_1, q_2, \ldots\)

\[ [T, \text{allt}] = \text{cGen}.\text{genfkine}() \] as above but also generates symbolic homogeneous transform matrices \((4 \times 4 \times N)\) for the poses of the individual robot joints.

Notes

- Side effects of execution depends on the cGen flags:
  - saveresult: the symbolic expressions are saved to disk in the directory specified by cGen.sympath
  - genmfun: ready to use m-functions are generated and provided via a subclass of SerialLink stored in cGen.robjpath
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

– genslblock: a Simulink block is generated and stored in a robot specific block library cGen.slib in the directory cGen.basepath

– genccode: generates C-functions and -headers in the directory specified by the ccodepath property of the CodeGenerator object.

– mex: generates robot specific MEX-functions as replacement for the m-functions mentioned above. Access is provided by the SerialLink subclass. The MEX files rely on the C code generated before.

Author

Joern Malzahn, (joern.malzahn@tu-dortmund.de)

See also

CodeGenGenerator.CodeGenerator, CodeGenerator.geninvdyn, CodeGenerator.genjacobian

CodeGenGenerator.genfriction

Generate code for joint friction

\( f = \text{cGen.genfriction}() \) is the symbolic vector \( (1 \times N) \) of joint friction forces.

Notes

- Side effects of execution depends on the cGen flags:
  - saveresult: the symbolic expressions are saved to disk in the directory specified by cGen.sympath
  - genmfun: ready to use m-functions are generated and provided via a subclass of SerialLink stored in cGen.robjpath
  - genslblock: a Simulink block is generated and stored in a robot specific block library cGen.slib in the directory cGen.basepath
  - genccode: generates C-functions and -headers in the directory specified by the ccodepath property of the CodeGenerator object.
  - mex: generates robot specific MEX-functions as replacement for the m-functions mentioned above. Access is provided by the SerialLink subclass. The MEX files rely on the C code generated before.

Author

Joern Malzahn, (joern.malzahn@tu-dortmund.de)
See also

CodeGenerator, CodeGenerator.geninvdyn, CodeGenerator.genfdyn

---

**CodeGenGenerator.gengravload**

Generate code for gravitational load

\( g = \text{cGen.gengravload}() \) is a symbolic vector \((1 \times N)\) of joint load forces/torques due to gravity.

**Notes**

- Side effects of execution depends on the cGen flags:
  - `saveresult`: the symbolic expressions are saved to disk in the directory specified by cGen.sympath
  - `genmfun`: ready to use m-functions are generated and provided via a subclass of SerialLink stored in cGen.robjpath
  - `genslblock`: a Simulink block is generated and stored in a robot specific block library cGen.slib in the directory cGen.basepath
  - `genccode`: generates C-functions and -headers in the directory specified by the ccodepath property of the CodeGenerator object.
  - `mex`: generates robot specific MEX-functions as replacement for the m-functions mentioned above. Access is provided by the SerialLink subclass. The MEX files rely on the C code generated before.

**Author**

Joern Malzahn, (joern.malzahn@tu-dortmund.de)

---

**CodeGenGenerator.geninertia**

Generate code for inertia matrix

\( I = \text{cGen.geninertia}() \) is the symbolic robot inertia matrix \((N \times N)\).

See also

CodeGenGenerator, CodeGenerator.geninvdyn, CodeGenerator.genfdyn

---
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Notes

- The inertia matrix is stored row by row to avoid memory issues. The generated code recombines these rows to output the full matrix.
- Side effects of execution depends on the cGen flags:
  - saveresult: the symbolic expressions are saved to disk in the directory specified by cGen.sympath
  - genmfun: ready to use m-functions are generated and provided via a subclass of SerialLink stored in cGen.robjpath
  - genslblock: a Simulink block is generated and stored in a robot specific block library cGen.slib in the directory cGen.basepath
  - genccode: generates C-functions and -headers in the directory specified by the ccodepath property of the CodeGenerator object.
  - mex: generates robot specific MEX-functions as replacement for the m-functions mentioned above. Access is provided by the SerialLink subclass. The MEX files rely on the C code generated before.

Author

Joern Malzahn, (joern.malzahn@tu-dortmund.de)

See also

CodeGenGenerator.CodeGenerator, CodeGenerator.geninvdyn, CodeGenerator.genfdyn

CodeGenGenerator.geninvdyn

Generate code for inverse dynamics

\[ \tau = \text{cGen}.\text{geninvdyn}() \] is the symbolic vector \((1 \times N)\) of joint forces/torques.

Notes

- The inverse dynamics vector is composed of the previously computed inertia matrix coriolis matrix, vector of gravitational load and joint friction for speedup. The generated code recombines these components to output the final vector.
- Side effects of execution depends on the cGen flags:
  - saveresult: the symbolic expressions are saved to disk in the directory specified by cGen.sympath
– genmfun: ready to use m-functions are generated and provided via a subclass of SerialLink stored in cGen.robjpath
– genslblock: a Simulink block is generated and stored in a robot specific block library cGen.slib in the directory cGen.basepath
– genccode: generates C-functions and -headers in the directory specified by the ccodepath property of the CodeGenerator object.
– mex: generates robot specific MEX-functions as replacement for the m-functions mentioned above. Access is provided by the SerialLink subclass. The MEX files rely on the C code generated before.

Author

Joern Malzahn, (joern.malzahn@tu-dortmund.de)

See also

CodeGenerator.CodeGenerator, CodeGenerator.genfdyn, CodeGenerator.genfkine

CodeGenGenerator.genjacobian

Generate code for robot Jacobians

\[ \mathbf{j}_0 = \text{cGen}.\text{genjacobian}() \] 

is the symbolic expression for the Jacobian matrix \( (6 \times N) \) expressed in the base coordinate frame.

\[ \mathbf{[j}_0, \mathbf{J}_n] = \text{cGen}.\text{genjacobian}() \) as above but also returns the symbolic expression for the Jacobian matrix \( (6 \times N) \) expressed in the end-effector frame.

Notes

- Side effects of execution depends on the cGen flags:
  - saveresult: the symbolic expressions are saved to disk in the directory specified by cGen.sympath
  - genmfun: ready to use m-functions are generated and provided via a subclass of SerialLink stored in cGen.robjpath
  - genslblock: a Simulink block is generated and stored in a robot specific block library cGen.slib in the directory cGen.basepath
  - genccode: generates C-functions and -headers in the directory specified by the ccodepath property of the CodeGenerator object.
mex: generates robot specific MEX-functions as replacement for the m-functions mentioned above. Access is provided by the SerialLink subclass. The MEX files rely on the C code generated before.

Author

Joern Malzahn, (joern.malzahn@tu-dortmund.de)

See also

CodeGenGenerator.CodeGenerator, CodeGenerator.genfkine

CodeGenGenerator.gemexcoriolis

Generate C-MEX-function for robot coriolis matrix

cGen.gemexcoriolis() generates robot-specific MEX-functions to compute robot coriolis matrix.

Notes

- Is called by CodeGenerator.gencoriolis if cGen has active flag genmex
- The MEX file uses the .c and .h files generated in the directory specified by the ccodepath property of the CodeGenerator object.
- Access to generated functions is provided via subclass of SerialLink whose class definition is stored in cGen.robjpath.
- You will need a C compiler to use the generated MEX-functions. See the MATLAB documentation on how to setup the compiler in MATLAB. Nevertheless the basic C-MEX-code as such may be generated without a compiler. In this case switch the cGen flag compilemex to false.

Author

Joern Malzahn, (joern.malzahn@tu-dortmund.de)

See also

CodeGenGenerator.CodeGenerator, CodeGenerator.gencoriolis
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

CodeGenGenerator.genmexfdyn

Generate C-MEX-function for forward dynamics

cGen.genmexfdyn() generates a robot-specific MEX-function to compute the forward
dynamics.

Notes

- Is called by CodeGenerator.genfdyn if cGen has active flag genmex
- The MEX file uses the .c and .h files generated in the directory specified by the
codepath property of the CodeGenerator object.
- Access to generated function is provided via subclass of SerialLink whose class
definition is stored in cGen.robjpath.
- You will need a C compiler to use the generated MEX-functions. See the MAT-
LAB documentation on how to setup the compiler in MATLAB. Nevertheless
the basic C-MEX-code as such may be generated without a compiler. In this
case switch the cGen flag compilemex to false.

Author

Joern Malzahn, (joern.malzahn@tu-dortmund.de)

See also

CodeGenGenerator.CodeGenerator, CodeGenerator.genfdyn, CodeGenerator.genmexinvdyn

CodeGenGenerator.genmexfkine

Generate C-MEX-function for forward kinematics

cGen.genmexfkine() generates a robot-specific MEX-function to compute forward
kinematics.

Notes

- Is called by CodeGenerator.genfkine if cGen has active flag genmex
- The MEX file uses the .c and .h files generated in the directory specified by the
codepath property of the CodeGenerator object.
• Access to generated function is provided via subclass of SerialLink whose class definition is stored in cGen.robjpath.

• You will need a C compiler to use the generated MEX-functions. See the MATLAB documentation on how to setup the compiler in MATLAB. Nevertheless the basic C-MEX-code as such may be generated without a compiler. In this case switch the cGen flag compilemex to false.

Author

Joern Malzahn, (joern.malzahn@tu-dortmund.de)

See also

codeGenerator.CodeGenerator, CodeGenerator.genfkine

CodeGenGenerator.genmexfriction

Generate C-MEX-function for joint friction

cGen.genmexfriction() generates a robot-specific MEX-function to compute the vector of joint friction.

Notes

• Is called by CodeGenerator.genfriction if cGen has active flag genmex

• The MEX file uses the .c and .h files generated in the directory specified by the ccopath property of the CodeGenerator object.

• Access to generated function is provided via subclass of SerialLink whose class definition is stored in cGen.robjpath.

• You will need a C compiler to use the generated MEX-functions. See the MATLAB documentation on how to setup the compiler in MATLAB. Nevertheless the basic C-MEX-code as such may be generated without a compiler. In this case switch the cGen flag compilemex to false.

Author

Joern Malzahn, (joern.malzahn@tu-dortmund.de)
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

See also

CodeGen Generator.CodeGenerator, CodeGenerator.gengravload

CodeGen Generator.genmexgravload

Generate C-MEX-function for gravitational load

cGen.genmexgravload() generates a robot-specific MEX-function to compute gravitational load forces and torques.

Notes

- Is called by CodeGenerator.gengravload if cGen has active flag genmex
- The MEX file uses the .c and .h files generated in the directory specified by the ccodepath property of the CodeGenerator object.
- Access to generated function is provided via subclass of SerialLink whose class definition is stored in cGen.robjpath.
- You will need a C compiler to use the generated MEX-functions. See the MATLAB documentation on how to setup the compiler in MATLAB. Nevertheless the basic C-MEX-code as such may be generated without a compiler. In this case switch the cGen flag compilemex to false.

Author

Joern Malzahn, (joern.malzahn@tu-dortmund.de)

See also

CodeGen Generator.CodeGenerator, CodeGenerator.gengravload

CodeGen Generator.genmexinertia

Generate C-MEX-function for robot inertia matrix

cGen.genmexinertia() generates robot-specific MEX-functions to compute robot inertia matrix.
Notes

- Is called by CodeGenerator.geninertia if cGen has active flag genmex.
- The MEX file uses the .c and .h files generated in the directory specified by the ccodepath property of the CodeGenerator object.
- Access to generated functions is provided via subclass of SerialLink whose class definition is stored in cGen.robjpath.
- You will need a C compiler to use the generated MEX-functions. See the MATLAB documentation on how to setup the compiler in MATLAB. Nevertheless the basic C-MEX-code as such may be generated without a compiler. In this case switch the cGen flag compilemex to false.

Author

Joern Malzahn, (joern.malzahn@tu-dortmund.de)

See also

CodeGen.CodeGenerator, CodeGenerator.geninertia

CodeGen.genmexinvdyn

Generate C-MEX-function for inverse dynamics

cGen.genmexinvdyn() generates a robot-specific MEX-function to compute the inverse dynamics.

Notes

- Is called by CodeGenerator.geninvdyn if cGen has active flag genmex.
- The MEX file uses the .c and .h files generated in the directory specified by the ccodepath property of the CodeGenerator object.
- Access to generated function is provided via subclass of SerialLink whose class definition is stored in cGen.robjpath.
- You will need a C compiler to use the generated MEX-functions. See the MATLAB documentation on how to setup the compiler in MATLAB. Nevertheless the basic C-MEX-code as such may be generated without a compiler. In this case switch the cGen flag compilemex to false.
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Author

Joern Malzahn, (joern.malzahn@tu-dortmund.de)

See also

CodeGenGenerator.CodeGenerator, CodeGenerator.gengravload

CodeGenGenerator.genmexjacobian

Generate C-MEX-function for the robot Jacobians

cGen.genmexjacobian() generates robot-specific MEX-function to compute the robot Jacobian with respect to the base as well as the end effector frame.

Notes

• Is called by CodeGenerator.genjacobian if cGen has active flag genmex.

• The MEX file uses the .c and .h files generated in the directory specified by the ccodepath property of the CodeGenerator object.

• Access to generated function is provided via subclass of SerialLink whose class definition is stored in cGen.robjpath.

• You will need a C compiler to use the generated MEX-functions. See the MATLAB documentation on how to setup the compiler in MATLAB. Nevertheless the basic C-MEX-code as such may be generated without a compiler. In this case switch the cGen flag compilemex to false.

Author

Joern Malzahn, (joern.malzahn@tu-dortmund.de)

See also

CodeGenGenerator.CodeGenerator, CodeGenerator.genjacobian
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

CodeGenerator.genmfuncoriolis

Generate M-functions for Coriolis matrix

cGen.genmfuncoriolis() generates a robot-specific M-function to compute the Coriolis matrix.

Notes

- Is called by CodeGenerator.gencoriolis if cGen has active flag genmfun
- The Coriolis matrix is stored row by row to avoid memory issues.
- The generated M-function recombines the individual M-functions for each row.
- Access to generated function is provided via subclass of SerialLink whose class definition is stored in cGen.robjpath.

Author

Joern Malzahn, (joern.malzahn@tu-dortmund.de)

See also

CodeGenerator.CodeGenerator, CodeGenerator.gencoriolis, CodeGenerator.geninertia

CodeGenerator.genmfunfdyn

Generate M-function for forward dynamics

cGen.genmfunfdyn() generates a robot-specific M-function to compute the forward dynamics.

Notes

- Is called by CodeGenerator.genfdyn if cGen has active flag genmfun
- The generated M-function is composed of previously generated M-functions for the inertia matrix, coriolis matrix, vector of gravitational load and joint friction vector. This function recombines these components to compute the forward dynamics.
- Access to generated function is provided via subclass of SerialLink whose class definition is stored in cGen.robjpath.
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Author

Joern Malzahn, (joern.malzahn@tu-dortmund.de)

See also

CodeGenGenerator.CodeGenerator, CodeGenerator.geninvdyn, CodeGenerator.genmfunfkine

CodeGenGenerator.genmfunfkine

Generate M-function for forward kinematics

cGen.genmfunfkine() generates a robot-specific M-function to compute forward kinematics.

Notes

- Is called by CodeGenerator.genfkine if cGen has active flag genmfun
- Access to generated function is provided via subclass of SerialLink whose class definition is stored in cGen.robjpath.

Author

Joern Malzahn, (joern.malzahn@tu-dortmund.de)

See also

CodeGenGenerator.CodeGenerator, CodeGenerator.genjacobian, CodeGenerator.genmfunfriction

CodeGenGenerator.genmfunfriction

Generate M-function for joint friction

cGen.genmfunfriction() generates a robot-specific M-function to compute joint friction.
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Notes

• Is called only if cGen has active flag genmfun
• Access to generated function is provided via subclass of SerialLink whose class definition is stored in cGen.robjpath.

Author

Joern Malzahn, (joern.malzahn@tu-dortmund.de)

See also

CodeGenGenerator.CodeGenerator, CodeGenerator.gengravload

CodeGenGenerator.genmfungravload

Generate M-functions for gravitational load

cGen.genmfungravload() generates a robot-specific M-function to compute gravitation load forces and torques.

Notes

• Is called by CodeGenerator.gengravload if cGen has active flag genmfun
• Access to generated function is provided via subclass of SerialLink whose class definition is stored in cGen.robjpath.

Author

Joern Malzahn, (joern.malzahn@tu-dortmund.de)

See also

CodeGenGenerator.CodeGenerator, CodeGenerator.geninertia
**CodeGenGenerator.genmfuninertia**

Generate M-function for robot inertia matrix

cGen.genmfuninertia() generates a robot-specific M-function to compute robot inertia matrix.

**Notes**

- Is called by CodeGenerator.geninertia if cGen has active flag genmfun
- The inertia matrix is stored row by row to avoid memory issues.
- The generated M-function recombines the individual M-functions for each row.
- Access to generated function is provided via subclass of SerialLink whose class definition is stored in cGen.robjpath.

**Author**

Joern Malzahn, (joern.malzahn@tu-dortmund.de)

**See also**

CodeGenGenerator.CodeGenerator, CodeGenerator.gencoriolis

---

**CodeGenGenerator.genmfuninvdyn**

Generate M-functions for inverse dynamics

cGen.genmfuninvdyn() generates a robot-specific M-function to compute inverse dynamics.

**Notes**

- Is called by CodeGenerator.geninvdyn if cGen has active flag genmfun
- The generated M-function is composed of previously generated M-functions for the inertia matrix, coriolis matrix, vector of gravitational load and joint friction vector. This function recombines these components to compute the inverse dynamics.
- Access to generated function is provided via subclass of SerialLink whose class definition is stored in cGen.robjpath.
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Author
Joern Malzahn, (joern.malzahn@tu-dortmund.de)

See also
CodeGenGenerator.CodeGenerator, CodeGenerator.geninvdyn
CodeGenGenerator.genmfunjacobian

CodeGenGenerator.genmfunjacobian
Generate M-functions for robot Jacobian

cGen.genmfunjacobian() generates a robot-specific M-function to compute robot Jacobian.

Notes
• Is called by CodeGenerator.genjacobian, if cGen has active flag genmfun
• Access to generated function is provided via subclass of SerialLink whose class definition is stored in cGen.robjpath.

Author
Joern Malzahn, (joern.malzahn@tu-dortmund.de)

See also
CodeGenGenerator.CodeGenerator, CodeGenerator.gencoriolis

CodeGenGenerator.genslblockcoriolis
Generate Simulink block for Coriolis matrix

cGen.genslblockcoriolis() generates a robot-specific Simulink block to compute Coriolis/centripetal matrix.
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Notes

- Is called by CodeGenerator.gencoriolis if cGen has active flag genslblock
- The Coriolis matrix is stored row by row to avoid memory issues.
- The Simulink block recombines the the individual blocks for each row.
- Access to generated function is provided via subclass of SerialLink whose class definition is stored in cGen.robjpath.

Author

Joern Malzahn, (joern.malzahn@tu-dortmund.de)

See also

CodeGenerator.CodeGenerator, CodeGenerator.gencoriolis

CodeGenerror.genslblockfdyn

Generate Simulink block for forward dynamics

cGen.genslblockfdyn() generates a robot-specific Simulink block to compute forward dynamics.

Notes

- Is called by CodeGenerator.genfdyn if cGen has active flag genslblock
- The generated Simulink block is composed of previously generated blocks for the inertia matrix, coriolis matrix, vector of gravitational load and joint friction vector. The block recombines these components to compute the forward dynamics.
- Access to generated function is provided via subclass of SerialLink whose class definition is stored in cGen.robjpath.

Author

Joern Malzahn, (joern.malzahn@tu-dortmund.de)
See also

CodeGen.CodeGenerator, CodeGenerator.genfkine

cGen.genslblockfkine() generates a robot-specific Simulink block to compute forward kinematics.

Notes

- Is called by CodeGenerator.genfkine if cGen has active flag genslblock.
- The Simulink blocks are generated and stored in a robot specific block library cGen.slib in the directory cGen.basepath.
- Blocks are created for intermediate transforms T0, T1 etc. as well.

Author

Joern Malzahn, (joern.malzahn@tu-dortmund.de)

See also

CodeGen.CodeGenerator, CodeGenerator.genfkine

cGen.genslblockfriction() generates a robot-specific Simulink block to compute the joint friction model.

Notes

- Is called by CodeGenerator.genfriction if cGen has active flag genslblock.
- The Simulink blocks are generated and stored in a robot specific block library cGen.slib in the directory cGen.basepath.
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Author

Joern Malzahn, (joern.malzahn@tu-dortmund.de)

See also

CodeGen.CodeGenerator, CodeGenerator.gengravload
CodeGen.genslblockgravload

CodeGen.genslblockgravload

Generate Simulink block for gravitational load

cGen.genslblockgravload() generates a robot-specific Simulink block to compute gravitational load.

Notes

• Is called by CodeGenerator.gengravload if cGen has active flag genslblock
• The Simulink blocks are generated and stored in a robot specific block library cGen.slib in the directory cGen.basepath.

Author

Joern Malzahn, (joern.malzahn@tu-dortmund.de)

See also CodeGenerator.CodeGenerator, CodeGenerator.gengravload

CodeGen.genslblockinertia

Generate Simulink block for inertia matrix

cGen.genslblockinertia() generates a robot-specific Simulink block to compute robot inertia matrix.

Notes

• Is called by CodeGenerator.geninertia if cGen has active flag genslblock
• The Inertia matrix is stored row by row to avoid memory issues.
• The Simulink block recombines the the individual blocks for each row.
• The Simulink blocks are generated and stored in a robot specific block library cGen.slib in the directory cGen.basepath.

Author

Joern Malzahn, (joern.malzahn@tu-dortmund.de)

See also

CodeGenGenerator.CodeGenerator, CodeGenerator.geninertia

CodeGenGenerator.genslblockinvdyn

Generate Simulink block for inverse dynamics

cGen.genslblockinvdyn() generates a robot-specific Simulink block to compute inverse dynamics.

Notes

• Is called by CodeGenerator.geninvdyn if cGen has active flag genslblock

• The generated Simulink block is composed of previously generated blocks for the inertia matrix, coriolis matrix, vector of gravitational load and joint friction vector. The block recombines these components to compute the forward dynamics.

• The Simulink blocks are generated and stored in a robot specific block library cGen.slib in the directory cGen.basepath.

Author

Joern Malzahn, (joern.malzahn@tu-dortmund.de)

See also

CodeGenGenerator.CodeGenerator, CodeGenerator.geninvdyn
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

CodeGenGenerator.genslblockjacobian

Generate Simulink block for robot Jacobians

cGen.genslblockjacobian() generates a robot-specific Simulink block to compute robot Jacobians (world and tool frame).

Notes

- Is called by CodeGenerator.genjacobian if cGen has active flag genslblock
- The Simulink blocks are generated and stored in a robot specific block library cGen.slib in the directory cGen.basepath.

Author

Joern Malzahn, (joern.malzahn@tu-dortmund.de)

See also

CodeGenGenerator.CodeGenerator, CodeGenerator.genjacobian

CodeGenGenerator.logmsg

Print CodeGenerator logs.

count = CGen.logmsg( FORMAT, A, ...) is the number of characters written to the CGen.logfile. For the additional arguments see fprintf.

Note

Matlab ships with a function for writing formatted strings into a text file or to the console (fprintf). The function works with single target identifiers (file, console, string). This function uses the same syntax as for the fprintf function to output log messages to either the Matlab console, a log file or both.

Authors

Joern Malzahn, (joern.malzahn@tu-dortmund.de)
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

See also
multidfprintf, fprintf, sprintf

CodeGenGenerator.purge

Cleanup generated files

cGen.purge() deletes all generated files, first displays a question dialog to make sure the user really wants to delete all generated files.
cGen.purge(1) as above but skips the question dialog.

Author

CodeGenGenerator.rmpath

Removes generated code from search path

cGen.rmpath() removes generated m-functions and block library from the MATLAB function search path.

Author

See also
rmpath
colnorm

Column-wise norm of a matrix

cn = colnorm(a) is a vector (1 × M) comprising the Euclidean norm of each column of the matrix a (N × M).

See also

norm

c traj

Cartesian trajectory between two poses

tc = c traj(T0, T1, n) is a Cartesian trajectory (4 × 4 × n) from pose T0 to T1 with n points that follow a trapezoidal velocity profile along the path. The Cartesian trajectory is a homogeneous transform sequence and the last subscript being the point index, that is, T(:,:,i) is the i\text{th} point along the path.

tc = c traj(T0, T1, s) as above but the elements of s (n × 1) specify the fractional distance along the path, and these values are in the range [0 1]. The i\text{th} point corresponds to a distance s(i) along the path.

Notes

• If T0 or T1 is equal to [] it is taken to be the identity matrix.
• In the second case s could be generated by a scalar trajectory generator such as TPOLY or LSPB (default).
• Orientation interpolation is performed using quaternion interpolation.

Reference

Robotics, Vision & Control, Sec 3.1.5, Peter Corke, Springer 2011

See also

lspb, mstraj, trinterp, UnitQuaternion.interp, SE3.c traj
**delta2tr**

Convert differential motion to a homogeneous transform

\[ T = \text{delta2tr}(d) \]

is a homogeneous transform \((4 \times 4)\) representing differential translation and rotation. The vector \(d=(dx, dy, dz, dRx, dRy, dRz)\) represents an infinitesimal motion, and is an approximation to the spatial velocity multiplied by time.

See also

\text{tr2delta}, \text{SE3.delta}

---

**DHFactor**

Simplify symbolic link transform expressions

\[ f = \text{dhfactor}(s) \]

is an object that encodes the kinematic model of a robot provided by a string \(s\) that represents a chain of elementary transforms from the robot’s base to its tool tip. The chain of elementary rotations and translations is symbolically factored into a sequence of link transforms described by DH parameters.

For example:

\[ s = 'Rz(q1).Rx(q2).Ty(L1).Rx(q3).Tz(L2)'; \]

indicates a rotation of q1 about the z-axis, then rotation of q2 about the x-axis, translation of L1 about the y-axis, rotation of q3 about the x-axis and translation of L2 along the z-axis.

**Methods**

- **base** the base transform as a Java string
- **tool** the tool transform as a Java string
- **command** a command string that will create a SerialLink() object representing the specified kinematics
- **char** convert to string representation
- **display** display in human readable form

**Example**

>> s = 'Rz(q1).Rx(q2).Ty(L1).Rx(q3).Tz(L2)';
>> dh = DHFactor(s);
>> dh
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

\[ \text{DH}(q_1+90, 0, 0, +90).\text{DH}(q_2, L_1, 0, 0).\text{DH}(q_3-90, L_2, 0, 0).\text{Rz}(+90).\text{Rx}(-90).\text{Rz}(-90) \]

\[ \gg \text{r} = \text{eval( dh.command('myrobot') )}; \]

Notes

- Variables starting with \( q \) are assumed to be joint coordinates.
- Variables starting with \( L \) are length constants.
- Length constants must be defined in the workspace before executing the last line above.
- Implemented in Java.
- Not all sequences can be converted to DH format, if conversion cannot be achieved an error is reported.

Reference

- Robotics, Vision & Control, Sec 7.5.2, 7.7.1, Peter Corke, Springer 2011.

See also

SerialLink

Diff2

First-order difference

\( \text{d} = \text{diff2}(v) \) is the first-order difference \((1 \times N)\) of the series data in vector \( v \) \((1 \times N)\) and the first element is zero.

\( \text{d} = \text{diff2}(a) \) is the first-order difference \((M \times N)\) of the series data in each row of the matrix \( a \) \((M \times N)\) and the first element in each row is zero.

Notes

- Unlike the builtin function \text{DIFF}, the result of \text{diff2} has the same number of columns as the input.
See also

diff

distanceexform

Distance transform

d = distanceexform(im, options) is the distance transform of the binary image im. The elements of d have a value equal to the shortest distance from that element to a non-zero pixel in the input image im.

d = distanceexform(occgrid, goal, options) is the distance transform of the occupancy grid occgrid with respect to the specified goal point goal = [X,Y]. The cells of the grid have values of 0 for free space and 1 for obstacle. The resulting matrix d has cells whose value is the shortest distance to the goal from that cell, or NaN if the cell corresponds to an obstacle (set to 1 in occgrid).

Options:

'euclidean'    Use Euclidean (L2) distance metric (default)
'cityblock'    Use cityblock or Manhattan (L1) distance metric
'show', d     Show the iterations of the computation, with a delay of d seconds between frames.
'noipt'       Don’t use Image Processing Toolbox, even if available
'novlfeat'    Don’t use VLFeat, even if available
'nofast'      Don’t use IPT, VLFeat or imorph, even if available.

Notes

• For the first case Image Processing Toolbox (IPT) or VLFeat will be used if available, searched for in that order. They use a 2-pass rather than iterative algorithm and are much faster.

• Options can be used to disable use of IPT or VLFeat.

• If IPT or VLFeat are not available, or disabled, then imorph is used.

• If IPT, VLFeat or imorph are not available a slower M-function is used.

• If the ‘show’ option is given then imorph is used.
  – Using imorph requires iteration and is slow.
  – For the second case the Machine Vision Toolbox function imorph is required.
  – imorph is a mex file and must be compiled.
The goal is given as [X,Y] not MATLAB [row,col] format.

See also
imorph, DXform

distributeblocks

Distribute blocks in Simulink block library
distributeblocks(model) equidistantly distributes blocks in a Simulink block library named model.

Notes
• The MATLAB functions to create Simulink blocks from symbolic expressions actually place all blocks on top of each other. This function scans a simulink model and rearranges the blocks on an equidistantly spaced grid.
• The Simulink model must already be opened before running this function!

Author
Joern Malzahn, (joern.malzahn@tu-dortmund.de)

See also
symexpr2slblock, doesblockexist

doesblockexist

Check existence of block in Simulink model
res = doesblockexist(mdlname, blockaddress) is a logical result that indicates whether or not the block blockaddress exists within the Simulink model mdlname.
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Author

Joern Malzahn, (joern.malzahn@tu-dortmund.de)

See also

symexpr2slblock, distributeblocks

Dstar

D* navigation class

A concrete subclass of the abstract Navigation class that implements the D* navigation algorithm. This provides minimum distance paths and facilitates incremental replanning.

Methods

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dstar</td>
<td>Constructor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plan</td>
<td>Compute the cost map given a goal and map</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>query</td>
<td>Find a path</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plot</td>
<td>Display the obstacle map</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>display</td>
<td>Print the parameters in human readable form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>char</td>
<td>Convert to string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>modify_cost</td>
<td>Modify the costmap</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Properties (read only)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>distancemap</td>
<td>Distance from each point to the goal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>costmap</td>
<td>Cost of traversing cell (in any direction).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>niter</td>
<td>Number of iterations.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example

```matlab
load map % load map
goal = [50,30];
start=[20,10];
ds = Dstar(map); % create navigation object
ds.plan(goal) % create plan for specified goal
ds.query(start) % animate path from this start location
```

Robotics Toolbox 10.3.1 for MATLAB® 89 Copyright © Peter Corke 2018
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Notes

- Obstacles are represented by Inf in the costmap.
- The value of each element in the costmap is the shortest distance from the corresponding point in the map to the current goal.

References

- Robotics, Vision & Control, Sec 5.2.2, Peter Corke, Springer, 2011.

See also

Navigation, DXform, PRM

Dstar.Dstar

D* constructor

ds = Dstar(map, options) is a D* navigation object, and map is an occupancy grid, a representation of a planar world as a matrix whose elements are 0 (free space) or 1 (occupied). The occupancy grid is coverted to a costmap with a unit cost for traversing a cell.

Options

- ‘goal’, G Specify the goal point (2 × 1)
- ‘metric’, M Specify the distance metric as ‘euclidean’ (default) or ‘cityblock’.
- ‘inflate’, K Inflate all obstacles by K cells.
- ‘progress’ Don’t display the progress spinner

Other options are supported by the Navigation superclass.

See also

Navigation.Navigation
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Dstar.char

Convert navigation object to string

Dstar.char() is a string representing the state of the Dstar object in human-readable form.

See also

Dstar.display, Navigation.char

Dstar.modify_cost

Modify cost map

Dstar.modify_cost(p, C) modifies the cost map for the points described by the columns of \( p \ (2 \times N) \) and sets them to the corresponding elements of \( C \ (1 \times N) \). For the particular case where \( p \ (2 \times 2) \) the first and last columns define the corners of a rectangular region which is set to \( C \ (1 \times 1) \).

Notes

- After one or more point costs have been updated the path should be replanned by calling Dstar.plan().

See also

Dstar.set_cost

Dstar.plan

Plan path to goal

Dstar.plan(options) create a D* plan to reach the goal from all free cells in the map. Also updates a D* plan after changes to the costmap. The goal is as previously specified.

Dstar.plan(goal.options) as above but goal given explicitly.

Options

- ‘animate’ Plot the distance transform as it evolves
- ‘progress’ Display a progress bar

Robotics Toolbox 10.3.1 for MATLAB® 91 Copyright ©Peter Corke 2018
Note

- If a path has already been planned, but the costmap was modified, then reinvoking this method will replan, incrementally updating the plan at lower cost than a full replan.
- The reset method causes a fresh plan, rather than replan.

See also

Dstar.reset

Dstar.plot

Visualize navigation environment

DSt.plot() displays the occupancy grid and the goal distance in a new figure. The goal distance is shown by intensity which increases with distance from the goal. Obstacles are overlaid and shown in red.

DSt.plot(p) as above but also overlays a path given by the set of points \( p \) \((M \times 2)\).

See also

Navigation.plot

Dstar.reset

Reset the planner

DSt.reset() resets the D* planner. The next instantiation of DSt.plan() will perform a global replan.

Dstar.set_cost

Set the current costmap

DSt.set_cost(C) sets the current costmap. The cost map is the same size as the occupancy grid and the value of each element represents the cost of traversing the cell. A high value indicates that the cell is more costly (difficult) to traverse. A value of Inf indicates an obstacle.
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Notes

• After the cost map is changed the path should be replanned by calling DS.plan().

See also

Dstar.modify_cost

DXform

Distance transform navigation class

A concrete subclass of the abstract Navigation class that implements the distance transform navigation algorithm which computes minimum distance paths.

Methods

- DXform Constructor
- plan Compute the cost map given a goal and map
- query Find a path
- plot Display the distance function and obstacle map
- plot3d Display the distance function as a surface
- display Print the parameters in human readable form
- char Convert to string

Properties (read only)

- distancemap Distance from each point to the goal.
- metric The distance metric, can be ‘euclidean’ (default) or ‘cityblock’

Example

```matlab
load map1 % load map
goal = [50,30]; % goal point
start = [20, 10]; % start point
dx = DXform(map); % create navigation object
dx.plan(goal) % create plan for specified goal
dx.query(start) % animate path from this start location
```

Robotics Toolbox 10.3.1 for MATLAB® 93 Copyright ©Peter Corke 2018
Notes

- Obstacles are represented by NaN in the distancemap.
- The value of each element in the distancemap is the shortest distance from the corresponding point in the map to the current goal.

References

- Robotics, Vision & Control, Sec 5.2.1, Peter Corke, Springer, 2011.

See also

Navigation, Dstar, PRM, distancexform

**DXform.DXform**

Distance transform constructor

\[
dx = \text{DXform}(\text{map}, \text{options})
\]

is a distance transform navigation object, and \text{map} is an occupancy grid, a representation of a planar world as a matrix whose elements are 0 (free space) or 1 (occupied).

Options

- `'goal'`, \(G\)  Specify the goal point \((2 \times 1)\)
- `'metric'`, \(M\)  Specify the distance metric as `'euclidean'` (default) or `'cityblock'`.
- `'inflate'`, \(K\)  Inflate all obstacles by \(K\) cells.

Other options are supported by the Navigation superclass.

See also

Navigation.Navigation

**DXform.char**

Convert to string

\text{DX.char}() is a string representing the state of the object in human-readable form.
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

See also DXform.display, Navigation.char

**DXform.plan**

Plan path to goal

DX.plan(goal, options) plans a path to the goal given to the constructor, updates the internal distancemap where the value of each element is the minimum distance from the corresponding point to the goal.

DX.plan(goal, options) as above but goal is specified explicitly

**Options**

`animate`  Plot the distance transform as it evolves

**Notes**

- This may take many seconds.

See also Navigation.path

**DXform.plot**

Visualize navigation environment

DX.plot(options) displays the occupancy grid and the goal distance in a new figure. The goal distance is shown by intensity which increases with distance from the goal. Obstacles are overlaid and shown in red.

DX.plot(p, options) as above but also overlays a path given by the set of points \( p \ (M \times 2) \).

**Notes**

- See Navigation.plot for options.
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

See also

Navigation.plot

DXform.plot3d

3D costmap view

DX.plot3d() displays the distance function as a 3D surface with distance from goal as the vertical axis. Obstacles are “cut out” from the surface.

DX.plot3d(p) as above but also overlays a path given by the set of points \( p (M \times 2) \).

DX.plot3d(p, ls) as above but plot the line with the MATLAB linestyle \( ls \).

See also

Navigation.plot

e2h

Euclidean to homogeneous

\( H = e2h(E) \) is the homogeneous version \((K+1 \times N)\) of the Euclidean points \( E (K \times N) \) where each column represents one point in \( \mathbb{R}^K \).

See also

h2e

edgelist

Return list of edge pixels for region

\( eg = edgelist(im, seed) \) is a list of edge pixels \((2 \times N)\) of a region in the image \( im \) starting at edge coordinate \( seed=[X,Y] \). The edgelist has one column per edge point coordinate \((x,y)\).
\texttt{eg = edgelist(im, seed, direction)} as above, but the direction of edge following is specified. \texttt{direction == 0} (default) means clockwise, non zero is counter-clockwise. Note that direction is with respect to y-axis upward, in matrix coordinate frame, not image frame.

\texttt{[eg,d] = edgelist(im, seed, direction)} as above but also returns a vector of edge segment directions which have values 1 to 8 representing W SW S SE E NW N NW respectively.

\textbf{Notes}

- Coordinates are given assuming the matrix is an image, so the indices are always in the form \((x,y)\) or \((\text{column},\text{row})\).
- \texttt{im} is a binary image where 0 is assumed to be background, non-zero is an object.
- \texttt{seed} must be a point on the edge of the region.
- The seed point is always the first element of the returned \texttt{edgelist}.
- 8-direction chain coding can give incorrect results when used with blobs found using 4-way connectivity.

\textbf{Reference}


\textbf{See also}

\texttt{ilabel}

\section*{EKF}

\textbf{Extended Kalman Filter for navigation}

Extended Kalman filter for optimal estimation of state from noisy measurements given a non-linear dynamic model. This class is specific to the problem of state estimation for a vehicle moving in \(\text{SE}(2)\).

This class can be used for:
- dead reckoning localization
• map-based localization
• map making
• simultaneous localization and mapping (SLAM)

It is used in conjunction with:
• a kinematic vehicle model that provides odometry output, represented by a Vehicle subclass object.
• The vehicle must be driven within the area of the map and this is achieved by connecting the Vehicle subclass object to a Driver object.
• a map containing the position of a number of landmark points and is represented by a LandmarkMap object.
• a sensor that returns measurements about landmarks relative to the vehicle’s pose and is represented by a Sensor object subclass.

The EKF object updates its state at each time step, and invokes the state update methods of the vehicle object. The complete history of estimated state and covariance is stored within the EKF object.

Methods

run run the filter
plot_xy plot the actual path of the vehicle
plot_P plot the estimated covariance norm along the path
plot_map plot estimated landmark points and confidence limits
plot_vehicle plot estimated vehicle covariance ellipses
plot_error plot estimation error with standard deviation bounds
display print the filter state in human readable form
char convert the filter state to human readable string

Properties

x_est estimated state
P estimated covariance
V_est estimated odometry covariance
W_est estimated sensor covariance
landmarks maps sensor landmark id to filter state element
robot reference to the Vehicle object
sensor reference to the Sensor subclass object
history vector of structs that hold the detailed filter state from each time step
verbose show lots of detail (default false)
joseph use Joseph form to represent covariance (default true)
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Vehicle position estimation (localization)

Create a vehicle with odometry covariance $V$, add a driver to it, create a Kalman filter with estimated covariance $V_{\text{est}}$ and initial state covariance $P_0$

```matlab
veh = Vehicle(V);
veh.add_driver(RandomPath(20, 2));
ekf = EKF(veh, V_est, P0);
```

We run the simulation for 1000 time steps

```matlab
ekf.run(1000);
```

then plot true vehicle path

```matlab
veh.plot_xy('b');
```

and overlay the estimated path

```matlab
ekf.plot_xy('r');
```

and overlay uncertainty ellipses

```matlab
ekf.plot_ellipse('g');
```

We can plot the covariance against time as

```matlab
clf
ekf.plot_P();
```

Map-based vehicle localization

Create a vehicle with odometry covariance $V$, add a driver to it, create a map with 20 point landmarks, create a sensor that uses the map and vehicle state to estimate landmark range and bearing with covariance $W$, the Kalman filter with estimated covariances $V_{\text{est}}$ and $W_{\text{est}}$ and initial vehicle state covariance $P_0$

```matlab
veh = Bicycle(V);
veh.add_driver(RandomPath(20, 2));
map = LandmarkMap(20);
sensor = RangeBearingSensor(veh, map, W);
ekf = EKF(veh, V_est, P0, sensor, W_est, map);
```

We run the simulation for 1000 time steps

```matlab
ekf.run(1000);
```

then plot the map and the true vehicle path

```matlab
map.plot();
veh.plot_xy('b');
```

and overlay the estimated path

```matlab
ekf.plot_xy('r');
```

and overlay uncertainty ellipses

```matlab
ekf.plot_ellipse('g');
```

We can plot the covariance against time as

```matlab
clf
ekf.plot_P();
```
Vehicle-based map making

Create a vehicle with odometry covariance \( V \), add a driver to it, create a sensor that uses the map and vehicle state to estimate landmark range and bearing with covariance \( W \), the Kalman filter with estimated sensor covariance \( W_{\text{est}} \) and a “perfect” vehicle (no covariance), then run the filter for \( N \) time steps.

```matlab
veh = Vehicle(V);
veh.add_driver(RandomPath(20, 2));
map = LandmarkMap(20);
sensor = RangeBearingSensor(veh, map, W);
ekf = EKF(veh, [], [], sensor, W_est, []);
```

We run the simulation for 1000 time steps

```
ekf.run(1000);
```

Then plot the true map

```
map.plot();
```

and overlay the estimated map with 97% confidence ellipses

```
ekf.plot_map('g', 'confidence', 0.97);
```

Simultaneous localization and mapping (SLAM)

Create a vehicle with odometry covariance \( V \), add a driver to it, create a map with 20 point landmarks, create a sensor that uses the map and vehicle state to estimate landmark range and bearing with covariance \( W \), the Kalman filter with estimated covariances \( V_{\text{est}} \) and \( W_{\text{est}} \) and initial state covariance \( P_0 \), then run the filter to estimate the vehicle state at each time step and the map.

```matlab
veh = Vehicle(V);
veh.add_driver(RandomPath(20, 2));
map = PointMap(20);
sensor = RangeBearingSensor(veh, map, W);
ekf = EKF(veh, V_est, P0, sensor, W, []);
```

We run the simulation for 1000 time steps

```
ekf.run(1000);
```

then plot the map and the true vehicle path

```
map.plot();
veh.plot_xy('b');
```

and overlay the estimated path

```
ekf.plot_xy('r');
```

and overlay uncertainty ellipses

```
ekf.plot_ellipse('g');
```

We can plot the covariance against time as

```
clf
ekf.plot_P();
```

Then plot the true map
map.plot();
and overlay the estimated map with 3 sigma ellipses
ekf.plot_map(3, 'g');

References

Robotics, Vision & Control, Chap 6, Peter Corke, Springer 2011
Stochastic processes and filtering theory, AH Jazwinski Academic Press 1970

Acknowledgement

Inspired by code of Paul Newman, Oxford University, http://www.robots.ox.ac.uk/ pnew-
man

See also

Vehicle, RandomPath, RangeBearingSensor, PointMap, ParticleFilter

EKF.EKF

EKF object constructor

E = EKF(vehicle, v_est, p0, options) is an EKF that estimates the state of the vehicle
(subclass of Vehicle) with estimated odometry covariance v_est (2 x 2) and initial
covariance (3 x 3).

E = EKF(vehicle, v_est, p0, sensor, w_est, map, options) as above but uses infor-
mation from a vehicle mounted sensor, estimated sensor covariance w_est and a map
(LandmarkMap class).

Options

'verbose' Be verbose.
'nohistory' Don't keep history.
'joseph' Use Joseph form for covariance
'dim', D Dimension of the robot's workspace.

- D scalar; X: -D to +D, Y: -D to +D
- D (1 x 2); X: -D(1) to +D(1), Y: -D(2) to +D(2)
- D (1 x 4); X: D(1) to D(2), Y: D(3) to D(4)
Notes

- If map is [] then it will be estimated.
- If v_est and p0 are [] the vehicle is assumed error free and the filter will only estimate the landmark positions (map).
- If v_est and p0 are finite the filter will estimate the vehicle pose and the landmark positions (map).
- EKF subclasses Handle, so it is a reference object.
- Dimensions of workspace are normally taken from the map if given.

See also

Vehicle, Bicycle, Unicycle, Sensor, RangeBearingSensor, LandmarkMap

EKF.char

Convert to string

E.char() is a string representing the state of the EKF object in human-readable form.

See also

EKF.display

EKF.display

Display status of EKF object

E.display() displays the state of the EKF object in human-readable form.

Notes

- This method is invoked implicitly at the command line when the result of an expression is a EKF object and the command has no trailing semicolon.

See also

EKF.char
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

**EKF.get_map**

Get landmarks

\[
p = \text{E.get_map}() \text{ is the estimated landmark coordinates } (2 \times N) \text{ one per column. If the landmark was not estimated the corresponding column contains NaNs.}
\]

**See also**

EKF.plot_map, EKF.plot_ellipse

---

**EKF.get_P**

Get covariance magnitude

\[
\text{E.get_P}() \text{ is a vector of estimated covariance magnitude at each time step.}
\]

---

**EKF.get_xy**

Get vehicle position

\[
p = \text{E.get_xy}() \text{ is the estimated vehicle pose trajectory as a matrix } (N \times 3) \text{ where each row is x, y, theta.}
\]

**See also**

EKF.plot_xy, EKF.plot_error, EKF.plot_ellipse, EKF.plot_P

---

**EKF.init**

Reset the filter

\[
\text{E.init}() \text{ resets the filter state and clears landmarks and history.}
\]
**EKF.plot_ellipse**

Plot vehicle covariance as an ellipse

E.plot_ellipse() overlay the current plot with the estimated vehicle position covariance ellipses for 20 points along the path.

E.plot_ellipse(ls) as above but pass line style arguments ls to plot_ellipse.

**Options**

- `'interval', I`  Plot an ellipse every I steps (default 20)
- `'confidence', C`  Confidence interval (default 0.95)

**See also**

plot_ellipse

---

**EKF.plot_error**

Plot vehicle position

E.plot_error(options) plot the error between actual and estimated vehicle path (x, y, theta) versus time. Heading error is wrapped into the range [-pi,pi)

**Options**

- `'bound', S`  Display the confidence bounds (default 0.95).
- `'color', C`  Display the bounds using color C
- LS  Use MATLAB linestyle LS for the plots

**Notes**

- The bounds show the instantaneous standard deviation associated with the state. Observations tend to decrease the uncertainty while periods of dead-reckoning increase it.
- Set bound to zero to not draw confidence bounds.
- Ideally the error should lie “mostly” within the +/-3sigma bounds.
See also

EKF.plot_xy, EKF.plot_ellipse, EKF.plot_P

EKF.plot_map

Plot landmarks

E.plot_map(options) overlay the current plot with the estimated landmark position (a +-marker) and a covariance ellipses.
E.plot_map(ls, options) as above but pass line style arguments ls to plot_ellipse.

Options

‘confidence’, C Draw ellipse for confidence value C (default 0.95)

See also

EKF.get_map, EKF.plot_ellipse

EKF.plot_P

Plot covariance magnitude

E.plot_P() plots the estimated covariance magnitude against time step.
E.plot_P(ls) as above but the optional line style arguments ls are passed to plot.

EKF.plot_xy

Plot vehicle position

E.plot_xy() overlay the current plot with the estimated vehicle path in the xy-plane.
E.plot_xy(ls) as above but the optional line style arguments ls are passed to plot.

See also

EKF.get_xy, EKF.plot_error, EKF.plot_ellipse, EKF.plot_P
**EKF.run**

Run the filter

E.run(n, options) runs the filter for n time steps and shows an animation of the vehicle moving.

**Options**

- ‘plot’ Plot an animation of the vehicle moving

**Notes**

- All previously estimated states and estimation history are initially cleared.

---

**ETS2**

**Elementary transform sequence in 2D**

This class and package allows experimentation with sequences of spatial transformations in 2D.

```matlab
import ETS2.*
a1 = 1; a2 = 1;
E = Rz('q1') * Tx(a1) * Rz('q2') * Tx(a2)
```

**Operation methods**

- fkine forward kinematics

**Information methods**

- isjoint test if transform is a joint
- njoints the number of joint variables

structure a string listing the joint types
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Display methods

display  display value as a string
plot     graphically display the sequence as a robot
teach    graphically display as robot and allow user control

Conversion methods

char    convert to string
string  convert to string with symbolic variables

Operators

*       compound two elementary transforms
+       compound two elementary transforms

Notes

• The sequence is an array of objects of superclass ETS2, but with distinct subclasses: Rz, Tx, Ty.
• Use the command ‘clear imports’ after using ETS3.

See also

ETS3

ETS2.ETS2

Create an ETS2 object

\[ \mathbf{E} = \text{ETS2}(\mathbf{w}, \mathbf{v}) \] is a new ETS2 object that defines an elementary transform where \( \mathbf{w} \) is ‘Rz’, ‘Tx’ or ‘Ty’ and \( \mathbf{v} \) is the parameter for the transform. If \( \mathbf{v} \) is a string of the form ‘qN’ where \( N \) is an integer then the transform is considered to be a joint. Otherwise the transform is a constant.

\[ \mathbf{E} = \text{ETS2}(\mathbf{e1}) \] is a new ETS2 object that is a clone of the ETS2 object \( \mathbf{e1} \).

See also

ETS2.Rz, ETS2.Tx, ETS2.Ty
ETS2.char

Convert to string

E.char() is a string showing transform parameters in a compact format. If E is a transform sequence \((1 \times N)\) then the string describes each element in sequence in a single line format.

See also

ETS2.display

ETS2.display

Display parameters

E.display() displays the transform or transform sequence parameters in compact single line format.

Notes

- This method is invoked implicitly at the command line when the result of an expression is an ETS2 object and the command has no trailing semicolon.

See also

ETS2.char

ETS2.find

Find joints in transform sequence

E.find(J) is the index in the transform sequence ETS \((1 \times N)\) corresponding to the \(j^{th}\) joint.
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

ETS2.fkine

Forward kinematics

ETS.fkine(q, options) is the forward kinematics, the pose of the end of the sequence as an SE2 object. \( q_{1 \times N} \) is a vector of joint variables.

ETS.fkine(q, n, options) as above but process only the first \( n \) elements of the transform sequence.

Options

‘deg’  Angles are given in degrees.

ETS2.isjoint

Test if transform is a joint

E.isjoint is true if the transform element is a joint, that is, its parameter is of the form ‘qN’.

ETS2.isprismatic

Test if transform is prismatic joint

E.isprismatic is true if the transform element is a joint, that is, its parameter is of the form ‘qN’ and it controls a translation.

ETS2.mtimes

Compound transforms

E1 * E2 is a sequence of two elementary transform.

See also

ETS2.plus
ETS2.n

Number of joints in transform sequence

E.njoints is the number of joints in the transform sequence.

Notes

• Is a wrapper on njoints, for compatibility with SerialLink object.

See also

ETS2.n

ETS2.njoints

Number of joints in transform sequence

E.njoints is the number of joints in the transform sequence.

See also

ETS2.n

ETS2.plot

Graphical display and animation

ETS.plot(q, options) displays a graphical animation of a robot based on the transform sequence. Constant translations are represented as pipe segments, rotational joints as cylinder, and prismatic joints as boxes. The robot is displayed at the joint angle q (1 × N), or if a matrix (M × N) it is animated as the robot moves along the M-point trajectory.

Options

‘workspace’, W    Size of robot 3D workspace, W = [xmin, xmax ymin ymax zmn zmx]
‘floorlevel’, L    Z-coordinate of floor (default -1)
### CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>delay</code>, D</td>
<td>Delay between frames for animation (s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>fps</code>, fps</td>
<td>Number of frames per second for display, inverse of <code>delay</code> option</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>[no]loop</code></td>
<td>Loop over the trajectory forever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>[no]raise</code></td>
<td>Autoraise the figure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>movie</code>, M</td>
<td>Save an animation to the movie M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>[no]trail</code>, L</td>
<td>Draw a line recording the tip path, with line style L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>scale</code>, S</td>
<td>Annotation scale factor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>zoom</code>, Z</td>
<td>Reduce size of auto-computed workspace by Z, makes robot look bigger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>ortho</code></td>
<td>Orthographic view</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>perspective</code></td>
<td>Perspective view (default)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>view</code>, V</td>
<td>Specify view V='x', 'y', 'top' or [az el] for side elevations, plan view, or general view by azimuth and elevation angle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>[no]top</code></td>
<td>View from the top</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>[no]shading</code></td>
<td>Enable Gouraud shading (default true)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>lightpos</code>, L</td>
<td>Position of the light source (default [0 0 20])</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>[no]name</code></td>
<td>Display the robot’s name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>[no]wrist</code></td>
<td>Enable display of wrist coordinate frame</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>xyz</code></td>
<td>Wrist axis label is XYZ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>noa</code></td>
<td>Wrist axis label is NOA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>[no]arrow</code></td>
<td>Display wrist frame with 3D arrows</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>[no]tiles</code></td>
<td>Enable tiled floor (default true)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>tilesize</code>, S</td>
<td>Side length of square tiles on the floor (default 0.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>tile1color</code>, C</td>
<td>Color of even tiles [r g b] (default [0.5 1 0.5] light green)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>tile2color</code>, C</td>
<td>Color of odd tiles [r g b] (default [1 1 1] white)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>[no]shadow</code></td>
<td>Enable display of shadow (default true)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>shadowcolor</code>, C</td>
<td>Colorspec of shadow, [r g b]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>shadowwidth</code>, W</td>
<td>Width of shadow line (default 6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>[no]jaxes</code></td>
<td>Enable display of joint axes (default false)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>[no]jvec</code></td>
<td>Enable display of joint axis vectors (default false)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>[no]joints</code></td>
<td>Enable display of joints</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>jointcolor</code>, C</td>
<td>Colorspec for joint cylinders (default [0.7 0 0])</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>jointdiam</code>, D</td>
<td>Diameter of joint cylinder in scale units (default 5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>linkcolor</code>, C</td>
<td>Colorspec of links (default &quot;b&quot;)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>[no]base</code></td>
<td>Enable display of base ‘pedestal’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>basecolor</code>, C</td>
<td>Color of base (default ‘k’)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>basewidth</code>, W</td>
<td>Width of base (default 3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The **options** come from 3 sources and are processed in order:

- Cell array of **options** returned by the function `PLOTBOTOPT` (if it exists)
- Cell array of **options** given by the ‘plotopt’ option when creating the SerialLink object.
- List of arguments in the command line.

Many boolean **options** can be enabled or disabled with the ‘no’ prefix. The various option sources can toggle an option, the last value encountered is used.
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Graphical annotations and options

The robot is displayed as a basic stick figure robot with annotations such as:

- shadow on the floor
- XYZ wrist axes and labels
- joint cylinders and axes

which are controlled by options.

The size of the annotations is determined using a simple heuristic from the workspace dimensions. This dimension can be changed by setting the multiplicative scale factor using the ‘mag’ option.

Figure behaviour

- If no figure exists one will be created and the robot drawn in it.
- If no robot of this name is currently displayed then a robot will be drawn in the current figure. If hold is enabled (hold on) then the robot will be added to the current figure.
- If the robot already exists then that graphical model will be found and moved.

Notes

- The options are processed when the figure is first drawn, to make different options come into effect it is necessary to clear the figure.
- Delay between frames can be eliminated by setting option ‘delay’, 0 or ‘fps’, Inf.
- The size of the plot volume is determined by a heuristic for an all-revolute robot. If a prismatic joint is present the ‘workspace’ option is required. The ‘zoom’ option can reduce the size of this workspace.

See also

ETS2.teach, SerialLink.plot3d

ETS2.plus

Compound transforms

E1 + E2 is a sequence of two elementary transform.
See also

ETS2.mtimes

**ETS2.string**

Convert to string with symbolic variables

E.string is a string representation of the transform sequence where non-joint parameters have symbolic names L1, L2, L3 etc.

See also

trchain

**ETS2.structure**

Show joint type structure

E.structure is a character array comprising the letters ‘R’ or ‘P’ that indicates the types of joints in the elementary transform sequence E.

Notes

- The string will be E.njoints long.

See also

SerialLink.config

**ETS2.teach**

Graphical teach pendant

Allow the user to “drive” a graphical robot using a graphical slider panel.

ETS.teach(options) adds a slider panel to a current ETS plot. If no graphical robot exists one is created in a new window.

ETS.teach(q, options) as above but the robot joint angles are set to q (1 × N).
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Options

- 'eul'  Display tool orientation in Euler angles (default)
- 'rpy'  Display tool orientation in roll/pitch/yaw angles
- 'approach'  Display tool orientation as approach vector (z-axis)
- '[no]deg'  Display angles in degrees (default true)

GUI

- The Quit (red X) button removes the teach panel from the robot plot.

Notes

- The currently displayed robots move as the sliders are adjusted.
- The slider limits are derived from the joint limit properties. If not set then for
  - a revolute joint they are assumed to be [-pi, +pi]
  - a prismatic joint they are assumed unknown and an error occurs.

See also

ETS2.plot

ETS3

Elementary transform sequence in 3D

This class and package allows experimentation with sequences of spatial transforma-
tions in 3D.

```python
import +ETS3.*
L1 = 0; L2 = -0.2337; L3 = 0.4318; L4 = 0.0203; L5 = 0.0837; L6 = 0.4318;
E3 = Tz(L1) * Rz('q1') * Ry('q2') * Ty(L2) * Tz(L3) * Ry('q3') * Tx(L4) * Ty(L5) * Tz(L6)
```

Operation methods

fkine
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Information methods

isjoint test if transform is a joint
njoints the number of joint variables
structure a string listing the joint types

Display methods

display display value as a string
plot graphically display the sequence as a robot
teach graphically display as robot and allow user control

Conversion methods

char convert to string
string convert to string with symbolic variables

Operators

* compound two elementary transforms
+ compound two elementary transforms

Notes

• The sequence is an array of objects of superclass ETS3, but with distinct subclasses: Rx, Ry, Rz, Tx, Ty, Tz.
• Use the command ‘clear imports’ after using ETS2.

See also

ETS2

ETS3.ETS3

Create an ETS3 object

E = ETS3(w, v) is a new ETS3 object that defines an elementary transform where w is ‘Rx’, ‘Ry’, ‘Rz’, ‘Tx’, ‘Ty’ or ‘Tz’ and v is the parameter for the transform. If v is a
string of the form ‘qN’ where N is an integer then the transform is considered to be a joint and the parameter is ignored. Otherwise the transform is a constant.

\[ E = \text{ETS3}(e1) \] is a new \text{ETS3} object that is a clone of the \text{ETS3} object \( e1 \).

**See also**

\text{ETS2.Rz}, \text{ETS2.Tx}, \text{ETS2.Ty}

---

**ETS3.char**

Convert to string

\( E \text{.char}() \) is a string showing transform parameters in a compact format. If \( E \) is a transform sequence \((1 \times N)\) then the string describes each element in sequence in a single line format.

**See also**

\text{ETS3.display}

---

**ETS3.display**

Display parameters

\( E \text{.display}() \) displays the transform or transform sequence parameters in compact single line format.

**Notes**

- This method is invoked implicitly at the command line when the result of an expression is an \text{ETS3} object and the command has no trailing semicolon.

**See also**

\text{ETS3.char}
ETS3.find

Find joints in transform sequence

`E.find(J)` is the index in the transform sequence `ETS(1 × N)` corresponding to the `J`th joint.

ETS3.fkine

Forward kinematics

`ETS.fkine(q, options)` is the forward kinematics, the pose of the end of the sequence as an SE3 object. `q (1 × N)` is a vector of joint variables.

`ETS.fkine(q, n, options)` as above but process only the first `n` elements of the transform sequence.

Options

`‘deg’` Angles are given in degrees.

ETS3.isjoint

Test if transform is a joint

`E.isjoint` is true if the transform element is a joint, that is, its parameter is of the form `‘qN’`.

ETS3.isprismatic

Test if transform is prismatic joint

`E.isprismatic` is true if the transform element is a joint, that is, its parameter is of the form `‘qN’` and it controls a translation.
ETS3.mtimes

**Compound transforms**

E1 * E2 is a sequence of two elementary transform.

**See also**

ETS3.plus

ETS3.n

**Number of joints in transform sequence**

E.njoints is the number of joints in the transform sequence.

**Notes**

- Is a wrapper on njoints, for compatibility with SerialLink object.

**See also**

ETS3.n

ETS3.njoints

**Number of joints in transform sequence**

E.njoints is the number of joints in the transform sequence.

**See also**

ETS2.n
ETS.plot

Graphical display and animation

ETS.plot(q, options) displays a graphical animation of a robot based on the transform sequence. Constant translations are represented as pipe segments, rotational joints as cylinder, and prismatic joints as boxes. The robot is displayed at the joint angle q \((1 \times N)\), or if a matrix \((M \times N)\) it is animated as the robot moves along the M-point trajectory.

### Options

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>'workspace', W</td>
<td>Size of robot 3D workspace, ( W = [xmn, xmx ymn ymx zmn zmx] )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'floorlevel', L</td>
<td>Z-coordinate of floor (default -1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'delay', D</td>
<td>Delay between frames for animation (s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'fps', fps</td>
<td>Number of frames per second for display, inverse of 'delay' option</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'[no]loop'</td>
<td>Loop over the trajectory forever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'[no]raise'</td>
<td>Autoraise the figure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'movie', M</td>
<td>Save an animation to the movie ( M )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'trail', L</td>
<td>Draw a line recording the tip path, with line style ( L )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'scale', S</td>
<td>Annotation scale factor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'zoom', Z</td>
<td>Reduce size of auto-computed workspace by ( Z ), makes robot look bigger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'ortho'</td>
<td>Orthographic view</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'perspective'</td>
<td>Perspective view (default)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'view', V</td>
<td>Specify view ( V='x', 'y', 'top' ) or [az el] for side elevations, plan view, or general view by azimuth and elevation angle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'top'</td>
<td>View from the top.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'[no]shading'</td>
<td>Enable Gouraud shading (default true)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'lightpos', L</td>
<td>Position of the light source (default [0 0 20])</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'[no]name'</td>
<td>Display the robot’s name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'[no]wrist'</td>
<td>Enable display of wrist coordinate frame</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'xyz'</td>
<td>Wrist axis label is XYZ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'noa'</td>
<td>Wrist axis label is NOA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'[no]arrow'</td>
<td>Display wrist frame with 3D arrows</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'[no]tiles'</td>
<td>Enable tiled floor (default true)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'tilesize', S</td>
<td>Side length of square tiles on the floor (default 0.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'tile1color', C</td>
<td>Color of even tiles ([r g b]) (default [0.5 1 0.5] light green)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'tile2color', C</td>
<td>Color of odd tiles ([r g b]) (default [1 1 1] white)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'[no]shadow'</td>
<td>Enable display of shadow (default true)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'shadowcolor', C</td>
<td>Colorspec of shadow, ([r g b])</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'shadowwidth', W</td>
<td>Width of shadow line (default 6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'[no]jaxes'</td>
<td>Enable display of joint axes (default false)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'[no]jvec'</td>
<td>Enable display of joint axis vectors (default false)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'[no]joints'</td>
<td>Enable display of joints</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'jointcolor', C</td>
<td>Colorspec for joint cylinders (default ([0.7 0 0]))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'jointcolor', C</td>
<td>Colorspec for joint cylinders (default ([0.7 0 0]))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'jointdiam', D</td>
<td>Diameter of joint cylinder in scale units (default 5)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The options come from 3 sources and are processed in order:

- Cell array of options returned by the function PLOTBOTOPT (if it exists)
- Cell array of options given by the ‘plotopt’ option when creating the SerialLink object.
- List of arguments in the command line.

Many boolean options can be enabled or disabled with the ‘no’ prefix. The various option sources can toggle an option, the last value encountered is used.

**Graphical annotations and options**

The robot is displayed as a basic stick figure robot with annotations such as:

- shadow on the floor
- XYZ wrist axes and labels
- joint cylinders and axes

which are controlled by options.

The size of the annotations is determined using a simple heuristic from the workspace dimensions. This dimension can be changed by setting the multiplicative scale factor using the ‘mag’ option.

**Figure behaviour**

- If no figure exists one will be created and the robot drawn in it.
- If no robot of this name is currently displayed then a robot will be drawn in the current figure. If hold is enabled (hold on) then the robot will be added to the current figure.
- If the robot already exists then that graphical model will be found and moved.

**Notes**

- The options are processed when the figure is first drawn, to make different options come into effect it is necessary to clear the figure.
- Delay between frames can be eliminated by setting option ‘delay’, 0 or ‘fps’, Inf.
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

- The size of the plot volume is determined by a heuristic for an all-revolute robot. If a prismatic joint is present the ‘workspace’ option is required. The ‘zoom’ option can reduce the size of this workspace.

See also

ETS3.teach, SerialLink.plot3d

ETS3.plus

Compound transforms

E1 + E2 is a sequence of two elementary transform.

See also

ETS3.mtimes

ETS3.string

Convert to string with symbolic variables

E.string is a string representation of the transform sequence where non-joint parameters have symbolic names L1, L2, L3 etc.

See also

trcchain

ETS3.structure

Show joint type structure

E.structure is a character array comprising the letters ‘R’ or ‘P’ that indicates the types of joints in the elementary transform sequence E.

Notes

- The string will be E.njoints long.
See also

SerialLink.config

**ETS3.teach**

**Graphical teach pendant**

Allow the user to “drive” a graphical robot using a graphical slider panel.

ETS.teach(options) adds a slider panel to a current ETS plot. If no graphical robot exists one is created in a new window.

ETS.teach(q, options) as above but the robot joint angles are set to q (1 x N).

**Options**

- `‘eul’` Display tool orientation in Euler angles (default)
- `‘rpy’` Display tool orientation in roll/pitch/yaw angles
- `‘approach’` Display tool orientation as approach vector (z-axis)
- `‘[no]deg’` Display angles in degrees (default true)

**GUI**

- The Quit (red X) button removes the teach panel from the robot plot.

**Notes**

- The currently displayed robots move as the sliders are adjusted.
- The slider limits are derived from the joint limit properties. If not set then for
  - a revolute joint they are assumed to be [-pi, +pi]
  - a prismatic joint they are assumed unknown and an error occurs.

See also

ETS3.plot
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

**eul2jac**

Euler angle rate Jacobian

\[ J = \text{eul2jac}(\phi, \theta, \psi) \] is a Jacobian matrix \((3 \times 3)\) that maps Euler angle rates to angular velocity at the operating point specified by the Euler angles \(\phi, \theta, \psi\).

\[ J = \text{eul2jac}(\text{eul}) \] as above but the Euler angles are passed as a vector \(\text{eul}=[\phi, \theta, \psi]\).

**Notes**

- Used in the creation of an analytical Jacobian.

**See also**

rpy2jac, SerialLink.jacobe

---

**eul2r**

Convert Euler angles to rotation matrix

\[ R = \text{eul2r}(\phi, \theta, \psi, \text{options}) \] is an SO(3) orthonormal rotation matrix \((3 \times 3)\) equivalent to the specified Euler angles. These correspond to rotations about the Z, Y, Z axes respectively. If \(\phi, \theta, \psi\) are column vectors \((N \times 1)\) then they are assumed to represent a trajectory and \(R\) is a three-dimensional matrix \((3 \times 3 \times N)\), where the last index corresponds to rows of \(\phi, \theta, \psi\).

\[ R = \text{eul2r}(\text{eul}, \text{options}) \] as above but the Euler angles are taken from the vector \((1 \times 3)\) \(\text{eul} = [\phi \theta \psi]\). If \(\text{eul}\) is a matrix \((N \times 3)\) then \(R\) is a three-dimensional matrix \((3 \times 3 \times N)\), where the last index corresponds to rows of RPY which are assumed to be \([\phi, \theta, \psi]\).

**Options**

‘deg’ Angles given in degrees (radians default)

**Note**

- The vectors \(\phi, \theta, \psi\) must be of the same length.
See also

eul2tr, rpy2tr, tr2eul, SO3.eul

---

**eul2tr**

Convert Euler angles to homogeneous transform

\[ T = \text{eul2tr}(\phi, \theta, \psi, \text{options}) \]

is an SE(3) homogeneous transformation matrix \((4 \times 4)\) with zero translation and rotation equivalent to the specified Euler angles. These correspond to rotations about the Z, Y, Z axes respectively. If \(\phi, \theta, \psi\) are column vectors \((N \times 1)\) then they are assumed to represent a trajectory and \(R\) is a three-dimensional matrix \((4 \times 4 \times N)\), where the last index corresponds to rows of \(\phi, \theta, \psi\).

\[ R = \text{eul2r}(\text{eul, options}) \]

as above but the Euler angles are taken from the vector \((1 \times 3)\) \(\text{eul} = [\phi \theta \psi]\). If \(\text{eul}\) is a matrix \((N \times 3)\) then \(R\) is a three-dimensional matrix \((4 \times 4 \times N)\), where the last index corresponds to rows of RPY which are assumed to be \([\phi, \theta, \psi]\).

**Options**

- ‘deg’ Angles given in degrees (radians default)

**Note**

- The vectors \(\phi, \theta, \psi\) must be of the same length.
- The translational part is zero.

**See also**

eul2r, rpy2tr, tr2eul, SE3.eul
gauss2d

Gaussian kernel

\[
\text{out} = \text{gauss2d}(\text{im}, \sigma, \text{C})
\]

is a unit volume Gaussian kernel rendered into matrix \(\text{out}(W \times H)\) the same size as \(\text{im}(W \times H)\). The Gaussian has a standard deviation of \(\sigma\). The Gaussian is centered at \(\text{C}=[U,V]\).

h2e

Homogeneous to Euclidean

\[
\text{E} = \text{h2e}(\text{H})
\]

is the Euclidean version \((K-1 \times N)\) of the homogeneous points \(\text{H}(K \times N)\) where each column represents one point in \(\mathbb{P}^K\).

See also

e2h

homline

Homogeneous line from two points

\[
\text{L} = \text{homline}(x_1, y_1, x_2, y_2)
\]

is a vector \((3 \times 1)\) which describes a line in homogeneous form that contains the two Euclidean points \((x_1,y_1)\) and \((x_2,y_2)\).

Homogeneous points \(X(3 \times 1)\) on the line must satisfy \(\text{L}'*X = 0\).

See also

plot_homline
homtrans

Apply a homogeneous transformation

\[ \mathbf{p}_2 = \text{homtrans}(\mathbf{T}, \mathbf{p}) \]

applies the homogeneous transformation \( \mathbf{T} \) to the points stored columnwise in \( \mathbf{p} \).

- If \( \mathbf{T} \) is in \( \text{SE}(2) \) (3 \( \times \) 3) and
  - \( \mathbf{p} \) is 2 \( \times \) \( N \) (2D points) they are considered Euclidean (\( \mathbb{R}^2 \))
  - \( \mathbf{p} \) is 3 \( \times \) \( N \) (2D points) they are considered projective (\( \mathbb{P}^2 \))

- If \( \mathbf{T} \) is in \( \text{SE}(3) \) (4 \( \times \) 4) and
  - \( \mathbf{p} \) is 3 \( \times \) \( N \) (3D points) they are considered Euclidean (\( \mathbb{R}^3 \))
  - \( \mathbf{p} \) is 4 \( \times \) \( N \) (3D points) they are considered projective (\( \mathbb{P}^3 \))

\[ \mathbf{t}_p = \text{homtrans}(\mathbf{T}, \mathbf{T}_1) \]

applies homogeneous transformation \( \mathbf{T} \) to the homogeneous transformation \( \mathbf{T}_1 \), that is \( \mathbf{t}_p = \mathbf{T} \mathbf{T}_1 \). If \( \mathbf{T}_1 \) is a 3-dimensional transformation then \( \mathbf{T} \) is applied to each plane as defined by the first two dimensions, i.e. if \( \mathbf{T} = \mathbb{N} \times \mathbb{N} \) and \( \mathbf{T}_1 = \mathbb{N} \times \mathbb{N} \times \mathbb{M} \) then the result is \( \mathbb{N} \times \mathbb{N} \times \mathbb{M} \).

Notes

- \( \mathbf{T} \) is a homogeneous transformation defining the pose of \{B\} with respect to \{A\}.
- The points are defined with respect to frame \{B\} and are transformed to be with respect to frame \{A\}.

See also

e2h, h2e, RTBPose.mtimes

ishomog

Test if \( \text{SE}(3) \) homogeneous transformation matrix

\[ \text{ishomog}(\mathbf{T}) \]

is true (1) if the argument \( \mathbf{T} \) is of dimension 4 \( \times \) 4 or 4 \( \times \) 4 \( \times \) \( N \), else false (0).

\[ \text{ishomog}(\mathbf{T}, \text{‘valid’}) \]

as above, but also checks the validity of the rotation sub-matrix.
Notes

- The first form is a fast, but incomplete, test for a transform is SE(3).

See also

isrot, ishomog2, isvec

ishomog2

Test if SE(2) homogeneous transformation matrix

ishomog2(T) is true (1) if the argument T is of dimension 3 × 3 or 3 × 3 × N, else false (0).

ishomog2(T, ‘valid’) as above, but also checks the validity of the rotation sub-matrix.

Notes

- The first form is a fast, but incomplete, test for a transform in SE(3).

See also

ishomog, isrot2, isvec

isrot

Test if SO(3) rotation matrix

isrot(R) is true (1) if the argument is of dimension 3 × 3 or 3 × 3 × N, else false (0).

isrot(R, ‘valid’) as above, but also checks the validity of the rotation matrix.

Notes

- A valid rotation matrix has determinant of 1.
See also

ishomog, isrot2, isvec

isrot2

Test if SO(2) rotation matrix

isrot2(R) is true (1) if the argument is of dimension 2 × 2 or 2 × 2 × N, else false (0).
isrot2(R, ‘valid’) as above, but also checks the validity of the rotation matrix.

Notes

• A valid rotation matrix has determinant of 1.

See also

isrot, ishomog2, isvec

isunit

Test if vector has unit length

isunit(v) is true if the vector has unit length.

Notes

• A tolerance of 100eps is used.
**isvec**

Test if vector

\( \text{isvec}(\mathbf{v}) \) is true (1) if the argument \( \mathbf{v} \) is a 3-vector, else false (0).

\( \text{isvec}(\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{L}) \) is true (1) if the argument \( \mathbf{v} \) is a vector of length \( \mathbf{L} \), either a row- or column-vector. Otherwise false (0).

**Notes**

- Differs from MATLAB builtin function ISVECTOR, the latter returns true for the case of a scalar, \( \text{isvec} \) does not.
- Gives same result for row- or column-vector, ie. \( 3 \times 1 \) or \( 1 \times 3 \) gives true.

**See also**

ishomog, isrot

---

**jsingu**

Show the linearly dependent joints in a Jacobian matrix

\( \text{jsingu}(\mathbf{J}) \) displays the linear dependency of joints in a Jacobian matrix. This dependency indicates joint axes that are aligned and causes singularity.

**See also**

SerialLink.jacobn

---

**jtraj**

Compute a joint space trajectory

\[
[q, qd, qdd] = \text{jtraj}(q0, qf, m)
\]

is a joint space trajectory \( q \) (\( m \times N \)) where the joint coordinates vary from \( q0 \) (1 \( \times N \)) to \( qf \) (1 \( \times N \)). A quintic (5th order) polynomial is used with default zero boundary conditions for velocity and acceleration. Time is assumed...
to vary from 0 to 1 in \( m \) steps. Joint velocity and acceleration can be optionally returned as \( qd (m \times N) \) and \( qdd (m \times N) \) respectively. The trajectory \( q, qd \) and \( qdd \) are \( m \times N \) matrices, with one row per time step, and one column per joint.

\[
[q, qd, qdd] = \text{jtraj}(q_0, q_f, m, qd_0, qd_f)
\]
as above but also specifies initial \( qd_0 (1 \times N) \) and final \( qd_f (1 \times N) \) joint velocity for the trajectory.

\[
[q, qd, qdd] = \text{jtraj}(q_0, q_f, T)
\]
as above but the number of steps in the trajectory is defined by the length of the time vector \( T (m \times 1) \).

\[
[q, qd, qdd] = \text{jtraj}(q_0, q_f, T, qd_0, qd_f)
\]
as above but specifies initial and final joint velocity for the trajectory and a time vector.

Notes

- When a time vector is provided the velocity and acceleration outputs are scaled assuming that the time vector starts at zero and increases linearly.

See also

qplot, ctraj, SerialLink.jtraj

---

**LandmarkMap**

**Map of planar point landmarks**

A LandmarkMap object represents a square 2D environment with a number of landmark landmark points.

**Methods**

- \text{plot} \quad \text{Plot the landmark map}
- \text{landmark} \quad \text{Return a specified map landmark}
- \text{display} \quad \text{Display map parameters in human readable form}
- \text{char} \quad \text{Convert map parameters to human readable string}

**Properties**

- \text{map} \quad \text{Matrix of map landmark coordinates} \ 2 \times N
- \text{dim} \quad \text{The dimensions of the map region} 
  \text{x,y in [-dim,dim]}
- \text{nlandmarks} \quad \text{The number of map landmarks} N
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Examples

To create a map for an area where X and Y are in the range -10 to +10 metres and with 50 random landmark points

```matlab
map = LandmarkMap(50, 10);
```

which can be displayed by

```matlab
map.plot();
```

Reference

Robotics, Vision & Control, Chap 6, Peter Corke, Springer 2011

See also

RangeBearingSensor, EKF

LandmarkMap.LandmarkMap

Create a map of point landmark landmarks

```matlab
m = LandmarkMap(n, dim, options)
```

is a `LandmarkMap` object that represents `n` random point landmarks in a planar region bounded by +/-`dim` in the x- and y-directions.

Options

- `'verbose'` Be verbose

LandmarkMap.char

Convert map parameters to a string

```matlab
s = M.char()
```

is a string showing map parameters in a compact human readable format.
**LandmarkMap.display**

Display map parameters

M.display() displays map parameters in a compact human readable form.

**Notes**

- This method is invoked implicitly at the command line when the result of an expression is a LandmarkMap object and the command has no trailing semicolon.

**See also**

map.char

---

**LandmarkMap.landmark**

Get landmarks from map

\[ f = M.\text{landmark}(k) \] is the coordinate (2 \times 1) of the \(k^{th}\) landmark (landmark).

---

**LandmarkMap.plot**

Plot the map

M.plot() plots the landmark map in the current figure, as a square region with dimensions given by the M.dim property. Each landmark is marked by a black diamond.

M.plot(ls) as above, but the arguments ls are passed to plot and override the default marker style.

**Notes**

- The plot is left with HOLD ON.
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

LandmarkMap.show

Show the landmark map

Notes

- Deprecated, use plot method.

LandmarkMap.verbosity

Set verbosity

M.verbosity(v) set verbosity to v, where 0 is silent and greater values display more information.

Lattice

Lattice planner navigation class

A concrete subclass of the abstract Navigation class that implements the lattice planner navigation algorithm over an occupancy grid. This performs goal independent planning of kinematically feasible paths.

Methods

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lattice</td>
<td>Constructor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plan</td>
<td>Compute the roadmap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>query</td>
<td>Find a path</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plot</td>
<td>Display the obstacle map</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>display</td>
<td>Display the parameters in human readable form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>char</td>
<td>Convert to string</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Properties (read only)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>graph</td>
<td>A PGraph object describing the tree</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Example

```matlab
lp = Lattice();  % create navigation object
lp.plan('iterations', 8)  % create roadmaps
lp.query([1 2 pi/2], [2 -2 0])  % find path
lp.plot();  % plot the path
```

References

- Robotics, Vision & Control, Section 5.2.4, P. Corke, Springer 2016.

See also

Navigation, DXform, Dstar, PGraph

Lattice.Lattice

Create a Lattice navigation object

`p = Lattice(map, options)` is a probabilistic roadmap navigation object, and `map` is an occupancy grid, a representation of a planar world as a matrix whose elements are 0 (free space) or 1 (occupied).

Options

- `grid`, `G` Grid spacing in X and Y (default 1)
- `root`, `R` Root coordinate of the lattice (2 × 1) (default [0,0])
- `iterations`, `N` Number of sample points (default Inf)
- `cost`, `C` Cost for straight, left, right (default [1,1,1])
- `inflate`, `K` Inflate all obstacles by `K` cells.

Other options are supported by the Navigation superclass.

Notes

- Iterates until the area defined by the map is covered.

See also

Navigation.Navigation
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

**Lattice.char**

**Convert to string**

P.char() is a string representing the state of the Lattice object in human-readable form.

**See also**

Lattice.display

---

**Lattice.plan**

**Create a lattice plan**

P.plan(options) creates the lattice by iteratively building a tree of possible paths. The resulting graph is kept within the object.

**Options**

- `'iterations'`, N Number of sample points (default Inf)
- `'cost'`, C Cost for straight, left, right (default [1,1,1])

Default parameter values come from the constructor

---

**Lattice.plot**

**Visualize navigation environment**

P.plot() displays the occupancy grid with an optional distance field.

**Options**

- `'goal'` Superimpose the goal position if set
- `'nooverlay'` Don’t overlay the Lattice graph
Lattice.query

Find a path between two poses

P.query(start, goal) finds a path \((N \times 3)\) from pose \(\text{start} (1 \times 3)\) to pose \(\text{goal} (1 \times 3)\). The pose is expressed as \([X,Y,\text{THETA}]\).

Link

manipulator Link class

A Link object holds all information related to a robot joint and link such as kinematics parameters, rigid-body inertial parameters, motor and transmission parameters.

Constructors

- Link: general constructor
- Prismatic: construct a prismatic joint+link using standard DH
- PrismaticMDH: construct a prismatic joint+link using modified DH
- Revolute: construct a revolute joint+link using standard DH
- RevoluteMDH: construct a revolute joint+link using modified DH

Information/display methods

- display: print the link parameters in human readable form
- dyn: display link dynamic parameters
- type: joint type: ‘R’ or ‘P’

Conversion methods

- char: convert to string

Operation methods

- A: link transform matrix
- friction: friction force
-nofriction: Link object with friction parameters set to zero%
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Testing methods

islimit test if joint exceeds soft limit
isrevolute test if joint is revolute
isprismatic test if joint is prismatic
issym test if joint+link has symbolic parameters

Overloaded operators

+ concatenate links, result is a SerialLink object

Properties (read/write)

theta kinematic: joint angle
d kinematic: link offset
a kinematic: link length
alpha kinematic: link twist
jointtype kinematic: ‘R’ if revolute, ‘P’ if prismatic
mdh kinematic: 0 if standard D&H, else 1
offset kinematic: joint variable offset
qlim kinematic: joint variable limits [min max]
m dynamic: link mass
r dynamic: link COG wrt link coordinate frame 3 × 1
I dynamic: link inertia matrix, symmetric 3 × 3, about link COG.
B dynamic: link viscous friction (motor referred)
Tc dynamic: link Coulomb friction
G actuator: gear ratio
Jm actuator: motor inertia (motor referred)

Examples

L = Link([0 1.2 0.3 pi/2]);
L = Link(‘revolute’, ‘d’, 1.2, ‘a’, 0.3, ‘alpha’, pi/2);
L = Revolute(‘d’, 1.2, ‘a’, 0.3, ‘alpha’, pi/2);

Notes

• This is a reference class object.
• Link objects can be used in vectors and arrays.
• Convenience subclasses are Revolute, Prismatic, RevoluteMDH and PrismaticMDH.
References


See also

Link, Revolute, Prismatic, SerialLink, RevoluteMDH, PrismaticMDH

**Link.Lnk**

Create robot link object

This the class constructor which has several call signatures.

\[
L = \text{Link}() \text{ is a } \text{Link} \text{ object with default parameters.}
\]

\[
L = \text{Link}(\text{lnk}) \text{ is a } \text{Link} \text{ object that is a deep copy of the link object } \text{lnk} \text{ and has type Link, even if } \text{lnk} \text{ is a subclass.}
\]

\[
L = \text{Link}(\text{options}) \text{ is a link object with the kinematic and dynamic parameters specified by the key/value pairs.}
\]

Options

- `theta`, TH joint angle, if not specified joint is revolute
- `d`, D joint extension, if not specified joint is prismatic
- `a`, A joint offset (default 0)
- `alpha`, A joint twist (default 0)
- `standard` defined using standard D&H parameters (default).
- `modified` defined using modified D&H parameters.
- `offset`, O joint variable offset (default 0)
- `qlim`, L joint limit (default [])
- `I`, I link inertia matrix (3 × 1, 6 × 1 or 3 × 3)
- `r`, R link centre of gravity (3 × 1)
- `m`, M link mass (1 × 1)
- `G`, G motor gear ratio (default 1)
- `B`, B joint friction, motor referenced (default 0)
- `Jm`, J motor inertia, motor referenced (default 0)
- `Tc`, T Coulomb friction, motor referenced (1 × 1 or 2 × 1), (default [0 0])
- `revolute` for a revolute joint (default)
- `prismatic` for a prismatic joint ‘p’
- `standard` for standard D&H parameters (default).
- `modified` for modified D&H parameters.
- `sym` consider all parameter values as symbolic not numeric
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Notes

- It is an error to specify both ‘theta’ and ‘d’
- The joint variable, either theta or d, is provided as an argument to the A() method.
- The link inertia matrix (3 × 3) is symmetric and can be specified by giving a
  3 × 3 matrix, the diagonal elements [Ixx Iyy Izz], or the moments and products
  of inertia [Ixx Iyy Izz Ixy Iyz Ixz].
- All friction quantities are referenced to the motor not the load.
- Gear ratio is used only to convert motor referenced quantities such as friction
  and interia to the link frame.

Old syntax

\[ L = \text{Link}(\text{dh}, \text{options}) \] is a link object using the specified kinematic convention and
with parameters:

- \[ \text{dh} = [\text{THETA} \ D \ A \ \text{ALPHA} \ \text{SIGMA} \ \text{OFFSET}] \] where \text{SIGMA}=0 for a revolute
  and 1 for a prismatic joint; and \text{OFFSET} is a constant displacement between the
  user joint variable and the value used by the kinematic model.
- \[ \text{dh} = [\text{THETA} \ D \ A \ \text{ALPHA} \ \text{SIGMA}] \] where \text{OFFSET} is zero.
- \[ \text{dh} = [\text{THETA} \ D \ A \ \text{ALPHA}] \], joint is assumed revolute and \text{OFFSET} is zero.

Options

- ‘standard’ for standard D&H parameters (default).
- ‘modified’ for modified D&H parameters.
- ‘revolute’ for a revolute joint, can be abbreviated to ‘r’ (default)
- ‘prismatic’ for a prismatic joint, can be abbreviated to ‘p’

Notes

- The parameter D is unused in a revolute joint, it is simply a placeholder in the
  vector and the value given is ignored.
- The parameter THETA is unused in a prismatic joint, it is simply a placeholder
  in the vector and the value given is ignored.

Examples

A standard Denavit-Hartenberg link

\[ L3 = \text{link}('d', 0.15005, 'a', 0.0203, 'alpha', -\pi/2); \]

since ‘theta’ is not specified the joint is assumed to be revolute, and since the kinematic
convention is not specified it is assumed ‘standard’.

Robotics Toolbox 10.3.1 for MATLAB®139

Copyright ©Peter Corke 2018
Using the old syntax

\[ L_3 = \text{Link}([0, 0.15005, 0.0203, -\pi/2], 'standard'); \]

the flag ‘standard’ is not strictly necessary but adds clarity. Only 4 parameters are specified so sigma is assumed to be zero, i.e. the joint is revolute.

\[ L_3 = \text{Link}([0, 0.15005, 0.0203, -\pi/2, 0], 'standard'); \]

the flag ‘standard’ is not strictly necessary but adds clarity. 5 parameters are specified and sigma is set to zero, i.e. the joint is revolute.

\[ L_3 = \text{Link}([0, 0.15005, 0.0203, -\pi/2, 1], 'standard'); \]

the flag ‘standard’ is not strictly necessary but adds clarity. 5 parameters are specified and sigma is set to one, i.e. the joint is prismatic.

For a modified Denavit-Hartenberg revolute joint

\[ L_3 = \text{Link}([0, 0.15005, 0.0203, -\pi/2, 0], 'modified'); \]

Notes

- Link object is a reference object, a subclass of Handle object.
- Link objects can be used in vectors and arrays.
- The joint offset is a constant added to the joint angle variable before forward kinematics and subtracted after inverse kinematics. It is useful if you want the robot to adopt a ‘sensible’ pose for zero joint angle configuration.
- The link dynamic (inertial and motor) parameters are all set to zero. These must be set by explicitly assigning the object properties: m, r, I, Jm, B, Tc.
- The gear ratio is set to 1 by default, meaning that motor friction and inertia will be considered if they are non-zero.

See also

Revolute, Prismatic, RevoluteMDH, PrismaticMDH

Link.A

Link transform matrix

\( T = L.A(q) \) is an SE3 object representing the transformation between link frames when the link variable \( q \) which is either the Denavit-Hartenberg parameter THETA (revolute) or D (prismatic). For:

- standard DH parameters, this is from the previous frame to the current.
- modified DH parameters, this is from the current frame to the next.
Notes

- For a revolute joint the THETA parameter of the link is ignored, and $q$ used instead.
- For a prismatic joint the D parameter of the link is ignored, and $q$ used instead.
- The link offset parameter is added to $q$ before computation of the transformation matrix.

See also

SerialLink.fkine

Link.char

Convert to string

$s = L.char()$ is a string showing link parameters in a compact single line format. If $L$ is a vector of Link objects return a string with one line per Link.

See also

Link.display

Link.display

Display parameters

$L.display()$ displays the link parameters in compact single line format. If $L$ is a vector of Link objects displays one line per element.

Notes

- This method is invoked implicitly at the command line when the result of an expression is a Link object and the command has no trailing semicolon.

See also

Link.char, Link.dyn, SerialLink.showlink
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Link.dyn

Show inertial properties of link

L.dyn() displays the inertial properties of the link object in a multi-line format. The properties shown are mass, centre of mass, inertia, friction, gear ratio and motor properties.

If L is a vector of Link objects show properties for each link.

See also

SerialLink.dyn

Link.friction

Joint friction force

f = L.friction(qd) is the joint friction force/torque \((1 \times N)\) for joint velocity \(qd (1 \times N)\). The friction model includes:

- Viscous friction which is a linear function of velocity.
- Coulomb friction which is proportional to \(\text{sign}(qd)\).

Notes

- The friction value should be added to the motor output torque, it has a negative value when \(qd>0\).
- The returned friction value is referred to the output of the gearbox.
- The friction parameters in the Link object are referred to the motor.
- Motor viscous friction is scaled up by \(G^2\).
- Motor Coulomb friction is scaled up by \(G\).
- The appropriate Coulomb friction value to use in the non-symmetric case depends on the sign of the joint velocity, not the motor velocity.
- The absolute value of the gear ratio is used. Negative gear ratios are tricky: the Puma560 has negative gear ratio for joints 1 and 3.

See also

Link.nofriction


**Link.horzcat**

**Concatenate link objects**

[L1 L2] is a vector that contains deep copies of the Link class objects L1 and L2.

**Notes**

- The elements of the vector are all of type Link.
- If the elements were of a subclass type they are converted to type Link.
- Extends to arbitrary number of objects in list.

**See also**

Link.plus

---

**Link.islimit**

**Test joint limits**

L.islimit(q) is true (1) if q is outside the soft limits set for this joint.

**Note**

- The limits are not currently used by any Toolbox functions.

---

**Link.isprismatic**

**Test if joint is prismatic**

L.isprismatic() is true (1) if joint is prismatic.

**See also**

Link.isrevolute
Link.isrevolute

Test if joint is revolute

L.isrevolute() is true (1) if joint is revolute.

See also

Link.isprismatic

Link.issym

Check if link is a symbolic model

res = L.issym() is true if the Link L has any symbolic parameters.

See also

Link.sym

Link.nofriction

Remove friction

ln = L.nofriction() is a link object with the same parameters as L except nonlinear (Coulomb) friction parameter is zero.

ln = L.nofriction('all') as above except that viscous and Coulomb friction are set to zero.

ln = L.nofriction('coulomb') as above except that Coulomb friction is set to zero.

ln = L.nofriction('viscous') as above except that viscous friction is set to zero.

Notes

• Forward dynamic simulation can be very slow with finite Coulomb friction.

See also

Link.friction, SerialLink.nofriction, SerialLink.fdyn
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Link.plus

Concatenate link objects into a robot

L1+L2 is a SerialLink object formed from deep copies of the Link class objects L1 and L2.

Notes

- The elements can belong to any of the Link subclasses.
- Extends to arbitrary number of objects, e.g., L1+L2+L3+L4.

See also

SerialLink, SerialLink.plus, Link.horzcat

Link.set.I

Set link inertia

L.I = [Ixx Iyy Izz] sets link inertia to a diagonal matrix.
L.I = [Ixx Iyy Izz Ixy Iyz Ixz] sets link inertia to a symmetric matrix with specified inertia and product of inertia elements.
L.I = M sets Link inertia matrix to M (3×3) which must be symmetric.

Link.set.r

Set centre of gravity

L.r = R sets the link centre of gravity (COG) to R (3-vector).

Link.set.Tc

Set Coulomb friction

L.Tc = F sets Coulomb friction parameters to [F -F], for a symmetric Coulomb friction model.
L.Tc = [FP FM] sets Coulomb friction to [FP FM], for an asymmetric Coulomb friction model. FP>0 and FM<0. FP is applied for a positive joint velocity and FM for a negative joint velocity.

Notes

- The friction parameters are defined as being positive for a positive joint velocity, the friction force computed by Link.friction uses the negative of the friction parameter, that is, the force opposing motion of the joint.

See also

Link.friction

Link.sym

Convert link parameters to symbolic type

LS = L.sym is a Link object in which all the parameters are symbolic ('sym') type.

See also

Link.issym

Link.type

Joint type

c = L.type() is a character ‘R’ or ‘P’ depending on whether joint is revolute or prismatic respectively. If L is a vector of Link objects return an array of characters in joint order.

See also

SerialLink.config
Linear segment with parabolic blend

\[ [s, sd, sdd] = \text{lspb}(s0, sf, m) \]

is a scalar trajectory \((m \times 1)\) that varies smoothly from \(s0\) to \(sf\) in \(m\) steps using a constant velocity segment and parabolic blends (a trapezoidal velocity profile). Velocity and acceleration can be optionally returned as \(sd\) \((m \times 1)\) and \(sdd\) \((m \times 1)\) respectively.

\[ [s, sd, sdd] = \text{lspb}(s0, sf, m, v) \]

as above but specifies the velocity of the linear segment which is normally computed automatically.

\[ [s, sd, sdd] = \text{lspb}(s0, sf, T) \]

as above but specifies the trajectory in terms of the length of the time vector \(T\) \((m \times 1)\).

\[ [s, sd, sdd] = \text{lspb}(s0, sf, T, v) \]

as above but specifies the velocity of the linear segment which is normally computed automatically and a time vector.

\(\text{lspb}(s0, sf, m, v)\) as above but plots \(s\), \(sd\) and \(sdd\) versus time in a single figure.

Notes

- If \(m\) is given
  - Velocity is in units of distance per trajectory step, not per second.
  - Acceleration is in units of distance per trajectory step squared, not per second squared.
- If \(T\) is given then results are scaled to units of time.
- The time vector \(T\) is assumed to be monotonically increasing, and time scaling is based on the first and last element.
- For some values of \(v\) no solution is possible and an error is flagged.

References


See also

\(\text{tpoly}, \text{jtraj}\)
makemap

Make an occupancy map

\texttt{map} = \texttt{makemap}(n) is an occupancy grid \texttt{map} \((n \times n)\) created by a simple interactive editor. The \texttt{map} is initially unoccupied and obstacles can be added using geometric primitives.

\texttt{map} = \texttt{makemap()} as above but \(n=128\).

\texttt{map} = \texttt{makemap(map0)} as above but the \texttt{map} is initialized from the occupancy grid \texttt{map0}, allowing obstacles to be added.

With focus in the displayed figure window the following commands can be entered:

- left button click and drag to create a rectangle
- \(p\) draw polygon
- \(c\) draw circle
- \(u\) undo last action
- \(e\) erase \texttt{map}
- \(q\) leave editing mode and return \texttt{map}

See also

\texttt{DXForm}, \texttt{PRM}, \texttt{RRT}

mdl\_ball

Create model of a ball manipulator

\texttt{MDL\_BALL} creates the workspace variable \texttt{ball} which describes the kinematic characteristics of a serial link manipulator with 50 joints that folds into a ball shape.

\texttt{mdl\_ball(n)} as above but creates a manipulator with \(n\) joints.

Also define the workspace vectors:

- \(q\) joint angle vector for default ball configuration

Reference

- "A divide and conquer articulated-body algorithm for parallel O(log(n)) calculation of rigid body dynamics, Part 2", Int. J. Robotics Research, 18(9), pp
CHASE 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

876-892.

Notes

• Unlike most other mdl_xxx scripts this one is actually a function that behaves like a script and writes to the global workspace.

See also

mdl_coil, SerialLink

mdl_baxter

Kinematic model of Baxter dual-arm robot

MDL_BAXTER is a script that creates the workspace variables left and right which describes the kinematic characteristics of the two 7-joint arms of a Rethink Robotics Baxter robot using standard DH conventions.

Also define the workspace vectors:

$qz$: zero joint angle configuration
$qr$: vertical ‘READY’ configuration
$qd$: lower arm horizontal as per data sheet

Notes

• SI units of metres are used.

References


See also

mdl_nao, SerialLink
mdl_cobra600

Create model of Puma 560 manipulator

MDL_PUMA560 is a script that creates the workspace variable p560 which describes the kinematic and dynamic characteristics of a Unimation Puma 560 manipulator using standard DH conventions.

Also define the workspace vectors:

- qz: zero joint angle configuration
- qr: vertical 'READY' configuration
- qstretch: arm is stretched out in the X direction
- qn: arm is at a nominal non-singular configuration

Notes

- SI units are used.
- The model includes armature inertia and gear ratios.

Reference


See also

SerialRevolute, mdl_puma560akb, mdl_stanford

mdl_coil

Create model of a coil manipulator

MDL_COIL creates the workspace variable coil which describes the kinematic characteristics of a serial link manipulator with 50 joints that folds into a helix shape.

mdl_ball(n) as above but creates a manipulator with n joints.

Also defines the workspace vectors:

- q: joint angle vector for default helical configuration
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Reference

- "A divide and conquer articulated-body algorithm for parallel O(log(n)) calculation of rigid body dynamics, Part 2", Int. J. Robotics Research, 18(9), pp 876-892.

Notes

- Unlike most other mdl_xxx scripts this one is actually a function that behaves like a script and writes to the global workspace.

See also

mdl_ball, SerialLink

mdl_fanuc10L

Create kinematic model of Fanuc AM120iB/10L robot

MDL_FANUC10L is a script that creates the workspace variable R which describes the kinematic characteristics of a Fanuc AM120iB/10L robot using standard DH conventions.

Also defines the workspace vector:

q0 mastering position.

Notes

- SI units of metres are used.

Author

Wynand Swart, Mega Robots CC, P/O Box 8412, Pretoria, 0001, South Africa, wynand.swart@gmail.com

See also

mdl_irb140, mdl_m16, mdl_motomanHP6, mdl_puma560, SerialLink

Robotics Toolbox 10.3.1 for MATLAB® 151  Copyright ©Peter Corke 2018
mdl_hyper2d

Create model of a hyper redundant planar manipulator

MDL_HYPER2D creates the workspace variable h2d which describes the kinematic characteristics of a serial link manipulator with 10 joints which at zero angles is a straight line in the XY plane.

mdl_hyper2d(n) as above but creates a manipulator with n joints.

Also define the workspace vectors:

- qz joint angle vector for zero angle configuration

\[ R = mdl\_hyper2d(n) \] functional form of the above, returns the SerialLink object.

\[ [R, qz] = mdl\_hyper2d(n) \] as above but also returns a vector of zero joint angles.

Notes

- All joint axes are parallel to z-axis.
- The manipulator in default pose is a straight line 1m long.
- Unlike most other mdl_xxx scripts this one is actually a function that behaves like a script and writes to the global workspace.

See also

mdl_hyper3d, mdl_coil, mdl_ball, mdl_twolink, SerialLink

mdl_hyper3d

Create model of a hyper redundant 3D manipulator

MDL_HYPER3D is a script that creates the workspace variable h3d which describes the kinematic characteristics of a serial link manipulator with 10 joints which at zero angles is a straight line in the XY plane.

mdl_hyper3d(n) as above but creates a manipulator with n joints.

Also define the workspace vectors:

- qz joint angle vector for zero angle configuration

\[ R = mdl\_hyper3d(n) \] functional form of the above, returns the SerialLink object.

\[ [R, qz] = mdl\_hyper3d(n) \] as above but also returns a vector of zero joint angles.
Notes

- In the zero configuration joint axes alternate between being parallel to the z- and y-axes.
- A crude snake or elephant trunk robot.
- The manipulator in default pose is a straight line 1m long.
- Unlike most other mdl_xxx scripts this one is actually a function that behaves like a script and writes to the global workspace.

See also

mdl_hyper2d, mdl_ball, mdl_coil, SerialLink

mdl_irb140

Create model of ABB IRB 140 manipulator

MDL_IRB140 is a script that creates the workspace variable irb140 which describes the kinematic characteristics of an ABB IRB 140 manipulator using standard DH conventions.

Also define the workspace vectors:

- qz  zero joint angle configuration
- qr  vertical ‘READY’ configuration
- qd  lower arm horizontal as per data sheet

Reference

- “IRB 140 data sheet”, ABB Robotics.

Notes

- SI units of metres are used.
- Unlike most other mdl_xxx scripts this one is actually a function that behaves like a script and writes to the global workspace.
See also
mdl_fanuc10l, mdl_m16, mdl_motormanHP6, mdl_S4ABB2p8, mdl_puma560, SerialLink

mdl_irb140_mdh

Create model of the ABB IRB 140 manipulator

MDL_IRB140_MOD is a script that creates the workspace variable irb140 which describes the kinematic characteristics of an ABB IRB 140 manipulator using modified DH conventions.

Also define the workspace vectors:

qz zero joint angle configuration

Reference

- ABB IRB 140 data sheet

See also
mdl_irb140, mdl_puma560, mdl_stanford, mdl_twolink, SerialLink

Notes

- SI units of metres are used.
- The tool frame is in the centre of the tool flange.
- Zero angle configuration has the upper arm vertical and lower arm horizontal.
mdl_jaco

Create model of Kinova Jaco manipulator

MDL_JACO is a script that creates the workspace variable jaco which describes the kinematic characteristics of a Kinova Jaco manipulator using standard DH conventions. Also define the workspace vectors:

- qz  zero joint angle configuration
- qr  vertical ‘READY’ configuration

Reference

- “DH Parameters of Jaco” Version 1.0.8, July 25, 2013.

Notes

- SI units of metres are used.
- Unlike most other mdl_xxx scripts this one is actually a function that behaves like a script and writes to the global workspace.

See also

mdl_mico, mdl_puma560, SerialLink

mdl_KR5

Create model of Kuka KR5 manipulator

MDL_KR5 is a script that creates the workspace variable KR5 which describes the kinematic characteristics of a Kuka KR5 manipulator using standard DH conventions. Also define the workspace vectors:

- qk1  nominal working position 1
- qk2  nominal working position 2
- qk3  nominal working position 3
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Notes

- SI units of metres are used.
- Includes an 11.5cm tool in the z-direction

Author

- Gautam Sinha, Indian Institute of Technology, Kanpur.

See also

mdl_irb140, mdl_fanuc10l, mdl_motomanHP6, mdl_S4ABB2p8, mdl_puma560, SerialLink

mdl_LWR

Create model of Kuka LWR manipulator

MDL_LWR is a script that creates the workspace variable KR5 which describes the kinematic characteristics of a Kuka KR5 manipulator using standard DH conventions. Also define the workspace vectors:

\[ qz \quad \text{all zero angles} \]

Notes

- SI units of metres are used.

Reference

- Identifying the Dynamic Model Used by the KUKA LWR: A Reverse Engineering Approach Claudio Gaz Fabrizio Flacco Alessandro De Luca ICRA 2014

See also

mdl_kr5, mdl_irb140, mdl_puma560, SerialLink
mdl_M16

Create model of Fanuc M16 manipulator

MDL_M16 is a script that creates the workspace variable m16 which describes the kinematic characteristics of a Fanuc M16 manipulator using standard DH conventions.

Also define the workspace vectors:

- `qz` zero joint angle configuration
- `qr` vertical ‘READY’ configuration
- `qd` lower arm horizontal as per data sheet

References


Notes

- SI units of metres are used.
- Unlike most other mdl_xxx scripts this one is actually a function that behaves like a script and writes to the global workspace.

See also

mdl_irb140, mdl_fanuc10l, mdl_motomanHP6, mdl_S4ABB2p8, mdl_puma560, SerialLink

mdl_mico

Create model of Kinova Mico manipulator

MDL_MICO is a script that creates the workspace variable mico which describes the kinematic characteristics of a Kinova Mico manipulator using standard DH conventions.

Also define the workspace vectors:
qz zero joint angle configuration
qr vertical ‘READY’ configuration

Reference

- “DH Parameters of Mico” Version 1.0.1, August 05, 2013. Kinova

Notes

- SI units of metres are used.
- Unlike most other mdl_xxx scripts this one is actually a function that behaves like a script and writes to the global workspace.

See also

Revolute, mdl_jaco, mdl_puma560, mdl_twolink, SerialLink

mdl_motomanHP6

Create kinematic data of a Motoman HP6 manipulator

MDL_MotomanHP6 is a script that creates the workspace variable hp6 which describes the kinematic characteristics of a Motoman HP6 manipulator using standard DH conventions.
Also defines the workspace vector:

q0 mastering position.

Author

Wynand Swart, Mega Robots CC, P/O Box 8412, Pretoria, 0001, South Africa, wynand.swart@gmail.com

Notes

- SI units of metres are used.
See also
mdl_irb140, mdl_m16, mdl_fanuc10l, mdl_S4ABB2p8, mdl_puma560, SerialLink

mdl_nao

Create model of Aldebaran NAO humanoid robot

MDL_NAO is a script that creates several workspace variables

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>leftarm</td>
<td>left-arm kinematics (4DOF)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>righthm</td>
<td>right-arm kinematics (4DOF)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leftleg</td>
<td>left-leg kinematics (6DOF)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>righthg</td>
<td>right-leg kinematics (6DOF)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

which are each SerialLink objects that describe the kinematic characteristics of the arms and legs of the NAO humanoid.

Reference

- “Mechatronic design of NAO humanoid” David Gouallier et al. IROS 2009, pp. 769-774.

Notes

- SI units of metres are used.
- The base transform of arms and legs are constant with respect to the torso frame, which is assumed to be the constant value when the robot is upright. Clearly if the robot is walking these base transforms will be dynamic.
- The first reference uses Modified DH notation, but doesn’t explicitly mention this, and the parameter tables have the wrong column headings for Modified DH parameters.
- TODO: add joint limits
- TODO: add dynamic parameters
See also

mdl_baxter, SerialLink

---

mdl_offset6

A minimalistic 6DOF robot arm with shoulder offset

MDL_OFFSET6 is a script that creates the workspace variable off6 which describes
the kinematic characteristics of a simple arm manipulator with a spherical wrist and a
shoulder offset, using standard DH conventions.
Also define the workspace vectors:

qz zero joint angle configuration

Notes

• Unlike most other mdl_xxx scripts this one is actually a function that behaves
like a script and writes to the global workspace.

See also

mdl_simple6, mdl_puma560, mdl_twolink, SerialLink

---

mdl_onelink

Create model of a simple 1-link mechanism

MDL_ONELINK is a script that creates the workspace variable tl which describes the
kinematic and dynamic characteristics of a simple planar 1-link mechanism.
Also defines the vector:

qz corresponds to the zero joint angle configuration.
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Notes

- SI units are used.
- It is a planar mechanism operating in the XY (horizontal) plane and is therefore not affected by gravity.
- Assume unit length links with all mass (unity) concentrated at the joints.

References

- Based on Fig 3-6 (p73) of Spong and Vidyasagar (1st edition).

See also

mdl_twolink, mdl_planar1, SerialLink

mdl_p8

Create model of Puma robot on an XY base

MDL_P8 is a script that creates the workspace variable p8 which is an 8-axis robot comprising a Puma 560 robot on an XY base. Joints 1 and 2 are the base, joints 3-8 are the robot arm.

Also define the workspace vectors:

- qz zero joint angle configuration
- qr vertical ‘READY’ configuration
- qstretch arm is stretched out in the X direction
- qn arm is at a nominal non-singular configuration

Notes

- SI units of metres are used.

References

See also

mdl_puma560, SerialLink

mdl_panda

Create model of Franka-Emika PANDA robot

MDL_PANDA is a script that creates the workspace variable panda which describes the kinematic characteristics of a Franka-Emika PANDA manipulator using standard DH conventions.

Also define the workspace vectors:

qz  zero joint angle configuration
qr  arm along +ve x-axis configuration

Reference

• http://www.diag.uniroma1.it/deluca/rob1_en/WrittenExamsRob1/Robotics1_18.01.11.pdf

Notes

• SI units of metres are used.
• Unlike most other mdl_xxx scripts this one is actually a function that behaves like a script and writes to the global workspace.

See also

mdl_sawyer, SerialLink

mdl_phantomx

Create model of PhantomX pincher manipulator

MDL_PHANTOMX is a script that creates the workspace variable px which describes the kinematic characteristics of a PhantomX Pincher Robot, a 4 joint hobby class ma-
nipulator by Trossen Robotics.
Also define the workspace vectors:

\[ qz \]  zero joint angle configuration

**Notes**

- Uses standard DH conventions.
- Tool centrepoint is middle of the fingertips.
- All translational units in mm.

**Reference**


---

**mdl_planar1**

**Create model of a simple planar 1-link mechanism**

MDL_PLANAR1 is a script that creates the workspace variable \( p1 \) which describes the kinematic characteristics of a simple planar 1-link mechanism.
Also defines the vector:

\[ qz \]  corresponds to the zero joint angle configuration.

**Notes**

- Moves in the XY plane.
- No dynamics in this model.

**See also**

mdl_planar2, mdl_planar3, SerialLink
mdl_planar2

Create model of a simple planar 2-link mechanism

MDL_PLANAR2 is a script that creates the workspace variable p2 which describes the
kinematic characteristics of a simple planar 2-link mechanism.
Also defines the vector:

qz corresponds to the zero joint angle configuration.

Notes

• Moves in the XY plane.
• No dynamics in this model.

See also

mdl_twolink, mdl_planar1, mdl_planar3, SerialLink

mdl_planar2_sym

Create model of a simple planar 2-link mechanism

MDL_PLANAR2 is a script that creates the workspace variable p2 which describes the
kinematic characteristics of a simple planar 2-link mechanism.
Also defines the vector:

qz corresponds to the zero joint angle configuration.

Also defines the vector:

qz corresponds to the zero joint angle configuration.

Notes

• Moves in the XY plane.
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

• No dynamics in this model.

See also

mdl_twolink, mdl_planar1, mdl_planar3, SerialLink

mdl_planar3

Create model of a simple planar 3-link mechanism

MDL_PLANAR2 is a script that creates the workspace variable p3 which describes the kinematic characteristics of a simple redundant planar 3-link mechanism.
Also defines the vector:

\[
qz \quad \text{corresponds to the zero joint angle configuration.}
\]

Notes

• Moves in the XY plane.
• No dynamics in this model.

See also

mdl_twolink, mdl_planar1, mdl_planar2, SerialLink

mdl_puma560

Create model of Puma 560 manipulator

MDL_PUMA560 is a script that creates the workspace variable p560 which describes the kinematic and dynamic characteristics of a Unimation Puma 560 manipulator using standard DH conventions.
Also define the workspace vectors:

\[
qz \quad \text{zero joint angle configuration}
\]

Robotics Toolbox 10.3.1 for MATLAB® 165
Copyright ©Peter Corke 2018
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

qr vertical ‘READY’ configuration
qstretch arm is stretched out in the X direction
qn arm is at a nominal non-singular configuration

Notes

- SI units are used.
- The model includes armature inertia and gear ratios.

Reference


See also

SerialRevolute, mdl_puma560akb, mdl_stanford

mdl_puma560akb

Create model of Puma 560 manipulator

MDL_PUMA560AKB is a script that creates the workspace variable p560m which describes the kinematic and dynamic characteristics of a Unimation Puma 560 manipulator modified DH conventions.

Also defines the workspace vectors:

qz zero joint angle configuration
qr vertical ‘READY’ configuration
qstretch arm is stretched out in the X direction

Notes

- SI units are used.
References

- “The Explicit Dynamic Model and Inertial Parameters of the Puma 560 Arm”
  Armstrong, Khatib and Burdick 1986

See also

mdl_puma560, mdl_stanford_mdh, SerialLink

mdl_quadrotor

Dynamic parameters for a quadrotor.

MDL_QUADCOPTER is a script creates the workspace variable quad which describes
the dynamic characteristics of a quadrotor flying robot.

Properties

This is a structure with the following elements:

nrrotors  Number of rotors (1 x 1)
J         Flyer rotational inertia matrix (3 x 3)
h         Height of rotors above CoG (1 x 1)
d         Length of flyer arms (1 x 1)
nb        Number of blades per rotor (1 x 1)
r         Rotor radius (1 x 1)
c         Blade chord (1 x 1)
e         Flapping hinge offset (1 x 1)
Mb        Rotor blade mass (1 x 1)
Mc        Estimated hub clamp mass (1 x 1)
ec        Blade root clamp displacement (1 x 1)
Ib        Rotor blade rotational inertia (1 x 1)
Ic        Estimated root clamp inertia (1 x 1)
mb        Static blade moment (1 x 1)
Ir        Total rotor inertia (1 x 1)
Ct        Non-dim. thrust coefficient (1 x 1)
Cq        Non-dim. torque coefficient (1 x 1)
sigma     Rotor solidity ratio (1 x 1)
theta0     Blade tip angle (1 x 1)
theta1     Blade root angle (1 x 1)
theta75    3/4 blade angle (1 x 1)
thetai     Blade ideal root approximation (1 x 1)
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>Lift slope gradient $(1 \times 1)$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Rotor disc area $(1 \times 1)$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\gamma)</td>
<td>Lock number $(1 \times 1)$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**
- SI units are used.

**References**
- This is a heavy lift quadrotor

**See also**
- `sl_quadrotor`

---

**mdl_S4ABB2p8**

Create kinematic model of ABB S4 2.8robot

MDL_S4ABB2p8 is a script that creates the workspace variable `s4` which describes the kinematic characteristics of an ABB S4 2.8 robot using standard DH conventions.

Also defines the workspace vector:

```matlab
q0    mastering position.
```

**Author**

Wynand Swart, Mega Robots CC, P/O Box 8412, Pretoria, 0001, South Africa, wynand.swart@gmail.com

**See also**

`mdl_fanuc10l, mdl_m16, mdl_motormanHP6, mdl_irc140, mdl_puma560, SerialLink`
mdl_sawyer

Create model of Rethink Robotics Sawyer robot

MDL_SAYWER is a script that creates the workspace variable sawyer which describes the kinematic characteristics of a Rethink Robotics Sawyer manipulator using standard DH conventions.

Also define the workspace vectors:

- qz  zero joint angle configuration
- qr  arm along +ve x-axis configuration

Reference

- https://sites.google.com/site/daniellayeghi/daily-work-and-writing/major-project-2

Notes

- SI units of metres are used.
- Unlike most other mdl_xxx scripts this one is actually a function that behaves like a script and writes to the global workspace.

See also

mdl_baxter, SerialLink

mdl_simple6

A minimalistic 6DOF robot arm

MDL_SIMPLE6 is a script creates the workspace variable s6 which describes the kinematic characteristics of a simple arm manipulator with a spherical wrist and no shoulder offset, using standard DH conventions.

Also define the workspace vectors:

- qz  zero joint angle configuration
Notes

- Unlike most other mdl_xxx scripts this one is actually a function that behaves like a script and writes to the global workspace.

See also

mdl_offset6, mdl_puma560, SerialLink

mdl_stanford

Create model of Stanford arm

MDL_STANFORD is a script that creates the workspace variable stanf which describes the kinematic and dynamic characteristics of the Stanford (Scheinman) arm.

Also defines the vectors:

- qz  zero joint angle configuration.

Note

- SI units are used.
- Gear ratios not currently known, though reflected armature inertia is known, so gear ratios are set to 1.

References

- Kinematic data from "Modelling, Trajectory calculation and Servoing of a computer controlled arm". Stanford AIM-177. Figure 2.3
- Dynamic data from “Robot manipulators: mathematics, programming and control” Paul 1981, Tables 6.5, 6.6

See also

mdl_puma560, mdl_puma560akb, SerialLink
**mdl_stanford_mdh**

Create model of Stanford arm using MDH conventions

**MDL_STANFORD** is a script that creates the workspace variable `stanf` which describes the kinematic and dynamic characteristics of the Stanford (Scheinman) arm using modified Denavit-Hartenberg parameters.

Also defines the vectors:

- `qz` zero joint angle configuration.

**Notes**

- SI units are used.

**References**

- Kinematic data from "Modelling, Trajectory calculation and Servoing of a computer controlled arm". Stanford AIM-177. Figure 2.3
- Dynamic data from “Robot manipulators: mathematics, programming and control” Paul 1981, Tables 6.5, 6.6

**See also**

- `mdl_puma560`, `mdl_puma560akb`, `SerialLink`  

---

**mdl_twolink**

Create model of a 2-link mechanism

**MDL_TWOLINK** is a script that creates the workspace variable `twolink` which describes the kinematic and dynamic characteristics of a simple planar 2-link mechanism moving in the xz-plane, it experiences gravity loading.

Also defines the vector:

- `qz` corresponds to the zero joint angle configuration.
Notes

- SI units are used.
- It is a planar mechanism operating in the vertical plane and is therefore affected by gravity (unlike mdl_planar2 in the horizontal plane).
- Assume unit length links with all mass (unity) concentrated at the joints.

References

- Based on Fig 3-6 (p73) of Spong and Vidyasagar (1st edition).

See also

mdl_twolink_sym, mdl_planar2, SerialLink

mdl_twolink_mdh

Create model of a 2-link mechanism using modified DH convention

MDL_TWOLINK_MDH is a script that the workspace variable twolink which describes the kinematic and dynamic characteristics of a simple planar 2-link mechanism using modified Denavit-Hartenberg conventions.

Also defines the vector:

\[ q_z \] corresponds to the zero joint angle configuration.

Notes

- SI units of metres are used.
- It is a planar mechanism operating in the xz-plane (vertical) and is therefore not affected by gravity.

References

- Based on Fig 3.8 (p71) of Craig (3rd edition).
See also

mdl_twolink, mdl_onelink, mdl_planar2, SerialLink

mdl_twolink_sym

Create symbolic model of a simple 2-link mechanism

MDL_TWOLINK_SYM is a script that creates the workspace variable twolink which describes in symbolic form the kinematic and dynamic characteristics of a simple planar 2-link mechanism moving in the xz-plane, it experiences gravity loading. The symbolic parameters are:

- link lengths: $a_1, a_2$
- link masses: $m_1, m_2$
- link CoMs in the link frame x-direction: $c_1, c_2$
- gravitational acceleration: $g$
- joint angles: $q_1, q_2$
- joint angle velocities: $qd_1, qd_2$
- joint angle accelerations: $qdd_1, qdd_2$

Notes

- It is a planar mechanism operating in the vertical plane and is therefore affected by gravity (unlike mdl_planar2 in the horizontal plane).
- Gear ratio is 1 and motor inertia is 0.
- Link inertias $I_{yy1}, I_{yy2}$ are 0.
- Viscous and Coulomb friction is 0.

References

- Based on Fig 3-6 (p73) of Spong and Vidyasagar (1st edition).

See also

mdl_puma560, mdl_stanford, SerialLink
mdl_ur10

Create model of Universal Robotics UR10 manipulator

MDL_UR5 is a script that creates the workspace variable ur10 which describes the kinematic characteristics of a Universal Robotics UR10 manipulator using standard DH conventions.

Also define the workspace vectors:

- qz  zero joint angle configuration
- qr  arm along +ve x-axis configuration

Reference


Notes

- SI units of metres are used.
- Unlike most other mdl_xxx scripts this one is actually a function that behaves like a script and writes to the global workspace.

See also

mdl_ur3, mdl_ur5, mdl_puma560, SerialLink

mdl_ur3

Create model of Universal Robotics UR3 manipulator

MDL_UR5 is a script that creates the workspace variable ur3 which describes the kinematic characteristics of a Universal Robotics UR3 manipulator using standard DH conventions.

Also define the workspace vectors:

- qz  zero joint angle configuration
- qr  arm along +ve x-axis configuration
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Reference


Notes

- SI units of metres are used.
- Unlike most other mdl_xxx scripts this one is actually a function that behaves like a script and writes to the global workspace.

See also

mdl_ur5, mdl_ur10, mdl_puma560, SerialLink

mdl_ur5

Create model of Universal Robotics UR5 manipulator

MDL_UR5 is a script that creates the workspace variable ur5 which describes the kinematic characteristics of a Universal Robotics UR5 manipulator using standard DH conventions.

Also define the workspace vectors:

- qz zero joint angle configuration
- qr arm along +ve x-axis configuration

Reference


Notes

- SI units of metres are used.
- Unlike most other mdl_xxx scripts this one is actually a function that behaves like a script and writes to the global workspace.
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

See also

mdl_ur3, mdl_ur10, mdl_puma560, SerialLink

---

## models

### Summarise and search available robot models

models() lists keywords associated with each of the models in Robotics Toolbox.

models(query) lists those models that match the keyword query. Case is ignored in the comparison.

\[
m = \text{models(query)}\]

as above but returns a cell array \(N \times 1\) of the names of the m-files that define the models.

### Examples

```matlab
models
models('modified_DH') \ % all models using modified DH notation
models('kinova') \ % all Kinova robot models
models('6dof') \ % all 6dof robot models
models('redundant') \ % all redundant robot models, >6 DOF
models('prismatic') \ % all robots with a prismatic joint
```

### Notes

- A model is a file mdl_*.*.m in the models folder of the RTB directory.
- The keywords are indicated by a line ‘\% MODEL: ’ after the main comment block.

---

## mplot

### Plot time-series data

A convenience function for plotting time-series data held in a matrix. Each row is a timestep and the first column is time.

\[
mplot(y, \text{options})\]

plots the time series data \(y(N \times M)\) in multiple subplots. The first column is assumed to be time, so \(M-1\) plots are produced.
**mplot**(*T, y, options*) plots the time series data \( y(N \times M) \) in multiple subplots. Time is provided explicitly as the first argument so \( M \) plots are produced.

**mplot**(*s, options*) as above but *s* is a structure. Each field is assumed to be a time series which is plotted. Time is taken from the field called ‘t’. Plots are labelled according to the name of the corresponding field.

**mplot**(*w, options*) as above but *w* is a structure created by the Simulink write to workspace block where the save format is set to “Structure with time”. Each field in the signals substructure is plotted.

**mplot**(*R, options*) as above but *R* is a Simulink.SimulationOutput object returned by the Simulink sim() function.

**Options**

- ‘col’, *C* Select columns to plot, a boolean of length \( M-1 \) or a list of column indices in the range 1 to \( M-1 \)
- ‘label’, *L* Label the axes according to the cell array of strings *L*
- ‘date’ Add a datestamp in the top right corner

**Notes**

- In all cases a simple GUI is created which is invoked by a right clicking on one of the plotted lines. The supported options are:
  - zoom in the x-direction
  - shift view to the left or right
  - unzoom
  - show data points

**See also**

plot2, plotp

---

**mstraj**

**Multi-segment multi-axis trajectory**

\( \text{traj} = \text{mstraj}(\text{wp, qdmax, tseg, q0, dt, tacc, options}) \) is a trajectory \( (K \times N) \) for \( N \) axes moving simultaneously through \( M \) segment. Each segment is linear motion and polynomial blends connect the segments. The axes start at \( q0 (1 \times N) \) and pass through...
M-1 via points defined by the rows of the matrix \( wp (M \times N) \), and finish at the point defined by the last row of \( wp \). The trajectory matrix has one row per time step, and one column per axis. The number of steps in the trajectory \( K \) is a function of the number of via points and the time or velocity limits that apply.

- \( wp (M \times N) \) is a matrix of via points, 1 row per via point, one column per axis. The last via point is the destination.
- \( qd_{max} (1 \times N) \) are axis speed limits which cannot be exceeded,
- \( tseg (1 \times M) \) are the durations for each of the \( K \) segments
- \( q0 (1 \times N) \) are the initial axis coordinates
- \( dt \) is the time step
- \( tacc (1 \times 1) \) is the acceleration time used for all segment transitions
- \( tacc (1 \times M) \) is the acceleration time per segment, \( tacc(i) \) is the acceleration time for the transition from segment \( i \) to segment \( i+1 \). \( tacc(1) \) is also the acceleration time at the start of segment 1.

\[
\text{traj} = \text{mstraj}(wp, qd_{max}, tseg, [], dt, tacc, options)\]
as above but the initial coordinates are taken from the first row of \( wp \).

\[
\text{traj} = \text{mstraj}(wp, qd_{max}, q0, dt, tacc, qd0, qdf, options)\]
as above but additionally specifies the initial and final axis velocities \((1 \times N)\).

**Options**

- ‘verbose’ Show details.

**Notes**

- Only one of \( qd_{max} \) or \( tseg \) can be specified, the other is set to [].
- If no output arguments are specified the trajectory is plotted.
- The path length \( K \) is a function of the number of via points, \( q0, dt \) and \( tacc \).
- The final via point \( P(\text{end},:) \) is the destination.
- The motion has \( M \) segments from \( q0 \) to \( P(1,:), P(2,:) \ldots \) to \( P(\text{end},:) \).
- All axes reach their via points at the same time.
- Can be used to create joint space trajectories where each axis is a joint coordinate.
- Can be used to create Cartesian trajectories where the “axes” correspond to translation and orientation in RPY or Euler angle form.
mtraj

Multi-axis trajectory between two points

\[ [q, qd, qdd] = mtraj(tfunc, q0, qf, m) \] is a multi-axis trajectory \((m \times N)\) varying from configuration \(q_0 (1 \times N)\) to \(q_f (1 \times N)\) according to the scalar trajectory function \(tfunc\) in \(m\) steps. Joint velocity and acceleration can be optionally returned as \(qd (m \times N)\) and \(qdd (m \times N)\) respectively. The trajectory outputs have one row per time step, and one column per axis.

The shape of the trajectory is given by the scalar trajectory function \(tfunc\) which is applied to each axis:

\[ [S, SD, SDD] = TFUNC(S0, SF, M); \]

and possible values of \(tfunc\) include \@lspb\ for a trapezoidal trajectory, or \@tpoly\ for a polynomial trajectory.

\[ [q, qd, qdd] = mtraj(tfunc, q0, qf, T) \] as above but \(T (m \times 1)\) is a time vector which dictates the number of points on the trajectory.

Notes

- If no output arguments are specified \(q, qd,\) and \(qdd\) are plotted.
- When \(tfunc\) is \@tpoly\ the result is functionally equivalent to JTRAJ except that no initial velocities can be specified. JTRAJ is computationally a little more efficient.
**multidfprintf**

**Print formatted text to multiple streams**

COUNT = MULTIDFPRTNTF(IDVEC, FORMAT, A, ...) performs formatted output to multiple streams such as console and files. FORMAT is the format string as used by sprintf and fprintf. A is the array of elements, to which the format will be applied similar to sprintf and fprintf.

IDVEC is a vector (1 x N) of file descriptors and COUNT is a vector (1 x N) of the number of bytes written to each file.

**Notes**

- To write to the console use the file identifier 1.

**Example**

% Create and open a new example file:
fid = fopen('exampleFile.txt','w+');
% Write something to the file and the console simultaneously:
multidfprintf([1 FID],’% s % d % d % d’);
% Close the file:
fclose(FID);

**Authors**

Joern Malzahn, (joern.malzahn@tu-dortmund.de)

**See also**

fprintf, sprintf

---

**Navigation**

**Navigation superclass**

An abstract superclass for implementing planar grid-based navigation classes.
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Methods

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Navigation</td>
<td>Superclass constructor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plan</td>
<td>Find a path to goal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>query</td>
<td>Return/animate a path from start to goal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plot</td>
<td>Display the occupancy grid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>display</td>
<td>Display the parameters in human readable form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>char</td>
<td>Convert to string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isoccupied</td>
<td>Test if cell is occupied</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rand</td>
<td>Uniformly distributed random number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>randn</td>
<td>Normally distributed random number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>randi</td>
<td>Uniformly distributed random integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>progress_init</td>
<td>Create a progress bar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>progress</td>
<td>Update progress bar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>progress_delete</td>
<td>Remove progress bar</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Properties (read only)

- occgrid: Occupancy grid representing the navigation environment
- goal: Goal coordinate
- start: Start coordinate
- seed0: Random number state

Methods that must be provided in subclass

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>plan</td>
<td>Generate a plan for motion to goal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>next</td>
<td>Returns coordinate of next point along path</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Methods that may be overridden in a subclass

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>goal_set</td>
<td>The goal has been changed by nav.goal = (a,b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>navigate_init</td>
<td>Start of path planning.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

- Subclasses the MATLAB handle class which means that pass by reference semantics apply.
- A grid world is assumed and vehicle position is quantized to grid cells.
- Vehicle orientation is not considered.
- The initial random number state is captured as seed0 to allow rerunning an experiment with an interesting outcome.
See also

Bug2, Dstar, Dxform, PRM, Lattice, RRT

Navigation.Navigation

Create a Navigation object

\[ n = \text{Navigation}(\text{occgrid, options}) \] is a Navigation object that holds an occupancy grid \text{occgrid}. A number of options can be passed.

Options

- `goal`, \( G \): Specify the goal point (2 \times 1)
- `inflate`, \( K \): Inflate all obstacles by \( K \) cells.
- `private`: Use private random number stream.
- `reset`: Reset random number stream.
- `verbose`: Display debugging information
- `seed`, \( S \): Set the initial state of the random number stream. \( S \) must be a proper random number generator state such as saved in the seed0 property of an earlier run.

Notes

- In the occupancy grid a value of zero means free space and non-zero means occupied (not driveable).
- Obstacle inflation is performed with a round structuring element (\( k\text{circle} \)) with radius given by the `inflate` option.
- Inflation requires either MVTB or IPT installed.
- The `private` option creates a private random number stream for the methods \text{rand}, \text{randn} and \text{randi}. If not given the global stream is used.

See also

\text{randstream}
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Navigation.char

Convert to string

N.char() is a string representing the state of the navigation object in human-readable form.

Navigation.display

Display status of navigation object

N.display() displays the state of the navigation object in human-readable form.

Notes

• This method is invoked implicitly at the command line when the result of an expression is a Navigation object and the command has no trailing semicolon.

See also

Navigation.char

Navigation.goal_change

Notify change of goal

Invoked when the goal property of the object is changed. Typically this is overridden in a subclass to take particular action such as invalidating a costmap.

Navigation.isoccupied

Test if grid cell is occupied

N.isoccupied(pos) is true if there is a valid grid map and the coordinates given by the columns of pos (2 × N) are occupied.

N.isoccupied(x,y) as above but the coordinates given separately.

Notes:

• x and y are Cartesian rather than MATLAB row-column coordinates.
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Navigation.message

Print debug message

N.message(s) displays the string s if the verbose property is true.
N.message(fmt, args) as above but accepts printf() like semantics.

Navigation.navigate_init

Notify start of path

N.navigate_init(start) is called when the query() method is invoked. Typically over-ridden in a subclass to take particular action such as computing some path parameters. start (2 × 1) is the initial position for this path, and nav.goal (2 × 1) is the final position.

See also

Navigate.query

Navigation.plot

Visualize navigation environment

N.plot(options) displays the occupancy grid in a new figure.
N.plot(p, options) as above but overlays the points along the path (2 × M) matrix.

Options

'distance', D Display a distance field D behind the obstacle map. D is a matrix of the same size as the occupancy grid.
'colormap', @f Specify a colormap for the distance field as a function handle, eg. @hsv
'beta', B Brighten the distance field by factor B.
'inflated' Show the inflated occupancy grid rather than original

Notes

- The distance field at a point encodes its distance from the goal, small distance is dark, a large distance is bright. Obstacles are encoded as red.
- Beta value -1<B<0 to darken, 0<B<+1 to lighten.
See also

Navigation.plot_fg, Navigation.plot_bg

### Navigation.plot_bg

**Visualization background**

N.plot_bg(options) displays the occupancy grid with occupied cells shown as red and an optional distance field.

N.plot_bg(p, options) as above but overlays the points along the path (2 × M) matrix.

**Options**

- `'distance'`, D: Display a distance field D behind the obstacle map. D is a matrix of the same size as the occupancy grid.
- `'colormap'`, @f: Specify a colormap for the distance field as a function handle, eg. @hsv
- `'beta'`, B: Brighten the distance field by factor B.
- `'inflated'`: Show the inflated occupancy grid rather than original
- `'pathmarker'`, M: Options to draw a path point
- `'startmarker'`, M: Options to draw the start marker
- `'goalmarker'`, M: Options to draw the goal marker

**Notes**

- The distance field at a point encodes its distance from the goal, small distance is dark, a large distance is bright. Obstacles are encoded as red.
- Beta value -1 < B < 0 to darken, 0 < B < +1 to lighten.

See also

Navigation.plot, Navigation.plot_fg, brighten

### Navigation.plot_fg

**Visualization foreground**

N.plot_fg(options) displays the start and goal locations if specified. By default the goal is a pentagram and start is a circle.

N.plot_fg(p, options) as above but overlays the points along the path (2 × M) matrix.
**CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES**

**Options**

- `'pathmarker'`, M: Options to draw a path point
- `'startmarker'`, M: Options to draw the start marker
- `'goalmarker'`, M: Options to draw the goal marker

**Notes**

- In all cases M is a single string eg. ‘r*’ or a cell array of MATLAB LineSpec options.
- Typically used after a call to plot_bg().

**See also**

`Navigation.plot_bg`

**Navigation.query**

**Find a path from start to goal using plan**

N.query(start, options) animates the robot moving from start (2 x 1) to the goal (which is a property of the object) using a previously computed plan.

x = N.query(start, options) returns the path (M x 2) from start to the goal (which is a property of the object).

The method performs the following steps:

- Initialize navigation, invoke method N.navigate_init()
- Visualize the environment, invoke method N.plot()
- Iterate on the next() method of the subclass until the goal is achieved.

**Options**

- `'animate'`: Show the computed path as a series of green dots.

**Notes**

- If start given as [] then the user is prompted to click a point on the map.
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

See also

Navigation.navigate_init, Navigation.plot, Navigation.goal

Navigation.rand

Uniformly distributed random number

\[ R = N.\text{rand}() \] return a uniformly distributed random number from a private random number stream.

\[ R = N.\text{rand}(m) \] as above but return a matrix \((m \times m)\) of random numbers.

\[ R = N.\text{rand}(L,m) \] as above but return a matrix \((L \times m)\) of random numbers.

Notes

- Accepts the same arguments as \text{rand}().
- Seed is provided to Navigation constructor.
- Provides an independent sequence of random numbers that does not interfere with any other randomised algorithms that might be used.

See also

Navigation.randi, Navigation.randn, rand, RandStream

Navigation.randi

Integer random number

\[ i = N.\text{randi}(\text{rm}) \] returns a uniformly distributed random integer in the range 1 to \text{rm} from a private random number stream.

\[ i = N.\text{randi}(\text{rm}, m) \] as above but returns a matrix \((m \times m)\) of random integers.

\[ i = N.\text{randn}(\text{rm}, L,m) \] as above but returns a matrix \((L \times m)\) of random integers.

Notes

- Accepts the same arguments as \text{randi}().
- Seed is provided to Navigation constructor.
• Provides an independent sequence of random numbers that does not interfere with any other randomised algorithms that might be used.

See also

Navigation.rand, Navigation.randn, randi, RandStream

---

**Navigation.randn**

**Normally distributed random number**

\[ R = \text{N.randn}() \]

returns a normally distributed random number from a private random number stream.

\[ R = \text{N.randn}(m) \]

as above but returns a matrix \((m \times m)\) of random numbers.

\[ R = \text{N.randn}(L,m) \]

as above but returns a matrix \((L \times m)\) of random numbers.

**Notes**

• Accepts the same arguments as \text{randn}().
• Seed is provided to Navigation constructor.
• Provides an independent sequence of random numbers that does not interfere with any other randomised algorithms that might be used.

See also

Navigation.rand, Navigation.randi, randn, RandStream

---

**Navigation.spinner**

**Update progress spinner**

\[ \text{N.spinner}() \]
displays a simple ASCII progress spinner, a rotating bar.
Navigation.verbosity

Set verbosity

\texttt{N.verbosity(v)} set \texttt{verbosity} to \texttt{v}, where 0 is silent and greater values display more information.

numcols

Number of columns in matrix

\texttt{nc = numcols(m)} is the number of columns in the matrix \texttt{m}.

Notes

- Readable shorthand for \texttt{SIZE(m,2)};

See also

\texttt{numrows, size}

numrows

Number of rows in matrix

\texttt{nr = numrows(m)} is the number of rows in the matrix \texttt{m}.

Notes

- Readable shorthand for \texttt{SIZE(m,1)};

See also

\texttt{numcols, size}
oa2r

Convert orientation and approach vectors to rotation matrix

\( R = \text{oa2r}(\mathbf{o}, \mathbf{a}) \) is an SO(3) rotation matrix (3 × 3) for the specified orientation and approach vectors (3 × 1) formed from 3 vectors such that \( R = [N \mathbf{o} \mathbf{a}] \) and \( N = \mathbf{o} \times \mathbf{a} \).

Notes

- The matrix is guaranteed to be orthonormal so long as \( \mathbf{o} \) and \( \mathbf{a} \) are not parallel.
- The vectors \( \mathbf{o} \) and \( \mathbf{a} \) are parallel to the Y- and Z-axes of the coordinate frame.

References


See also

rpy2r, eul2r, oa2tr, SO3.oa

oa2tr

Convert orientation and approach vectors to homogeneous transformation

\( T = \text{oa2tr}(\mathbf{o}, \mathbf{a}) \) is an SE(3) homogeneous transformation (4 × 4) for the specified orientation and approach vectors (3 × 1) formed from 3 vectors such that \( R = [N \mathbf{o} \mathbf{a}] \) and \( N = \mathbf{o} \times \mathbf{a} \).

Notes

- The rotation submatrix is guaranteed to be orthonormal so long as \( \mathbf{o} \) and \( \mathbf{a} \) are not parallel.
- The translational part is zero.
- The vectors \( \mathbf{o} \) and \( \mathbf{a} \) are parallel to the Y- and Z-axes of the coordinate frame.
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

References


See also

rpy2tr, eul2tr, oa2r, SE3.oa

ParticleFilter

Particle filter class

Monte-carlo based localisation for estimating vehicle pose based on odometry and observations of known landmarks.

Methods

- run run the particle filter
- plot_xy display estimated vehicle path
- plot_pdf display particle distribution

Properties

- robot reference to the robot object
- sensor reference to the sensor object
- history vector of structs that hold the detailed information from each time step
- nparticles number of particles used
- x particle states; nparticles x 3
- weight particle weights; nparticles x 1
- x_est mean of the particle population
- std standard deviation of the particle population
- Q covariance of noise added to state at each step
- L covariance of likelihood model
- w0 offset in likelihood model
- dim maximum xy dimension

Example

Create a landmark map
map = PointMap(20);

and a vehicle with odometry covariance and a driver

\[
W = \text{diag}([0.1, 1\pi/180].^2);
\]
veh = Vehicle(W);
veh.add_driver( RandomPath(10) );

and create a range bearing sensor

\[
R = \text{diag}([0.005, 0.5\pi/180].^2);
\]
sensor = RangeBearingSensor(veh, map, R);

For the particle filter we need to define two covariance matrices. The first is the covariance of the random noise added to the particle states at each iteration to represent uncertainty in configuration.

\[
Q = \text{diag}([0.1, 0.1, 1\pi/180]).^2;
\]

and the covariance of the likelihood function applied to innovation

\[
L = \text{diag}([0.1 0.1]);
\]

Now construct the particle filter

\[
\text{pf} = \text{ParticleFilter}(\text{veh}, \text{sensor}, Q, L, 1000);
\]

which is configured with 1000 particles. The particles are initially uniformly distributed over the 3-dimensional configuration space.

We run the simulation for 1000 time steps

\[
\text{pf.run}(1000);
\]

then plot the map and the true vehicle path

\[
\text{map.plot();}
\]
\[
\text{veh.plot_xy('b')};
\]

and overlay the mean of the particle cloud

\[
\text{pf.plot_xy('r')};
\]

We can plot the standard deviation against time

\[
\text{plot(pf.std(1:100,:)})
\]

The particles are a sampled approximation to the PDF and we can display this as

\[
\text{pf.plot_pdf()}
\]

Acknowledgement

Based on code by Paul Newman, Oxford University, http://www.robots.ox.ac.uk/pnewman

Reference

Robotics, Vision & Control, Peter Corke, Springer 2011

Robotics Toolbox 10.3.1 for MATLAB® 192 Copyright ©Peter Corke 2018
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

See also

Vehicle, RandomPath, RangeBearingSensor, PointMap, EKF

ParticleFilter.ParticleFilter

Particle filter constructor

\[ \text{pf} = \text{ParticleFilter}(\text{vehicle}, \text{sensor}, q, L, np, \text{options}) \]

is a particle filter that estimates the state of the vehicle with a landmark sensor sensor. \(q\) is the covariance of the noise added to the particles at each step (diffusion), \(L\) is the covariance used in the sensor likelihood model, and \(np\) is the number of particles.

Options

- ‘verbose’ Be verbose.
- ‘private’ Use private random number stream.
- ‘reset’ Reset random number stream.
- ‘seed’, S Set the initial state of the random number stream. \(S\) must be a proper random number generator state such as saved in the seed0 property of an earlier run.
- ‘nohistory’ Don’t save history.
- ‘x0’ Initial particle states \((N \times 3)\)

Notes

- ParticleFilter subclasses Handle, so it is a reference object.
- If initial particle states not given they are set to a uniform distribution over the map, essentially the kidnapped robot problem which is quite unrealistic.
- Initial particle weights are always set to unity.
- The ‘private’ option creates a private random number stream for the methods rand, randn and randi. If not given the global stream is used.

See also

Vehicle, Sensor, RangeBearingSensor, PointMap
ParticleFilter.char

Convert to string

PF.char() is a string representing the state of the ParticleFilter object in human-readable form.

See also

ParticleFilter.display

ParticleFilter.display

Display status of particle filter object

PF.display() displays the state of the ParticleFilter object in human-readable form.

Notes

- This method is invoked implicitly at the command line when the result of an expression is a ParticleFilter object and the command has no trailing semicolon.

See also

ParticleFilter.char

ParticleFilter.init

Initialize the particle filter

PF.init() initializes the particle distribution and clears the history.

Notes

- If initial particle states were given to the constructor the states are set to this value, else a random distribution over the map is used.
- Invoked by the run() method.
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

**ParticleFilter.plot_pdf**

**Plot particles as a PDF**

PF.plot_pdf() plots a sparse PDF as a series of vertical line segments of height equal to particle weight.

**ParticleFilter.plot_xy**

**Plot vehicle position**

PF.plot_xy() plots the estimated vehicle path in the xy-plane.

PF.plot_xy(ls) as above but the optional line style arguments ls are passed to plot.

**ParticleFilter.run**

**Run the particle filter**

PF.run(n, options) runs the filter for n time steps.

**Options**

`'noplot'` Do not show animation.

**Notes**

- All previously estimated states and estimation history is cleared.

**peak**

**Find peaks in vector**

\[ yp = \text{peak}(y, \text{options}) \] are the values of the maxima in the vector y.

\[ [yp,i] = \text{peak}(y, \text{options}) \] as above but also returns the indices of the maxima in the vector y.
[yp.xp] = peak(y, x, options) as above but also returns the corresponding x-coordinates of the maxima in the vector y. x is the same length as y and contains the corresponding x-coordinates.

**Options**

- 'npeaks', N    Number of peaks to return (default all)
- 'scale', S     Only consider as peaks the largest value in the horizontal range +/- S points.
- 'interp', M    Order of interpolation polynomial (default no interpolation)
- 'plot'        Display the interpolation polynomial overlaid on the point data

**Notes**

- A maxima is defined as an element that larger than its two neighbours. The first and last element will never be returned as maxima.
- To find minima, use peak(-V).
- The interp options fits points in the neighbourhood about the peak with an Mth order polynomial and its peak position is returned. Typically choose M to be even. In this case xp will be non-integer.

**See also**

peak2

---

**peak2**

Find peaks in a matrix

zp = peak2(z, options) are the peak values in the 2-dimensional signal z.

[zp.ij] = peak2(z, options) as above but also returns the indices of the maxima in the matrix z. Use SUB2IND to convert these to row and column coordinates

**Options**

- 'npeaks', N    Number of peaks to return (default all)
- 'scale', S     Only consider as peaks the largest value in the horizontal and vertical range +/- S points.
- 'interp'       Interpolate peak (default no interpolation)
- 'plot'        Display the interpolation polynomial overlaid on the point data

Robotics Toolbox 10.3.1 for MATLAB® 196 Copyright ©Peter Corke 2018
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Notes

• A maxima is defined as an element that larger than its eight neighbours. Edges elements will never be returned as maxima.

• To find minima, use \texttt{peak2(-V)}.

• The interp options fits points in the neighbourhood about the peak with a paraboloid and its peak position is returned. In this case \textit{ij} will be non-integer.

See also

\texttt{peak, sub2ind}

\section*{PGraph}

\textbf{Graph class}

\begin{verbatim}
g = PG\texttt{raph()} create a 2D, planar embedded, directed graph
g = PG\texttt{raph(n)} create an n-d, embedded, directed graph
\end{verbatim}

Provides support for graphs that:

• are directed

• are embedded in a coordinate system

• have symmetric cost edges (A to B is same cost as B to A)

• have no loops (edges from A to A)

• have vertices that are represented by integers VID

• have edges that are represented by integers EID

\section*{Methods}

\textbf{Constructing the graph}

\begin{verbatim}
g.add_node(coord) add vertex, return vid
g.add_edge(v1, v2) add edge from v1 to v2, return eid
g.setcost(e, c) set cost for edge e
g.setdata(v, u) set user data for vertex v
g.data(v) get user data for vertex v
g.clear() remove all vertices and edges from the graph
\end{verbatim}
### Information from graph

- `g.edges(v)`: list of edges for vertex `v`
- `g.cost(e)`: cost of edge `e`
- `g.neighbours(v)`: neighbours of vertex `v`
- `g.component(v)`: component id for vertex `v`
- `g.connectivity()`: number of edges for all vertices

### Display

- `g.plot()`: set goal vertex for path planning
- `g.highlight_node(v)`: highlight vertex `v`
- `g.highlight_edge(e)`: highlight edge `e`
- `g.highlight_component(c)`: highlight all nodes in component `c`
- `g.highlight_path(p)`: highlight nodes and edge along path `p`

- `g.pick(coord)`: vertex closest to coord
- `g.char()`: convert graph to string
- `g.display()`: display summary of graph

### Matrix representations

- `g.adjacency()`: adjacency matrix
- `g.incidence()`: incidence matrix
- `g.degree()`: degree matrix
- `g.laplacian()`: Laplacian matrix

### Planning paths through the graph

- `g.Astar(s, g)`: shortest path from `s` to `g`
- `g.goal(v)`: set goal vertex, and plan paths
- `g.path(v)`: list of vertices from `v` to goal

### Graph and world points

- `g.coord(v)`: coordinate of vertex `v`
- `g.distance(v1, v2)`: distance between `v1` and `v2`
- `g.distances(coord)`: return sorted distances from coord to all vertices
- `g.closest(coord)`: vertex closest to coord
Object properties (read only)

\[ \begin{align*}
g.n & \quad \text{number of vertices} \\
g.ne & \quad \text{number of edges} \\
g.nc & \quad \text{number of components}
\end{align*} \]

Examples

```matlab
G = PGraph();
g.add_node([1 2]'); % add node 1
G.add_node([3 4]'); % add node 1
G.add_node([1 3]'); % add node 1
G.add_edge(1, 2); % add edge 1-2
G.add_edge(2, 3); % add edge 2-3
G.add_edge(1, 3); % add edge 1-3
G.plot()
```

Notes

- Support for edge direction is rudimentary.

\section*{PGraph.PGraph}

\textbf{Graph class constructor}

\( \text{G} = \text{PGraph}(d, \text{options}) \) is a graph object embedded in \( d \) dimensions.

\textbf{Options}

- ‘distance’, \( M \) \quad Use the distance metric \( M \) for path planning which is either ‘Euclidean’ (default) or ‘SE2’.
- ‘verbose’ \quad Specify verbose operation

Notes

- Number of dimensions is not limited to 2 or 3.
- The distance metric ‘SE2’ is the sum of the squares of the difference in position and angle modulo 2\( \pi \).
- To use a different distance metric create a subclass of PGraph and override the method \text{distance}\_metric().
**PGraph.add_edge**

Add an edge

\[ E = G.\text{add\_edge}(v_1, v_2) \]

adds a directed edge from vertex id \( v_1 \) to vertex id \( v_2 \), and returns the edge id \( E \). The edge cost is the distance between the vertices.

\[ E = G.\text{add\_edge}(v_1, v_2, C) \]

as above but the edge cost is \( C \).

**Notes**

- If \( v_2 \) is a vector add edges from \( v_1 \) to all elements of \( v_2 \)
- Distance is computed according to the metric specified in the constructor.

**See also**

PGraph.add_node, PGraph.edgedir

**PGraph.add_node**

Add a node

\[ v = G.\text{add\_node}(x) \]

adds a node/vertex with coordinate \( x \) \((D \times 1)\) and returns the integer node id \( v \).

\[ v = G.\text{add\_node}(x, v_{from}) \]

as above but connected by a directed edge from vertex \( v_{from} \) with cost equal to the distance between the vertices.

\[ v = G.\text{add\_node}(x, v_2, C) \]

as above but the added edge has cost \( C \).

**Notes**

- Distance is computed according to the metric specified in the constructor.

**See also**

PGraph.add_edge, PGraph.data, PGraph.getdata
PGraph.adjacency

Adjacency matrix of graph

\[ a = G.\text{adjacency}() \] is a matrix \((N \times N)\) where element \(a(i,j)\) is the cost of moving from vertex \(i\) to vertex \(j\).

Notes

- Matrix is symmetric.
- Eigenvalues of \(a\) are real and are known as the spectrum of the graph.
- The element \(a(I,J)\) can be considered the number of walks of one edge from vertex \(I\) to vertex \(J\) (either zero or one). The element \((I,J)\) of \(a^N\) are the number of walks of length \(N\) from vertex \(I\) to vertex \(J\).

See also

PGraph.degree, PGraph.incidence, PGraph.laplacian

PGraph.Astar

path finding

\[ \text{path} = G.\text{Astar}(v1, v2) \] is the lowest cost path from vertex \(v1\) to vertex \(v2\). \text{path} is a list of vertices starting with \(v1\) and ending \(v2\).

\[ [\text{path}, C] = G.\text{Astar}(v1, v2) \] as above but also returns the total cost of traversing \text{path}.

Notes

- Uses the efficient A* search algorithm.
- The heuristic is the distance function selected in the constructor, it must be admissible, meaning that it never overestimates the actual cost to get to the nearest goal node.

References

See also

PGraph.goal, PGraph.path

PGraph.char

Convert graph to string

s = G.char() is a compact human readable representation of the state of the graph including the number of vertices, edges and components.

PGraph.clear

Clear the graph

G.clear() removes all vertices, edges and components.

PGraph.closest

Find closest vertex

v = G.closest(x) is the vertex geometrically closest to coordinate x.

[v,d] = G.closest(x) as above but also returns the distance d.

See also

PGraph.distances

PGraph.component

Graph component

C = G.component(v) is the id of the graph component that contains vertex v.
**CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES**

**PGraph.componentnodes**

Graph component

\( C = G.\text{component}(v) \) is the id of the graph component that contains vertex \( v \).

**PGraph.connectivity**

Node connectivity

\( C = G.\text{connectivity}() \) is a vector \((N \times 1)\) with the number of edges per vertex.

The average vertex connectivity is

\[
\text{mean}(g.\text{connectivity}())
\]

and the minimum vertex connectivity is

\[
\text{min}(g.\text{connectivity}())
\]

**PGraph.connectivity_in**

Graph connectivity

\( C = G.\text{connectivity}() \) is a vector \((N \times 1)\) with the number of edges per vertex.

The average vertex connectivity is

\[
\text{mean}(g.\text{connectivity}())
\]

and the minimum vertex connectivity is

\[
\text{min}(g.\text{connectivity}())
\]

**PGraph.connectivity_out**

Graph connectivity

\( C = G.\text{connectivity}() \) is a vector \((N \times 1)\) with the number of edges per vertex.

The average vertex connectivity is

\[
\text{mean}(g.\text{connectivity}())
\]

and the minimum vertex connectivity is

\[
\text{min}(g.\text{connectivity}())
\]
PGraph.coord

Coordinate of node

\( x = \text{G.coord}(v) \) is the coordinate vector \((D \times 1)\) of vertex id \(v\).

PGraph.cost

Cost of edge

\( C = \text{G.cost}(E) \) is the cost of edge id \(E\).

PGraph.degree

Degree matrix of graph

\( d = \text{G.degree}() \) is a diagonal matrix \((N \times N)\) where element \(d(i,i)\) is the number of edges connected to vertex id \(i\).

See also

PGraph.adjacency, PGraph.incidence, PGraph.laplacian

PGraph.display

Display graph

\( \text{G.display}() \) displays a compact human readable representation of the state of the graph including the number of vertices, edges and components.

See also

PGraph.char
**PGraph.distance**

Distance between vertices

\[ d = G.\text{distance}(v1, v2) \]

is the geometric distance between the vertices \( v1 \) and \( v2 \).

**See also**

PGraph.distances

---

**PGraph.distances**

Distances from point to vertices

\[ d = G.\text{distances}(x) \]

is a vector \((1 \times N)\) of geometric distance from the point \( x \) \((d \times 1)\) to every other vertex sorted into increasing order.

\[ [d, w] = G.\text{distances}(p) \]

as above but also returns \( w \) \((1 \times N)\) with the corresponding vertex id.

**Notes**

- Distance is computed according to the metric specified in the constructor.

**See also**

PGraph.closest

---

**PGraph.dotfile**

Create a GraphViz dot file

\[ G.\text{dotfile}(\text{filename}, \text{options}) \]

creates the specified file which contains the GraphViz code to represent the embedded graph.

\[ G.\text{dotfile}(\text{options}) \]

as above but outputs the code to the console.

**Options**

- ‘directed’ create a directed graph
Notes

- An undirected graph is default
- Use neato rather than dot to get the embedded layout

**PGraph.edata**

Get user data for node

u = G.data(v) gets the user data of vertex v which can be of any type such as a number, struct, object or cell array.

See also

PGraph.setdata

**PGraph.edgedir**

Find edge direction

d = G.edgedir(v1, v2) is the direction of the edge from vertex id v1 to vertex id v2.

If we add an edge from vertex 3 to vertex 4

    g.add_edge(3, 4)

then

    g.edgedir(3, 4)

is positive, and

    g.edgedir(4, 3)

is negative.

See also

PGraph.add_node, PGraph.add_edge
PGraph.edges

Find edges given vertex

E = G.edges(v) is a vector containing the id of all edges connected to vertex id v.

See also

PGraph.edgedir

PGraph.edges_in

Find edges given vertex

E = G.edges(v) is a vector containing the id of all edges connected to vertex id v.

See also

PGraph.edgedir

PGraph.edges_out

Find edges given vertex

E = G.edges(v) is a vector containing the id of all edges connected to vertex id v.

See also

PGraph.edgedir

PGraph.get.n

Number of vertices

G.n is the number of vertices in the graph.
See also

PGraph.ne

PGraph.get.nc

Number of components

G.nc is the number of components in the graph.

See also

PGraph.component

PGraph.get.ne

Number of edges

G.ne is the number of edges in the graph.

See also

PGraph.n

PGraph.graphcolor

the graph

PGraph.highlight_component

Highlight a graph component

G.highlight_component(C, options) highlights the vertices that belong to graph component C.
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Options

‘NodeSize’, S   Size of vertex circle (default 12)
‘NodeFaceColor’, C   Node circle color (default yellow)
‘NodeEdgeColor’, C   Node circle edge color (default blue)

See also

PGraph.highlight_node, PGraph.highlight_edge, PGraph.highlight_component

PGraph.highlight_edge

Highlight a node

G.highlight_edge(v1, v2) highlights the edge between vertices v1 and v2.
G.highlight_edge(E) highlights the edge with id E.

Options

‘EdgeColor’, C   Edge edge color (default black)
‘EdgeThickness’, T   Edge thickness (default 1.5)

See also

PGraph.highlight_node, PGraph.highlight_path, PGraph.highlight_component

PGraph.highlight_node

Highlight a node

G.highlight_node(v, options) highlights the vertex v with a yellow marker. If v is a list of vertices then all are highlighted.

Options

‘NodeSize’, S   Size of vertex circle (default 12)
‘NodeFaceColor’, C   Node circle color (default yellow)
‘NodeEdgeColor’, C   Node circle edge color (default blue)
See also

PGraph.highlight_edge, PGraph.highlight_path, PGraph.highlight_component

**PGraph.highlight_path**

Highlight path

\[ G \text{.highlight\_path}(p, \text{options}) \]

highlights the path defined by vector \( p \) which is a list of vertex ids comprising the path.

**Options**

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{\textquotesingle} \text{NodeSize\textquotesingle}, & \ S & \text{Size of vertex circle (default 12)} \\
\text{\textquotesingle} \text{NodeFaceColor\textquotesingle}, & \ C & \text{Node circle color (default yellow)} \\
\text{\textquotesingle} \text{NodeEdgeColor\textquotesingle}, & \ C & \text{Node circle edge color (default blue)} \\
\text{\textquotesingle} \text{EdgeColor\textquotesingle}, & \ C & \text{Node circle edge color (default black)} \\
\text{\textquotesingle} \text{EdgeThickness\textquotesingle}, & \ T & \text{Edge thickness (default 1.5)}
\end{align*}
\]

See also

PGraph.highlight_node, PGraph.highlight_edge, PGraph.highlight_component

**PGraph.incidence**

Incidence matrix of graph

\[ \text{in} = G \text{.incidence}() \]

is a matrix \((N \times NE)\) where element \( \text{in}(i,j) \) is non-zero if vertex id \( i \) is connected to edge id \( j \).

See also

PGraph.adjacency, PGraph.degree, PGraph.laplacian

**PGraph.laplacian**

Laplacian matrix of graph

\[ L = G \text{.laplacian}() \]

is the Laplacian matrix \((N \times N)\) of the graph.
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Notes

- $L$ is always positive-semidefinite.
- $L$ has at least one zero eigenvalue.
- The number of zero eigenvalues is the number of connected components in the graph.

See also

PGraph.adjacency, PGraph.incidence, PGraph.degree

PGraph.name

Name of node

$x = G.name(v)$ is the name (string) of vertex id $v$.

PGraph.neighbours

Neighbours of a vertex

$n = G.neighbours(v)$ is a vector of ids for all vertices which are directly connected neighbours of vertex $v$.

$[n,C] = G.neighbours(v)$ as above but also returns a vector $C$ whose elements are the edge costs of the paths corresponding to the vertex ids in $n$.

PGraph.neighbours_d

Directed neighbours of a vertex

$n = G.neighbours_d(v)$ is a vector of ids for all vertices which are directly connected neighbours of vertex $v$. Elements are positive if there is a link from $v$ to the node (outgoing), and negative if the link is from the node to $v$ (incoming).

$[n,C] = G.neighbours_d(v)$ as above but also returns a vector $C$ whose elements are the edge costs of the paths corresponding to the vertex ids in $n$.  

Robotics Toolbox 10.3.1 for MATLAB® 211 Copyright ©Peter Corke 2018
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

PGraph.neighbours_in

Incoming neighbours of a vertex

\( n = G.\text{neighbours}(v) \) is a vector of ids for all vertices which are directly connected neighbours of vertex \( v \).

\([n,C] = G.\text{neighbours}(v)\) as above but also returns a vector \( C \) whose elements are the edge costs of the paths corresponding to the vertex ids in \( n \).

PGraph.neighbours_out

Outgoing neighbours of a vertex

\( n = G.\text{neighbours}(v) \) is a vector of ids for all vertices which are directly connected neighbours of vertex \( v \).

\([n,C] = G.\text{neighbours}(v)\) as above but also returns a vector \( C \) whose elements are the edge costs of the paths corresponding to the vertex ids in \( n \).

PGraph.pick

Graphically select a vertex

\( v = G.\text{pick}() \) is the id of the vertex closest to the point clicked by the user on a plot of the graph.

See also

PGraph.plot

PGraph.plot

Plot the graph

\( G.\text{plot}(\text{opt}) \) plots the graph in the current figure. Nodes are shown as colored circles.
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Options

- ‘labels’ Display vertex id (default false)
- ‘edges’ Display edges (default true)
- ‘edgelabels’ Display edge id (default false)
- ‘NodeSize’, S Size of vertex circle (default 8)
- ‘NodeFaceColor’, C Node circle color (default blue)
- ‘NodeEdgeColor’, C Node circle edge color (default blue)
- ‘NodeLabelSize’, S Node label text size (default 16)
- ‘NodeLabelColor’, C Node label text color (default blue)
- ‘EdgeColor’, C Edge color (default black)
- ‘EdgeLabelSize’, S Edge label text size (default black)
- ‘EdgeLabelColor’, C Edge label text color (default black)
- ‘componentcolor’ Node color is a function of graph component
- ‘only’, N Only show these nodes

PGraph.samecomponent

Graph component

C = G.component(v) is the id of the graph component that contains vertex v.

PGraph.setcoord

Coordinate of node

x = G.coord(v) is the coordinate vector \((D \times 1)\) of vertex id v.

PGraph.setcost

Set cost of edge

G.setcost(E, C) set cost of edge id E to C.

PGraph.setedata

Set user data for node

G.setdata(v, u) sets the user data of vertex v to u which can be of any type such as a number, struct, object or cell array.

Robotics Toolbox 10.3.1 for MATLAB®213 Copyright ©Peter Corke 2018
See also

PGraph.data

**PGraph.setvdata**

Set user data for node

G.setdata(v, u) sets the user data of vertex v to u which can be of any type such as a number, struct, object or cell array.

See also

PGraph.data

**PGraph.vdata**

Get user data for node

u = G.data(v) gets the user data of vertex v which can be of any type such as a number, struct, object or cell array.

See also

PGraph.setdata

**PGraph.vertices**

Find vertices given edge

v = G.vertices(E) return the id of the vertices that define edge E.
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

pickregion

Pick a rectangular region of a figure using mouse

\[ \{p1, p2\} = \text{pickregion}() \] initiates a rubberband box at the current click point and animates it so long as the mouse button remains down. Returns the first and last coordinates in axis units.

Options

- ‘axis’, A  The axis to select from (default current axis)
- ‘ls’, LS  Line style for foreground line (default ‘:y’);
- ‘bg’LS,  Line style for background line (default ‘-k’);
- ‘width’, W Line width (default 2)
- ‘pressed’ Don’t wait for first button press, use current position

Notes

- Effectively a replacement for the builtin rbbox function which draws the box in the wrong location on my Mac’s external monitor.

Author

Based on rubberband box from MATLAB Central written/Edited by Bob Hamans (B.C.Hamans@student.tue.nl) 02-04-2003, in turn based on an idea of Sandra Martinka’s Rubberline.

plot2

Plot trajectories

Convenience function for plotting 2D or 3D trajectory data stored in a matrix with one row per time step.

\text{plot2}(p) \] plots a line with coordinates taken from successive rows of \( p \). \( p \) can be \( N \times 2 \) or \( N \times 3 \).

If \( p \) has three dimensions, ie. \( N \times 2 \times M \) or \( N \times 3 \times M \) then the M trajectories are overlaid in the one plot.

\text{plot2}(p, ls) \] as above but the line style arguments \( ls \) are passed to plot.
See also
mplot, plot

**plot_arrow**

**Draw an arrow in 2D or 3D**

**plot_arrow**(p1, p2, options) draws an arrow from p1 to p2 (2 × 1 or 3 × 1).

**plot_arrow**(p, options) as above where the columns of p (2 × 2 or 3 × 2) define where p=[p1 p2].

**Options**

- All options are passed through to arrow3.
- MATLAB colorspec such as ‘r’ or ‘b–’

See also
arrow3

**plot_box**

**Draw a box**

**plot_box**(b, options) draws a box defined by b=[XL XR; YL YR] on the current plot with optional MATLAB linestyle options LS.

**plot_box**(x1,y1, x2,y2, options) draws a box with corners at (x1,y1) and (x2,y2), and optional MATLAB linestyle options LS.

**plot_box**(‘centre’, P, ‘size’, W, options) draws a box with center at P=[X,Y] and with dimensions W=[WIDTH HEIGHT].

**plot_box**(‘topleft’, P, ‘size’, W, options) draws a box with top-left at P=[X,Y] and with dimensions W=[WIDTH HEIGHT].

**plot_box**(‘matlab’, BOX, LS) draws box(es) as defined using the MATLAB convention of specifying a region in terms of top-left coordinate, width and height. One box is drawn for each row of BOX which is [xleft ytop width height].
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Options

- ‘edgecolor’ the color of the circle’s edge, Matlab color spec
- ‘fillcolor’ the color of the circle’s interior, Matlab color spec
- ‘alpha’ transparency of the filled circle: 0=transparent, 1=solid

- For an unfilled box any standard MATLAB LineStyle such as ‘r’ or ‘b—’.
- For an unfilled box any MATLAB LineProperty options can be given such as ‘LineWidth’, 2.
- For a filled box any MATLAB PatchProperty options can be given.

Notes

- The box is added to the current plot irrespective of hold status.
- Additional options LS are MATLAB LineSpec options and are passed to PLOT.

See also

plot_poly, plot_circle, plot_ellipse

plot_circle

Draw a circle

plot_circle(C, R, options) draws a circle on the current plot with centre C=[X,Y] and radius R. If C=[X,Y,Z] the circle is drawn in the XY-plane at height Z.

If C (2×N) then N circles are drawn and H is N×1. If R (1×1) then all circles have the same radius or else R (1×N) to specify the radius of each circle.

H = plot_circle(C, R, options) as above but return handles. For multiple circles H is a vector of handles, one per circle.

Animation

First draw the circle and keep its graphic handle, then alter it, eg.

H = PLOT_CIRCLE(C, R)
PLOT_ELLIPSE(C, R, ‘alter’, H);

Robotics Toolbox 10.3.1 for MATLAB® 217 Copyright ©Peter Corke 2018
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Options

- ‘edgecolor’ the color of the circle’s edge, Matlab color spec
- ‘fillcolor’ the color of the circle’s interior, Matlab color spec
- ‘alpha’ transparency of the filled circle: 0=transparent, 1=solid
- ‘alter’, H alter existing circles with handle H

- For an unfilled circle any standard MATLAB LineStyle such as ‘r’ or ‘b—’.
- For an unfilled circle any MATLAB LineProperty options can be given such as ‘LineWidth’, 2.
- For a filled circle any MATLAB PatchProperty options can be given.

Notes

- The circle(s) is added to the current plot irrespective of hold status.

See also

plot_ellipse, plot_box, plot_poly

plot_ellipse

Draw an ellipse or ellipsoid

plot_ellipse(E, options) draws an ellipse or ellipsoid defined by $X'EX = 0$ on the current plot, centred at the origin. $E$ (2 × 2) for an ellipse and $E$ (2 × 3) for an ellipsoid.

plot_ellipse(E, C, options) as above but centred at $C=[X,Y]$. If $C=[X,Y,Z]$ the ellipse is parallel to the XY plane but at height Z.

H = plot_ellipse(E, C, options) as above but return graphic handle.

Animation

First draw the ellipse and keep its graphic handle, then alter it, eg.

H = PLOT_ELLIPSE(E, C, ‘r’)
PLOT_ELLIPSE(C, R, ‘alter’, H);

Options
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

'confidence', C  confidence interval, range 0 to 1
'alter', H  alter existing ellipses with handle H
'npoints', N  use N points to define the ellipse (default 40)
'edgecolor'  color of the ellipse boundary edge, MATLAB color spec
'fillcolor'  the color of the circle’s interior, MATLAB color spec
'alpha'  transparency of the fillcolored circle: 0=transparent, 1=solid
'shadow'  show shadows on the 3 walls of the plot box

- For an unfilled ellipse any standard MATLAB LineStyle such as ‘r’ or ‘b—’.
- For an unfilled ellipse any MATLAB LineProperty options can be given such as ‘LineWidth’, 2.
- For a filled ellipse any MATLAB PatchProperty options can be given.

Notes
- If A (2 × 2) draw an ellipse, else if A(3 × 3) draw an ellipsoid.
- The ellipse is added to the current plot irrespective of hold status.
- Shadow option only valid for ellipsoids.
- If a confidence interval is given the scaling factor is computed using an approximate inverse chi-squared function.

See also
plot_ellipse_inv, plot_circle, plot_box, plot_poly

plot_homline

Draw a line in homogeneous form

plot_homline(L, ls) draws a line in the current plot defined by \( L \cdot X = 0 \) where \( L \) (3 × 1).
The current axis limits are used to determine the endpoints of the line. MATLAB line specification \( ls \) can be set. If \( L \) (3 × N) then N lines are drawn, one per column.

\( H = \text{plot_homline}(L, ls) \) as above but returns a vector of graphics handles for the lines.

Notes
- The line(s) is added to the current plot.
- The line(s) can be drawn in 3D axes but will always lie in the xy-plane.
See also

plot_box, plot_poly, homline

---

**plot_point**

Draw a point

*plot_point(p, options)* adds point markers to the current plot, where *p* (*2 × N*) and each column is the point coordinate.

**Options**

- `textcolor`, `colspec`: Specify color of text
- `textsize`, `size`: Specify size of text
- `bold`: Text in bold font.
- `printf`, `{fmt, data}`: Label points according to printf format string and corresponding element of data
- `sequence`: Label points sequentially
- `label`, `L`: Label for point

Additional options to PLOT can be used:
- standard MATLAB LineStyle such as ‘r’ or ‘b—’
- any MATLAB LineProperty options can be given such as ‘LineWidth’, 2.

**Examples**

Simple point plot

```matlab
P = rand(2,4);
plot_point(P);
```

Plot points with markers

```matlab
plot_point(P, '*');
```

Plot points with markers

```matlab
plot_point(P, 'o', 'MarkerFaceColor', 'b');
```

Plot points with square markers and labels 1 to 4

```matlab
plot_point(P, 'sequence', 's');
```

Plot points with circles and annotations P1 to P4

```matlab
data = [1 2 4 8];
plot_point(P, 'printf', {'P%d', data}, 'o');
```
Notes

- The point(s) and annotations are added to the current plot.
- Points can be drawn in 3D axes but will always lie in the xy-plane.

See also

plot_sphere, plot, text

plot_poly

Draw a polygon

plot_poly(p, options) adds a polygon defined by columns of p \((2 \times N)\), in the current plot with default line style.

\[ H = \text{plot_poly}(p, \text{options}) \]
as above but processes additional options and returns a graphics handle.

Animation

plot_poly(H, T) sets the pose of the polygon with handle \(H\) to the pose given by T \((3 \times 3\) or \(4 \times 4\).

Create a polygon that can be animated, then alter it, eg.

\[ H = \text{PLOT_POLY}(P, \text{’animate’, ’r’}) \]
\[ \text{PLOT_POLY}(H, \text{transl}(2,1,0)) ; \]

options

‘fillcolor’,F the color of the circle’s interior, MATLAB color spec

‘alpha’, A transparency of the filled circle: 0=transparent, 1=solid.

‘edgecolor’,E edge color

‘animate’ the polygon can be animated
‘tag’, T the polygon is created with a handle graphics tag
‘axis’, h handle of axis or UIAxis to draw into (default is current axis)

- For an unfilled polygon any standard MATLAB LineStyle such as ‘r’ or ‘b—’.
For an unfilled polygon any MATLAB LineProperty options can be given such as ‘LineWidth’, 2.

For a filled polygon any MATLAB PatchProperty options can be given.

Notes

- If \( p \ (3 \times N) \) the polygon is drawn in 3D
- If not filled the polygon is a line segment, otherwise it is a patch object.
- The ‘animate’ option creates an hgtransform object as a parent of the polygon, which can be animated by the last call signature above.
- The graphics are added to the current plot.

See also

plot_box, plot_circle, patch, Polygon

---

plot_sphere

Draw sphere

**plot_sphere**\( (C, R, Is) \) draws spheres in the current plot. \( C \) is the centre of the sphere \((3 \times 1)\), \( R \) is the radius and \( Is \) is an optional MATLAB ColorSpec, either a letter or a 3-vector.

\[
H = \text{plot_sphere}(C, R, \text{color})
\]

as above but returns the handle(s) for the spheres.

\[
H = \text{plot_sphere}(C, R, \text{color}, \alpha)
\]

as above but \( \alpha \) specifies the opacity of the sphere where 0 is transparent and 1 is opaque. The default is 1.

If \( C \ (3 \times N) \) then \( N \) sphere are drawn and \( H \) is \( N \times 1 \). If \( R \ (1 \times 1) \) then all spheres have the same radius or else \( R \ (1 \times N) \) to specify the radius of each sphere.

Example

Create four spheres

```matlab
plot_sphere( mkgrid(2, 1), .2, 'b')
```

and now turn on a full lighting model

```matlab
lighting gouraud
light
```
NOTES

- The sphere is always added, irrespective of figure hold state.
- The number of vertices to draw the sphere is hardwired.

plot_vehicle

Draw mobile robot pose

`plot_vehicle(x,options)` draws an oriented triangle to represent the pose of a mobile robot moving in a planar world. The pose `x (1×3) = [x,y,theta]`. If `x` is a matrix `(N×3)` then an animation of the robot motion is shown and animated at the specified frame rate.

Image mode

Create a structure with the following elements and pass it with the ‘model’ option.

- `image` an RGB image `(H×W×3)`
- `alpha` an alpha plane `(H×W)` with pixels 0 if transparent
- `rotation` image rotation in degrees required for front to pointing to the right
- `centre` image coordinate `(U,V)` of the centre of the back axle
- `length` length of the car in real-world units

Animation mode

`H = plot_vehicle(x,options)` as above draws the robot and returns a handle.

`plot_vehicle(x, ‘handle’, H)` updates the pose `x (1×3)` of the previously drawn robot.

Options

- ‘scale’, `S` draw vehicle with length `S` x maximum axis dimension (default 1/60)
- ‘size’, `S` draw vehicle with length `S`
- ‘fillcolor’, `F` the color of the circle’s interior, MATLAB color spec
- ‘alpha’, `A` transparency of the filled circle: 0=transparent, 1=solid
- ‘box’ draw a box shape (default is triangle)
- ‘fps’, `F` animate at `F` frames per second (default 10)
- ‘image’, `I` use an image to represent the robot pose
- ‘retain’ when `x (N×3)` then retain the robots, leaving a trail
‘model’, M animate an image of the vehicle. M is a structure with elements: image, alpha, rotation (deg), centre (pix), length (m).

‘axis’, h handle of axis or UIAxis to draw into (default is current axis)

Example

```matlab
[car.image,~,car.alpha] = imread('car2.png'); % image and alpha layer
car.rotation = 180; % image rotation to align front with world x-axis
car.centre = [648; 173]; % image coordinates of centre of the back wheels
car.length = 4.2; % real world length for scaling (guess)
h = plot_vehicle(x, 'model', car) % draw car at configuration x
plot_vehicle(x, 'handle', h) % animate car to configuration x
```

Notes

- The vehicle is drawn relative to the size of the axes, so set them first using axis().
- For backward compatibility, ‘fill’, is a synonym for ‘fillcolor’
- For the ‘model’ option, you provide a monochrome or color image of the vehicle. Optionally you can provide an alpha mask (0=transparent). Specify the reference point on the vehicle as the (x,y) pixel coordinate within the image. Specify the rotation, in degrees, so that the car’s front points to the right. Finally specify a length of the car, the image is scaled to be that length in the plot.
- Set ‘fps’ to Inf to have zero pause

See also Vehicle.plot, plot_poly, demos/car_animation

---

**plotbotopt**

Define default options for robot plotting

A user provided function that returns a cell array of default plot options for the SerialLink.plot method.

See also

SerialLink.plot
**plotp**

**Plot trajectory**

Convenience function to plot points stored columnwise.

`plotp(p)` plots a set of points `p`, which by Toolbox convention are stored one per column. `p` can be $2 \times N$ or $3 \times N$. By default a linestyle of ‘bx’ is used.

`plotp(p, ls)` as above but the line style arguments `ls` are passed to `plot`.

**See also**

`plot`, `plot2`

---

**plotvol**

**Set the bounds for a 2D or 3D plot**

`plotvol(w)` creates a new axis, and sets the bounds for a 2D plot with X and Y spanning the interval `-w` to `w`. The axes are labelled, grid is enabled, aspect ratio set to 1:1, and hold is enabled for subsequent plots.

`plotvol([XMIN XMAX YMIN YMAX])` as above but the X and Y axis limits are explicitly provided.

`plotvol([XMIN XMAX YMIN YMAX ZMIN ZMAX])` as above but the X, Y and Z axis limits are explicitly provided.

**See also**

`axis`, `xaxis`, `yaxis`

---

**Plucker**

**Plucker coordinate class**

Concrete class to represent a line in Plucker coordinates.
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Methods

Plucker Constructor

- pp Principal point
  ppd Principal point distance from origin
  point Generate points on line

- closest Closest point on line
  contains Test if point is on line

- distance Minimum distance between two lines
  intersects Intersection point for two lines
  commonperp Common perpendicular for two lines

- intersect_plane Intersection points with a plane

intersect_volume Intersection points with a volume

- double Convert to 6-vector
  skew Convert to $4 \times 4$ skew symmetric matrix

- plot Plot line
  char Convert to human readable string
  display Display a human readable string

Operators

* Multiply Plucker matrix by a general matrix
  l Test if lines are parallel
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

extasciicircum Test if lines intersect
== Test if two lines are equivalent
≠ Test if lines are not equivalent

Notes

• This is reference (handle) class object
• Link objects can be used in vectors and arrays

References


Implementation notes

• There is a huge variety of notation used across the literature, as well as the ordering of the direction and moment components in the 6-vector

Plucker.Plucker

Create Plucker line object

p = Plucker(L) creates a copy of the Plucker object L
p = Plucker(v) creates a Plucker object from v (6 × 1)
p = Plucker(p1, p2) create a Plucker object that represents the line joining the 3D points p1 (3 × 1) and p2 (3 × 1).
p = Plucker(’points’, p1, p2) as above.
p = Plucker(’planes’, PI1, PP2) create a Plucker object that represents the line formed by the intersection of two planes PI1, PI2 (4 × 1).
p = Plucker(’Pw’, p, W) create a Plucker object from a point p (3 × 1) and direction vector W (3 × 1).

Notes

• Planes are given by the 4-vector [a b c d] to represent ax+by+cz+d=0.

Robotics Toolbox 10.3.1 for MATLAB® 227 Copyright ©Peter Corke 2018
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Plucker.char

Convert to string

`s = P.char()` is a string showing Plucker parameters in a compact single line format.

See also

Plucker.display

Plucker.closest

Point on line closest to given point

`p = PL.closest(x)` is the coordinate of a point on the line that is closest to the point `x` (3 × 1).

`[p,d] = PL.closest(x)` as above but also returns the minimum distance between the point and the line.

`[p,dist,lambda] = PL.closest(x)` as above but also returns the line parameter `lambda` corresponding to the point on the line.

See also

Plucker.point

Plucker.commonperp

Common perpendicular to two lines

`p = P1.commonperp(p2)` is a Plucker object representing the common perpendicular line between the lines represented by the Plucker objects `P1` and `p2`.

See also

Plucker.intersect
Plucker.contains

Test if point is on the line

PL.contains(x) is true if the point x (3 x 1) lies on the line defined by the Plucker object PL.

Plucker.display

Display parameters

P.display() displays the Plucker parameters in compact single line format.

Notes

- This method is invoked implicitly at the command line when the result of an expression is a Plucker object and the command has no trailing semicolon.

See also

Plucker.char

Plucker.distance

Distance between lines

d = P1.distance(p2) is the minimum distance between two lines represented by Plucker objects P1 and p2.

Notes

- Works for parallel, skew and intersecting lines.

Plucker.double

Convert Plucker coordinates to real vector

PL.double() is a 6 x 1 vector comprising the moment and direction vectors.
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Plucker.eq

Test if two lines are equivalent

PL1 == PL2 is true if the Plucker objects describe the same line in space. Note that because of the over parameterization, lines can be equivalent even if they have different different parameters.

Plucker.get.uw

Get the line’s direction as a unit vector

PL.UW is a unit-vector parallel to the line

Plucker.intersect_plane

Line intersection with plane

x = PL.intersect_plane(p) is the point where the line intersects the plane p. Planes are structures with a normal p.n (3 × 1) and an offset p.p (1 × 1) such that p.n x + p.p = 0. x=[] if no intersection.

[x,T] = PL.intersect_plane(p) as above but also returns the line parameters (1 × N) at the intersection points.

See also

Plucker.point

Plucker.intersect_volume

Line intersects plot volume

p = PL.intersect_volume(bounds, line) returns a matrix (3 × N) with columns that indicate where the line intersects the faces of the plot volume specified in terms of [xmin xmax ymin ymax zmin zmax]. The number of columns N is either 0 (the line is outside the plot volume) or 2 (where the line pierces the bounding volume). LINE is a structure with elements .p (3 × 1) a point on the line and .v a vector parallel to the line.

[p,T] = PL.intersect_volume(bounds, line) as above but also returns the line parameters (1 × N) at the intersection points.
See also

Plucker.point

Plucker.intersects

Find intersection of two lines

\[ p = \text{P1.intersects}(\text{p2}) \]

\( p \) is the point of intersection \((3 \times 1)\) of the lines represented by Plucker objects P1 and p2. Is empty matrix if the lines do not intersect, or P1 \(==\) p2.

Notes

- Is false if the lines are equivalent since they would intersect at an infinite number of points.

See also

Plucker.commonperp

Plucker.isparallel

Test if lines are parallel

\[ \text{P1.isparallel}(\text{p2}) \]

\( \text{P1.isparallel}(\text{p2}) \) is true if the lines represented by Plucker objects P1 and p2 are parallel.

See also

Plucker.or

Plucker.mpower

Test if lines intersect

\[ \text{P1}^{P2} \]

\( \text{P1}^{P2} \) is true if lines represented by Plucker objects P1 and P2 intersect at a point.
Notes

- Is false if the lines are equivalent since they would intersect at an infinite number of points.

See also

Plucker.parallel

Plucker.mtimes

Plucker multiplication

PL1 * PL2 is the scalar reciprocal product.
PL * M is the product of the Plucker skew matrix and M (4 × N). M * PL is the product of M (N × 4) and the Plucker skew matrix.

Notes

- The * operator is overloaded for convenience.
- Multiplication or composition of Plucker lines is not defined.

See also

Plucker.skew

Plucker.ne

Test if two lines are not equivalent

PL1 ≠ PL2 is true if the Plucker objects describe different lines in space. Note that because of the over parameterization, lines can be equivalent even if they have different parameters.

Plucker.or

Test if lines are parallel

P1|P2 is true if the lines represented by Plucker objects P1 and P2 are parallel.
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

See also
Plucker.isparallel

Plucker.plot

Plot a line

PL.plot(options) plots the Plucker line within the current plot volume.
PL.plot(b, options) as above but plots within the plot bounds b = [XMIN XMAX YMIN YMAX ZMIN ZMAX].

Options

• are passed to plot3.

See also
plot3

Plucker.point

Generate point on line

p = PL.point(lambda) is a point on the line, where lambda is the parametric distance along the line from the principal point of the line.

See also
Plucker.pp, Plucker.closest

Plucker.pp

Principal point of the line

p = PL.pp() is the point on the line that is closest to the origin.
Notes

- Same as Plucker.point(0)

See also

Plucker.ppd, Plucker.point

---

**Plucker.ppd**

**Distance from principal point to the origin**

\[ p = \text{PL.ppd}() \]

is the distance from the principal point to the origin. This is the smallest distance of any point on the line to the origin.

See also

Plucker.pp

---

**Plucker.skew**

**Skew matrix form of the line**

\[ L = \text{PL.skew}() \]

is the **Plucker** matrix, a \(4 \times 4\) skew-symmetric matrix representation of the line.

Notes

- For two homogeneous points P and Q on the line, PQ'-QP' is also skew symmetric.

---

**polydiff**

**Differentiate a polynomial**

\[ \text{pd} = \text{polydiff}(p) \]

is a vector of coefficients of a polynomial (1 \(\times\) N-1) which is the derivative of the polynomial \(p\) (1 \(\times\) N).
$p = [3 \ 2 \ -1];$
$\text{polydiff}(p)$
$\text{ans} =$
$6 \quad 2$

See also
polyval

Polygon

Polygon class
A general class for manipulating polygons and vectors of polygons.

Methods

- **plot**  Plot polygon
- **area**  Area of polygon
- **moments**  Moments of polygon
- **centroid**  Centroid of polygon
- **perimeter**  Perimeter of polygon
- **transform**  Transform polygon
- **inside**  Test if points are inside polygon
- **intersection**  Intersection of two polygons
- **difference**  Difference of two polygons
- **union**  Union of two polygons
- **xor**  Exclusive or of two polygons
- **display**  print the polygon in human readable form
- **char**  convert the polygon to human readable string

Properties

- **vertices**  List of polygon vertices, one per column
- **extent**  Bounding box $[\text{minx} \ \text{maxx}; \ \text{miny} \ \text{maxy}]$
- **n**  Number of vertices

Notes

- This is reference class object

Robotics Toolbox 10.3.1 for MATLAB® 235  Copyright ©Peter Corke 2018
• Polygon objects can be used in vectors and arrays

Acknowledgement

The methods: inside, intersection, difference, union, and xor are based on code written
by:

Kirill K. Pankratov, kirill@plume.mit.edu, http://puddle.mit.edu/glenn/kirill/saga.html
and require a licence. However the author does not respond to email regarding the
licence, so use with care, and modify with acknowledgement.

Polygon.Polygon

Polygon class constructor

\( p = \text{Polygon}(v) \) is a polygon with vertices given by \( v \), one column per vertex.
\( p = \text{Polygon}(C, \text{wh}) \) is a rectangle centred at \( C \) with dimensions \( \text{wh}=[\text{WIDTH}, \text{HEIGHT}] \).

Polygon.area

Area of polygon

\( a = P.\text{area}() \) is the area of the polygon.

See also

Polygon.moments

Polygon.centroid

Centroid of polygon

\( x = P.\text{centroid}() \) is the centroid of the polygon.

See also

Polygon.moments
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Polygon.char

String representation

s = P.char() is a compact representation of the polygon in human readable form.

Polygon.difference

Difference of polygons

d = P.difference(q) is polygon P minus polygon q.

Notes

- If polygons P and q are not intersecting, returns coordinates of P.
- If the result d is not simply connected or consists of several polygons, resulting vertex list will contain NaNs.

Polygon.display

Display polygon

P.display() displays the polygon in a compact human readable form.

See also

Polygon.char

Polygon.inside

Test if points are inside polygon

in = p.inside(p) tests if points given by columns of p (2 x N) are inside the polygon. The corresponding elements of in (1 x N) are either true or false.
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

**Polygon.intersect**

Intersection of polygon with list of polygons

\[ i = P.\text{intersect}(\text{plist}) \] indicates whether or not the Polygon \( P \) intersects with

\[ i(j) = 1 \text{ if } p \text{ intersects } \text{polylist}(j), \text{ else } 0. \]

**Polygon.intersect_line**

Intersection of polygon and line segment

\[ i = P.\text{intersect_line}(L) \] is the intersection points of a polygon \( P \) with the line segment

\[ L = [x_1 \ x_2; \ y_1 \ y_2]. \] \( i(2 \times N) \) has one column per intersection, each column is \([x \ y]'\).

**Polygon.intersection**

Intersection of polygons

\[ i = P.\text{intersection}(q) \] is a Polygon representing the intersection of polygons \( P \) and \( q \).

**Notes**

- If these polygons are not intersecting, returns empty polygon.
- If intersection consist of several disjoint polygons (for non-convex \( P \) or \( q \)) then vertices of \( i \) is the concatenation of the vertices of these polygons.

**Polygon.moments**

Moments of polygon

\[ a = P.\text{moments}(p, q) \] is the \( pq^{th} \) moment of the polygon.

**See also**

Polygon.area, Polygon.centroid, mpq_poly
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

**Polygon.perimeter**

*Perimeter of polygon*

\[ L = \text{P.perimeter()} \] is the *perimeter* of the polygon.

**Polygon.plot**

*Draw polygon*

\[ \text{P.plot()} \] draws the polygon \( P \) in the current plot.

\[ \text{P.plot(\textbf{ls})} \] as above but pass the arguments \( \textbf{ls} \) to plot.

**Notes**

- The polygon is added to the current plot.

**Polygon.transform**

*Transform polygon vertices*

\[ \text{p2 = P.transform(T)} \] is a new Polygon object whose vertices have been transformed by the SE(2) homogeneous transformation \( T (3 \times 3) \).

**Polygon.union**

*Union of polygons*

\[ i = \text{P.union(q)} \] is a polygon representing the union of polygons \( P \) and \( q \).

**Notes**

- If these polygons are not intersecting, returns a polygon with vertices of both polygons separated by NaNs.
- If the result \( P \) is not simply connected (such as a polygon with a “hole”) the resulting contour consist of counter-clockwise “outer boundary” and one or more clock-wise “inner boundaries” around “holes”.

Robotics Toolbox 10.3.1 for MATLAB®239 Copyright ©Peter Corke 2018
**Polygon.xor**

**Exclusive or of polygons**

\[ \text{i} = \text{P.union(q)} \] is a polygon representing the exclusive-or of polygons \( P \) and \( q \).

**Notes**

- If these polygons are not intersecting, returns a polygon with vertices of both polygons separated by NaNs.
- If the result \( P \) is not simply connected (such as a polygon with a “hole”) the resulting contour consist of counter- clockwise “outer boundary” and one or more clock-wise “inner boundaries” around “holes”.

---

**PoseGraph**

**Pose graph**

**PoseGraph.PoseGraph**

**the file data**

we assume g2o format

```
VERTEX* vertex_id X Y THETA
EDGE* startvertex_id endvertex_id X Y THETA IXX IXY IYY IXT IYT ITT
```

vertex numbers start at 0

**PoseGraph.linear_factors**

**the ids of the vertices connected by the kth edge**

\[ \text{id}_i=\text{eids}(1,k); \quad \text{id}_j=\text{eids}(2,k); \]

extract the poses of the vertices and the mean of the edge

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{v}_i &= \text{vmeans}(:, \text{id}_i); \\
\text{v}_j &= \text{vmeans}(:, \text{id}_j); \\
\text{z}_{ij} &= \text{emeans}(:, k); 
\end{align*}
\]
Prismatic

Robot manipulator prismatic link class

A subclass of the Link class for a prismatic joint defined using standard Denavit-Hartenberg parameters: holds all information related to a robot link such as kinematics parameters, rigid-body inertial parameters, motor and transmission parameters.

Constructors

Prismatic construct a prismatic joint+link using standard DH

Information/display methods

display print the link parameters in human readable form
dyn display link dynamic parameters
type joint type: ‘R’ or ‘P’

Conversion methods

char convert to string

Operation methods

A link transform matrix
friction friction force
nofriction Link object with friction parameters set to zero%

Testing methods

islimit test if joint exceeds soft limit
isrevolute test if joint is revolute
isprismatic test if joint is prismatic
issym test if joint+link has symbolic parameters

Overloaded operators

+ concatenate links, result is a SerialLink object
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Properties (read/write)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>theta</td>
<td>kinematic: joint angle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d</td>
<td>kinematic: link offset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>kinematic: link length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alpha</td>
<td>kinematic: link twist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jointtype</td>
<td>kinematic: ‘R’ if revolute, ‘P’ if prismatic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mdh</td>
<td>kinematic: 0 if standard D&amp;H, else 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>offset</td>
<td>kinematic: joint variable offset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qlim</td>
<td>kinematic: joint variable limits [min max]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m</td>
<td>dynamic: link mass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r</td>
<td>dynamic: link COG wrt link coordinate frame 3 × 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>dynamic: link inertia matrix, symmetric 3 × 3, about link COG.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>dynamic: link viscous friction (motor referred)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tc</td>
<td>dynamic: link Coulomb friction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>actuator: gear ratio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jm</td>
<td>actuator: motor inertia (motor referred)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

- Methods inherited from the Link superclass.
- This is reference class object
- Link class objects can be used in vectors and arrays

References


See also

Link, Revolute, SerialLink

**Prismatic.Prismatic**

Create prismatic robot link object

\[ L = \text{Prismatic(options)} \]

is a prismatic link object with the kinematic and dynamic parameters specified by the key/value pairs using the standard Denavit-Hartenberg conventions.

Options

Robotics Toolbox 10.3.1 for MATLAB®242  Copyright ©Peter Corke 2018
`theta`, TH  joint angle
`a`, A  joint offset (default 0)
`alpha`, A  joint twist (default 0)
`standard` defined using standard D&H parameters (default).
`modified` defined using modified D&H parameters.
`offset`, O  joint variable offset (default 0)
`qlim`, L  joint limit (default [])
`I`, I  link inertia matrix (3 × 1, 6 × 1 or 3 × 3)
`r`, R  link centre of gravity (3 × 1)
`m`, M  link mass (1 × 1)
`G`, G  motor gear ratio (default 1)
`B`, B  joint friction, motor referenced (default 0)
`Jm`, J  motor inertia, motor referenced (default 0)
`Tc`, T  Coulomb friction, motor referenced (1 × 1 or 2 × 1), (default [0 0])
`sym`  consider all parameter values as symbolic not numeric

**Notes**

- The joint extension, d, is provided as an argument to the A() method.
- The link inertia matrix (3 × 3) is symmetric and can be specified by giving a 3 × 3 matrix, the diagonal elements [Ixx Iyy Izz], or the moments and products of inertia [Ixx Iyy Izz Ixy Iyz Ixz].
- All friction quantities are referenced to the motor not the load.
- Gear ratio is used only to convert motor referenced quantities such as friction and inertia to the link frame.

**See also**

Link, Prismatic, RevoluteMDH

---

**PrismaticMDH**

**Robot manipulator prismatic link class for MDH convention**

A subclass of the Link class for a prismatic joint defined using modified Denavit-Hartenberg parameters: holds all information related to a robot link such as kinematics parameters, rigid-body inertial parameters, motor and transmission parameters.

**Constructors**

PrismaticMDH  construct a prismatic joint+link using modified DH
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Information/display methods

display  print the link parameters in human readable form
dyn     display link dynamic parameters
type    joint type: ‘R’ or ‘P’

Conversion methods

char    convert to string

Operation methods

A       link transform matrix
friction friction force
nofriction Link object with friction parameters set to zero%

Testing methods

islimit  test if joint exceeds soft limit
isrevolute test if joint is revolute
isprismatic test if joint is prismatic
issym    test if joint+link has symbolic parameters

Overloaded operators

+   concatenate links, result is a SerialLink object

Properties (read/write)

theta    kinematic: joint angle
d        kinematic: link offset
a        kinematic: link length
alpha    kinematic: link twist
jointtype kinematic: ‘R’ if revolute, ‘P’ if prismatic
mdh      kinematic: 0 if standard D&H, else 1
offset   kinematic: joint variable offset
qlim     kinematic: joint variable limits [min max]
m        dynamic: link mass
r        dynamic: link COG wrt link coordinate frame 3 × 1
I         dynamic: link inertia matrix, symmetric 3 × 3, about link COG.
B        dynamic: link viscous friction (motor referred)


**CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tc</td>
<td>dynamic: link Coulomb friction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>actuator: gear ratio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jm</td>
<td>actuator: motor inertia (motor referred)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

- Methods inherited from the Link superclass.
- This is reference class object
- Link class objects can be used in vectors and arrays
- Modified Denavit-Hartenberg parameters are used

**References**


**See also**

Link, Prismatic, RevoluteMDH, SerialLink

---

**PrismaticMDH**

Create prismatic robot link object using MDH notation

\[ L = \text{PrismaticMDH}(\text{options}) \]

is a prismatic link object with the kinematic and dynamic parameters specified by the key/value pairs using the modified Denavit-Hartenberg conventions.

**Options**

- 'theta', TH  joint angle
- 'a', A       joint offset (default 0)
- 'alpha', A   joint twist (default 0)
- 'standard'   defined using standard D&H parameters (default).
- 'modified'   defined using modified D&H parameters.
- 'offset', O  joint variable offset (default 0)
- 'qlim', L    joint limit (default [])
- 'I', I       link inertia matrix (3 × 1, 6 × 1 or 3 × 3)
- 'r', R       link centre of gravity (3 × 1)
- 'm', M       link mass (1 × 1)
- 'G', G       motor gear ratio (default 1)
- 'B', B       joint friction, motor referenced (default 0)
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

‘Jm’, J  motor inertia, motor referenced (default 0)
‘Tc’, T  Coulomb friction, motor referenced (1 x 1 or 2 x 1), (default [0 0])
‘sym’   consider all parameter values as symbolic not numeric

Notes

• The joint extension, d, is provided as an argument to the A() method.
• The link inertia matrix (3 x 3) is symmetric and can be specified by giving a 3 x 3 matrix, the diagonal elements [Ixx Iyy Izz], or the moments and products of inertia [Ixx Iyy Izz Ixy Iyz Ixz].
• All friction quantities are referenced to the motor not the load.
• Gear ratio is used only to convert motor referenced quantities such as friction and inertia to the link frame.

See also

Link, Prismatic, RevoluteMDH

PRM

Probabilistic RoadMap navigation class

A concrete subclass of the abstract Navigation class that implements the probabilistic roadmap navigation algorithm over an occupancy grid. This performs goal independent planning of roadmaps, and at the query stage finds paths between specific start and goal points.

Methods

PRM Constructor
plan Compute the roadmap
query Find a path
plot Display the obstacle map
display Display the parameters in human readable form
char Convert to string

Example

load map1 % load map
goal = [50,30]; % goal point
start = [20, 10]; % start point
prm = PRM(map); % create navigation object
prm.plan(); % create roadmaps
prm.query(start, goal) % animate path from this start location

References

- Robotics, Vision & Control, Section 5.2.4, P. Corke, Springer 2011.

See also

Navigation, DXform, Dstar, PGraph

**PRM**

Create a PRM navigation object

\[ p = \text{PRM}(\text{map, options}) \]

\( p = \text{PRM}(\text{map, options}) \) is a probabilistic roadmap navigation object, and \( \text{map} \) is an occupancy grid, a representation of a planar world as a matrix whose elements are 0 (free space) or 1 (occupied).

Options

- 'npoints', N Number of sample points (default 100)
- 'distthresh', D Distance threshold, edges only connect vertices closer than \( D \) (default 0.3 \( \text{max(size(occgrid))} \))

Other options are supported by the Navigation superclass.

See also

Navigation.Navigation
PRM.char

Convert to string

PRM.char() is a string representing the state of the PRM object in human-readable form.

See also

PRM.display

PRM.plan

Create a probabilistic roadmap

PRM.plan(options) creates the probabilistic roadmap by randomly sampling the free space in the map and building a graph with edges connecting close points. The resulting graph is kept within the object.

Options

- 'npoints', N Number of sample points (default is set by constructor)
- 'distthresh', D Distance threshold, edges only connect vertices closer than D (default set by constructor)
- 'movie', M make a movie of the PRM planning

PRM.plot

Visualize navigation environment

PRM.plot() displays the roadmap and the occupancy grid.

Options

- 'goal' Superimpose the goal position if set
- 'nooverlay' Don’t overlay the PRM graph

Notes

- If a query has been made then the path will be shown.
Goal and start locations are kept within the object.

**PRM.query**

*Find a path between two points*

\[
\text{P.query}(\text{start, goal}) \text{ finds a path } (M \times 2) \text{ from } \text{start} \text{ to } \text{goal}.
\]

**qplot**

*Plot robot joint angles*

\[
\text{qplot}(q) \text{ is a convenience function to plot joint angle trajectories } (M \times 6) \text{ for a 6-axis robot, where each row represents one time step.}
\]

The first three joints are shown as solid lines, the last three joints (wrist) are shown as dashed lines. A legend is also displayed.

\[
\text{qplot}(T, q) \text{ as above but displays the joint angle trajectory versus time given the time vector } T (M \times 1).
\]

*See also*

jtraj, plotp, plot

**Quaternion**

*Quaternion class*

A quaternion is 4-element mathematical object comprising a scalar \( s \), and a vector \( v \) and is typically written: \( q = s \langle vx, vy, vz \rangle \).

A quaternion of unit length can be used to represent 3D orientation and is implemented by the subclass UnitQuaternion.
Constructors

Quaternion general constructor
Quaternion.pure pure quaternion

Display methods

display print in human readable form

Operation methods

inv inverse
conj conjugate
norm norm, or length
unit unitized quaternion
inner inner product

Conversion methods

char convert to string
double quaternion elements as 4-vector
matrix quaternion as a $4 \times 4$ matrix

Overloaded operators

$q \cdot q_2$ quaternion (Hamilton) product
$s \cdot q$ elementwise multiplication of quaternion by scalar
$q/q_2$ $q \cdot q_2.inv$
$q^n$ $q$ to power $n$ (integer only)
$q+q_2$ elementwise sum of quaternion elements
$q-q_2$ elementwise difference of quaternion elements
$q1==q2$ test for quaternion equality
$q1\neq q2$ test for quaternion inequality

Properties (read only)

s real part
v vector part
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Notes

• Quaternion objects can be used in vectors and arrays.

References


See also

UnitQuaternion

Quaternion.Quaternion

Construct a quaternion object

Q = Quaternion is a zero quaternion
Q = Quaternion([S V1 V2 V3]) is a quaternion formed by specifying directly its 4 elements
q = Quaternion(s, v) is a quaternion formed from the scalar s and vector part v (1 × 3)

Notes

• The constructor is not vectorized, it cannot create a vector of Quaternions.

Quaternion.char

Convert to string

s = Q.char() is a compact string representation of the quaternion’s value as a 4-tuple. If Q is a vector then s has one line per element.
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Quatetion.conj

Conjugate of a quaternion

$q_i = \text{Q.conj}()$ is a quaternion object representing the conjugate of $Q$.

Notes

- Conjugation changes the sign of the vector component.

See also

Quatetion.inv

Quatetion.display

Display quaternion

$\text{Q.display}()$ displays a compact string representation of the quaternion’s value as a 4-tuple. If $Q$ is a vector then $S$ has one line per element.

Notes

- This method is invoked implicitly at the command line when the result of an expression is a Quaternion object and the command has no trailing semicolon.
- The vector part is displayed with double brackets $<< 1, 0, 0 >>$ to distinguish it from a UnitQuaternion which displays as $< 1, 0, 0 >$
- If $Q$ is a vector of Quaternion objects the elements are displayed on consecutive lines.

See also

Quatetion.char
**Quatertion.double**

Convert a quaternion to a 4-element vector

\( \mathbf{v} = \text{Q}.\text{double}() \) is a row vector \((1 \times 4)\) comprising the quaternion elements, scalar then vector. If \( \mathbf{Q} \) is a vector \((1 \times N)\) of Quaternion objects then \( \mathbf{v} \) is a matrix \((N \times 4)\) with rows corresponding to the Quaternion elements.

**Notes**

- Overloaded operator ‘==’.
- This method is invoked for unit Quaternions where \( \mathbf{Q} \) and \(-\mathbf{Q} \) represent the equivalent rotation, so non-equality does not mean rotations are not equivalent.
- If \( \mathbf{Q}_1 \) is a vector of quaternions, each element is compared to \( \mathbf{Q}_2 \) and the result is a logical array of the same length as \( \mathbf{Q}_1 \).
- If \( \mathbf{Q}_2 \) is a vector of quaternions, each element is compared to \( \mathbf{Q}_1 \) and the result is a logical array of the same length as \( \mathbf{Q}_2 \).
- If \( \mathbf{Q}_1 \) and \( \mathbf{Q}_2 \) are vectors of the same length, then the result is a logical array of the same length.

**See also**

 Quaternion.ne

**Quatertion.inner**

Quaternion inner product

\( \mathbf{v} = \text{Q1}.\text{inner} (\mathbf{q2}) \) is the inner (dot) product of two vectors \((1 \times 4)\), comprising the elements of \( \mathbf{Q}_1 \) and \( \mathbf{q}_2 \) respectively.
**Notes**

- `Q1.inner(Q1)` is the same as `Q1.norm()`.

**See also**

- `Quaternion.norm`

---

**Quaternion.inv**

**Invert a quaternion**

$q_i = Q.inv()` is a quaternion object representing the inverse of $Q$.

**Notes**

- Is vectorized.

**See also**

- `Quaternion.conj`

---

**Quaternion.isequal**

**Test quaternion element equality**

$\text{ISEQUAL}(q1,q2)$ is true if the quaternions $q1$ and $q2$ are equal.

**Notes**

- Used by test suite `verifyEqual` in addition to `eq()`.
- Invokes `eq()`.

**See also**

- `Quaternion.eq`
Quaternion.matrix

Matrix representation of Quaternion

\[ m = Q \cdot \text{matrix}() \] is a matrix (4 × 4) representation of the Quaternion \( Q \).

Quaternion, or Hamilton, multiplication can be implemented as a matrix-vector product, where the column-vector is the elements of a second quaternion:

\[ \text{matrix}(Q_1) \times \text{double}(Q_2)' \]

Notes

- This matrix is not unique, other matrices will serve the purpose for multiplication, see https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Quaternion#Matrix_representations
- The determinant of the matrix is the norm of the quaternion to the fourth power.

See also

Quaternion.double, Quaternion.mtimes

Quaternion.minus

Subtract quaternions

\( Q_1 - Q_2 \) is a Quaternion formed from the element-wise difference of quaternion elements.

\( Q_1 - V \) is a Quaternion formed from the element-wise difference of \( Q_1 \) and the vector \( V \) (1 × 4).

Notes

- Overloaded operator ‘-’
- This is not a group operator, but it is useful to have the result as a quaternion.

See also

Quaternion.plus
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Quaternion.mpower

Raise quaternion to integer power

$Q^N$ is the Quaternion $Q$ raised to the integer power N.

Notes

- Overloaded operator extasciicircum
- Computed by repeated multiplication.
- If the argument is a unit-quaternion, the result will be a unit quaternion.

See also

Quaternion.mtimes

Quaternion.mrdivide

Quaternion quotient.

$Q_1/Q_2$ is a quaternion formed by Hamilton product of $Q_1$ and $\text{inv}(Q_2)$.
$Q/S$ is the element-wise division of quaternion elements by the scalar S.

Notes

- Overloaded operator '/'
- For case $Q_1/Q_2$ both can be an N-vector, result is elementwise division.
- For case $Q_1/Q_2$ if $Q_1$ scalar and $Q_2$ a vector, scalar is divided by each element.
- For case $Q_1/Q_2$ if $Q_2$ scalar and $Q_1$ a vector, each element divided by scalar.

See also

Quaternion.mtimes, Quaternion.mpower, Quaternion.plus, Quaternion.minus

Robotics Toolbox 10.3.1 for MATLAB® 256

Copyright ©Peter Corke 2018
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Quaternion.mtimes

Multiply a quaternion object

- \( Q_1 * Q_2 \) is a quaternion formed by the Hamilton product of two quaternions.
- \( Q * S \) is the element-wise multiplication of quaternion elements by the scalar \( S \).
- \( S * Q \) is the element-wise multiplication of quaternion elements by the scalar \( S \).

Notes

- Overloaded operator ‘\(*\’’
- For case \( Q_1 * Q_2 \) both can be an N-vector, result is elementwise multiplication.
- For case \( Q_1 * Q_2 \) if \( Q_1 \) scalar and \( Q_2 \) a vector, scalar multiplies each element.
- For case \( Q_1 * Q_2 \) if \( Q_2 \) scalar and \( Q_1 \) a vector, each element multiplies scalar.

See also

Quaternion.mrdivide, Quaternion.mpower

Quaternion.ne

Test quaternion inequality

- \( Q_1 \neq Q_2 \) is true if the quaternions \( Q_1 \) and \( Q_2 \) are not equal.

Notes

- Overloaded operator ‘\(\neq\)’
- Note that for unit Quaternions \( Q \) and \(-Q\) are the equivalent rotation, so non-equality does not mean rotations are not equivalent.
- If \( Q_1 \) is a vector of quaternions, each element is compared to \( Q_2 \) and the result is a logical array of the same length as \( Q_1 \).
- If \( Q_2 \) is a vector of quaternions, each element is compared to \( Q_1 \) and the result is a logical array of the same length as \( Q_2 \).
- If \( Q_1 \) and \( Q_2 \) are vectors of the same length, then the result is a logical array of the same length.
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

See also

Quaternion.eq

**Quaternion.new**

Construct a new quaternion

\[ q_n = Q.\text{new}() \] constructs a new Quaternion object of the same type as Q.

\[ q_n = Q.\text{new}([S \ V1 \ V2 \ V3]) \] as above but specified directly by its 4 elements.

\[ q_n = Q.\text{new}(s, v) \] as above but specified directly by the scalar \( s \) and vector part \( v \) (\( 1 \times 3 \))

**Notes**

- Polymorphic with UnitQuaternion and RTBPose derived classes.

**Quaternion.norm**

Quaternion magnitude

\[ q_n = q.\text{norm}(q) \] is the scalar norm or magnitude of the quaternion \( q \).

**Notes**

- This is the Euclidean norm of the quaternion written as a 4-vector.
- A unit-quaternion has a norm of one.

**See also**

Quaternion.inner, Quaternion.unit

**Quaternion.plus**

Add quaternions

\( Q1+Q2 \) is a Quaternion formed from the element-wise sum of quaternion elements.

\( Q1+V \) is a Quaternion formed from the element-wise sum of \( Q1 \) and the vector \( V \) (\( 1 \times 4 \)).
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Notes

- Overloaded operator ‘+’
  - This is not a group operator, but it is useful to have the result as a quaternion.

See also

Quaternion.minus

Quaternion.pure

Construct a pure quaternion

\[ q = \text{Quaternion.pure}(v) \]

is a pure quaternion formed from the vector \( v \) (1 × 3) and has a zero scalar part.

Quaternion.set.s

Set scalar component

\[ Q.s = S \]

sets the scalar part of the Quaternion object to \( S \).

Quaternion.set.v

Set vector component

\[ Q.v = V \]

sets the vector part of the Quaternion object to \( V \) (1 × 3).

Quaternion.unit

Unitize a quaternion

\[ qu = Q\text{.unit}() \]

is a UnitQuaternion object representing the same orientation as \( Q \).

Notes

- Is vectorized.
See also

Quaternion.norm, UnitQuaternion

---

**r2t**

Convert rotation matrix to a homogeneous transform

\[ T = r2t(R) \] is an SE(2) or SE(3) homogeneous transform equivalent to an SO(2) or SO(3) orthonormal rotation matrix \( R \) with a zero translational component. Works for \( T \) in either SE(2) or SE(3):

- if \( R \) is 2 × 2 then \( T \) is 3 × 3, or
- if \( R \) is 3 × 3 then \( T \) is 4 × 4.

**Notes**

- Translational component is zero.
- For a rotation matrix sequence \((K \times K \times N)\) returns a homogeneous transform sequence \((K+1 \times K+1 \times N)\).

See also

t2r

---

**randinit**

Reset random number generator

RANDINIT resets the default random number stream.

See also

RandStream
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

RandomPath

Vehicle driver class

Create a “driver” object capable of steering a Vehicle subclass object through random waypoints within a rectangular region and at constant speed.

The driver object is connected to a Vehicle object by the latter’s add_driver() method. The driver’s demand() method is invoked on every call to the Vehicle’s step() method.

Methods

init reset the random number generator
demand speed and steer angle to next waypoint
display display the state and parameters in human readable form
char convert to string

plot

Properties

goal current goal/waypoint coordinate
veh the Vehicle object being controlled
dim dimensions of the work space (2 × 1) [m]
speed speed of travel [m/s]
dthresh proximity to waypoint at which next is chosen [m]

Example

veh = Bicycle(V);
veh.add_driver( RandomPath(20, 2) );

Notes

- It is possible in some cases for the vehicle to move outside the desired region, for instance if moving to a waypoint near the edge, the limited turning circle may cause the vehicle to temporarily move outside.
- The vehicle chooses a new waypoint when it is closer than property closeenough to the current waypoint.
- Uses its own random number stream so as to not influence the performance of other randomized algorithms such as path planning.
Reference

Robotics, Vision & Control, Chap 6, Peter Corke, Springer 2011

See also

Vehicle, Bicycle, Unicycle

---

RandomPath.RandomPath

Create a driver object

\[ d = \text{RandomPath}(d, \text{options}) \]

returns a "driver" object capable of driving a Vehicle subclass object through random waypoints. The waypoints are positioned inside a rectangular region of dimension \( d \) interpreted as:

- \( d \) scalar; X: \(-d\) to \(+d\), Y: \(-d\) to \(+d\)
- \( d(1 \times 2) \); X: \(-d(1)\) to \(+d(1)\), Y: \(-d(2)\) to \(+d(2)\)
- \( d(1 \times 4) \); X: \(d(1)\) to \(d(2)\), Y: \(d(3)\) to \(d(4)\)

Options

- 'speed', S Speed along path (default 1m/s).
- 'dthresh', d Distance from goal at which next goal is chosen.

See also

Vehicle

---

RandomPath.char

Convert to string

\[ s = \text{R.char()} \]

is a string showing driver parameters and state in a compact human readable format.
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

RandomPath.demand

Compute speed and heading to waypoint

\[ \text{[speed, steer]} = \text{R.demand()} \]

is the speed and steer angle to drive the vehicle toward the next waypoint. When the vehicle is within \( R.dthresh \) a new waypoint is chosen.

See also

Vehicle

RandomPath.display

Display driver parameters and state

\( \text{R.display()} \)

displays driver parameters and state in compact human readable form.

Notes

- This method is invoked implicitly at the command line when the result of an expression is a RandomPath object and the command has no trailing semicolon.

See also

RandomPath.char

RandomPath.init

Reset random number generator

\( \text{R.init()} \)

resets the random number generator used to create the waypoints. This enables the sequence of random waypoints to be repeated.

Notes

- Called by Vehicle.run.
See also

randstream

RangeBearingSensor

Range and bearing sensor class

A concrete subclass of the Sensor class that implements a range and bearing angle sensor that provides robot-centric measurements of landmark points in the world. To enable this it holds a references to a map of the world (LandmarkMap object) and a robot (Vehicle subclass object) that moves in SE(2).

The sensor observes landmarks within its angular field of view between the minimum and maximum range.

Methods

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>reading</td>
<td>range/bearing observation of random landmark</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h</td>
<td>range/bearing observation of specific landmark</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hx</td>
<td>Jacobian matrix with respect to vehicle pose dh/dx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hp</td>
<td>Jacobian matrix with respect to landmark position dh/dp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hw</td>
<td>Jacobian matrix with respect to noise dh/dw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g</td>
<td>feature position given vehicle pose and observation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gx</td>
<td>Jacobian matrix with respect to vehicle pose dg/dx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gz</td>
<td>Jacobian matrix with respect to observation dg/dz</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Properties (read/write)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>W</td>
<td>measurement covariance matrix (2 × 2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interval</td>
<td>valid measurements returned every interval_th call to reading()</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>landmarklog</td>
<td>time history of observed landmarks</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Reference

Robotics, Vision & Control, Chap 6, Peter Corke, Springer 2011
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

See also

Sensor, Vehicle, LandmarkMap, EKF

RangeBearingSensor.RangeBearingSensor

Range and bearing sensor constructor

\[ s = \text{RangeBearingSensor}(\text{vehicle}, \text{map}, \text{options}) \]

is an object representing a range and bearing angle sensor mounted on the Vehicle subclass object \text{vehicle} and observing an environment of known landmarks represented by the LandmarkMap object \text{map}. The sensor covariance is \( W (2 \times 2) \) representing range and bearing covariance.

The sensor has specified angular field of view and minimum and maximum range.

Options

- `'covar'`, \( W \)  
  covariance matrix \((2 \times 2)\)
- `'range'`, \( \text{xmax} \)  
  maximum range of sensor
- `'range'`, \( [\text{xmin} \ \text{xmax}] \)  
  minimum and maximum range of sensor
- `'angle'`, \( \text{TH} \)  
  angular field of view, from \(-\text{TH}\) to \(+\text{TH}\)
- `'angle'`, \( [\text{THMIN} \ \text{THMAX}] \)  
  detection for angles between \text{THMIN} and \text{THMAX}
- `'skip'`, \( K \)  
  return a valid reading on every \( k^{\text{th}} \) call
- `'fail'`, \( [\text{TMIN} \ \text{TMAX}] \)  
  sensor simulates failure between timesteps \text{TMIN} and \text{TMAX}
- `'animate'`  
  animate sensor readings

See also

options for Sensor constructor

See also

RangeBearingSensor.reading, Sensor.Sensor, Vehicle, LandmarkMap, EKF

RangeBearingSensor.g

Compute landmark location

\[ p = S.g(x, z) \] is the world coordinate \((2 \times 1)\) of a feature given the observation \( z \) \((1 \times 2)\) from a vehicle state with \( x \) \((3 \times 1)\).
See also

RangeBearingSensor.Gx, RangeBearingSensor.Gz

### RangeBearingSensor.Gx

**Jacobian dg/dx**

\[ J = S \cdot G_x(x, z) \] is the Jacobian \( \frac{dg}{dx} \) (2 × 3) at the vehicle state \( x \) (3 × 1) for sensor observation \( z \) (2 × 1).

See also

RangeBearingSensor.g

### RangeBearingSensor.Gz

**Jacobian dg/dz**

\[ J = S \cdot G_z(x, z) \] is the Jacobian \( \frac{dg}{dz} \) (2 × 2) at the vehicle state \( x \) (3 × 1) for sensor observation \( z \) (2 × 1).

See also

RangeBearingSensor.g

### RangeBearingSensor.h

**Landmark range and bearing**

\[ z = S \cdot h(x, k) \] is a sensor observation (1 × 2), range and bearing, from vehicle at pose \( x \) (1 × 3) to the \( k \)th landmark.

\[ z = S \cdot h(x, p) \] as above but compute range and bearing to a landmark at coordinate \( p \).

\[ z = s \cdot h(x) \] as above but computes range and bearing to all map features. \( z \) has one row per landmark.
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Notes

- Noise with covariance \( W \) (propertyW) is added to each row of \( z \).
- Supports vectorized operation where \( XV \) \((N \times 3)\) and \( z \) \((N \times 2)\).
- The landmark is assumed visible, field of view and range limits are not applied.

See also


RangeBearingSensor.Hp

Jacobian dh/dp

\[ J = S.Hp(x, k) \] is the Jacobian dh/dp \((2 \times 2)\) at the vehicle state \( x \) \((3 \times 1)\) for map landmark \( k \).

\[ J = S.Hp(x, p) \] as above but for a landmark at coordinate \( p \) \((1 \times 2)\).

See also

.RangeBearingSensor.h

RangeBearingSensor.Hw

Jacobian dh/dw

\[ J = S.Hw(x, k) \] is the Jacobian dh/dw \((2 \times 2)\) at the vehicle state \( x \) \((3 \times 1)\) for map landmark \( k \).

See also

.RangeBearingSensor.h
RangeBearingSensor.Hx

**Jacobian dh/dx**

\[ J = S \cdot H_x(x, k) \]

returns the Jacobian dh/dx \((2 \times 3)\) at the vehicle state \(x\) \((3 \times 1)\) for map landmark \(k\).

\[ J = S \cdot H_x(x, p) \]

as above but for a landmark at coordinate \(p\).

**See also**

RangeBearingSensor.h

RangeBearingSensor.reading

**Choose landmark and return observation**

\([z,k] = S\cdot reading()\]

is an observation of a random visible landmark where \(z=[R, \Theta]\) is the range and bearing with additive Gaussian noise of covariance \(W\) (property \(W\)). \(k\) is the index of the map feature that was observed.

The landmark is chosen randomly from the set of all visible landmarks, those within the angular field of view and range limits. If no valid measurement, ie. no features within range, interval subsampling enabled or simulated failure the return is \(z=[]\) and \(k=0\).

**Notes**

- Noise with covariance \(W\) (property \(W\)) is added to each row of \(z\).
- If ‘animate’ option set then show a line from the vehicle to the landmark
- If ‘animate’ option set and the angular and distance limits are set then display that region as a shaded polygon.
- Implements sensor failure and subsampling if specified to constructor.

**See also**

RangeBearingSensor.h
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Revolute

Robot manipulator Revolute link class

A subclass of the Link class for a revolute joint defined using standard Denavit-Hartenberg parameters: holds all information related to a revolute robot link such as kinematics parameters, rigid-body inertial parameters, motor and transmission parameters.

Constructors

Revolute construct a revolute joint+link using standard DH

Information/display methods

display print the link parameters in human readable form
dyn display link dynamic parameters
type joint type: ‘R’ or ‘P’

Conversion methods

char convert to string

Operation methods

A link transform matrix
friction friction force
nofriction Link object with friction parameters set to zero%

Testing methods

islimit test if joint exceeds soft limit
isrevolute test if joint is revolute
isprismatic test if joint is prismatic
issym test if joint+link has symbolic parameters

Overloaded operators

+ concatenate links, result is a SerialLink object
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Properties (read/write)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( \theta )</td>
<td>kinematic: joint angle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( d )</td>
<td>kinematic: link offset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( a )</td>
<td>kinematic: link length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \alpha )</td>
<td>kinematic: link twist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{jointtype} )</td>
<td>kinematic: ‘R’ if revolute, ‘P’ if prismatic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{mdh} )</td>
<td>kinematic: 0 if standard D&amp;H, else 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{offset} )</td>
<td>kinematic: joint variable offset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{qlim} )</td>
<td>kinematic: joint variable limits [min max]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( m )</td>
<td>dynamic: link mass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( r )</td>
<td>dynamic: link COG wrt link coordinate frame ( 3 \times 1 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( I )</td>
<td>dynamic: link inertia matrix, symmetric ( 3 \times 3 ), about link COG.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( B )</td>
<td>dynamic: link viscous friction (motor referred)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( T_c )</td>
<td>dynamic: link Coulomb friction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( G )</td>
<td>actuator: gear ratio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( J_m )</td>
<td>actuator: motor inertia (motor referred)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

- Methods inherited from the Link superclass.
- This is reference class object
- Link class objects can be used in vectors and arrays

References


See also

Link, Prismatic, RevoluteMDH, SerialLink

Revolute.Revolute

Create revolute robot link object

\[ L = \text{Revolute}(\text{options}) \] is a revolute link object with the kinematic and dynamic parameters specified by the key/value pairs using the standard Denavit-Hartenberg conventions.

Options
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

'd', D joint extension
'a', A joint offset (default 0)
'alpha', A joint twist (default 0)
'standard' defined using standard D&H parameters (default).
'modified' defined using modified D&H parameters.
'offset', O joint variable offset (default 0)
'qlim', L joint limit (default [])
'I', I link inertia matrix (3 × 1, 6 × 1 or 3 × 3)
'r', R link centre of gravity (3 × 1)
'm', M link mass (1 × 1)
'G', G motor gear ratio (default 1)
'B', B joint friction, motor referenced (default 0)
'Jm', J motor inertia, motor referenced (default 0)
'Tc', T Coulomb friction, motor referenced (1 × 1 or 2 × 1), (default [0 0])
'sym' consider all parameter values as symbolic not numeric

Notes

• The joint angle, theta, is provided as an argument to the A() method.
• The link inertia matrix (3 × 3) is symmetric and can be specified by giving a 3 × 3 matrix, the diagonal elements [Ixx Iyy Izz], or the moments and products of inertia [Ixx Iyy Izz Ixy Iyz Ixz].
• All friction quantities are referenced to the motor not the load.
• Gear ratio is used only to convert motor referenced quantities such as friction and interia to the link frame.

See also

Link, Prismatic, RevoluteMDH

RevoluteMDH

Robot manipulator Revolute link class for MDH convention

A subclass of the Link class for a revolute joint defined using modified Denavit-Hartenberg parameters: holds all information related to a revolute robot link such as kinematics parameters, rigid-body inertial parameters, motor and transmission parameters.

Constructors

RevoluteMDH construct a revolute joint+link using modified DH

Robotics Toolbox 10.3.1 for MATLAB® 271 Copyright ©Peter Corke 2018
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Information/display methods

display print the link parameters in human readable form
dyn display link dynamic parameters
type joint type: ‘R’ or ‘P’

Conversion methods

char convert to string

Operation methods

A link transform matrix
friction friction force
nofriction Link object with friction parameters set to zero%

Testing methods

islimit test if joint exceeds soft limit
isrevolute test if joint is revolute
isprismatic test if joint is prismatic
issym test if joint+link has symbolic parameters

Overloaded operators

+ concatenate links, result is a SerialLink object

Properties (read/write)

theta kinematic: joint angle
d kinematic: link offset
a kinematic: link length
alpha kinematic: link twist
jointtype kinematic: ‘R’ if revolute, ‘P’ if prismatic
mdh kinematic: 0 if standard D&H, else 1
offset kinematic: joint variable offset
qlim kinematic: joint variable limits [min max]
m dynamic: link mass
r dynamic: link COG wrt link coordinate frame 3 × 1
I dynamic: link inertia matrix, symmetric 3 × 3, about link COG.
B dynamic: link viscous friction (motor referred)
Tc dynamic: link Coulomb friction
G actuator: gear ratio
Jm actuator: motor inertia (motor referred)

Notes

- Methods inherited from the Link superclass.
- This is reference class object
- Link class objects can be used in vectors and arrays
- Modified Denavit-Hartenberg parameters are used

References


See also

Link, PrismaticMDH, Revolute, SerialLink

RevoluteMDH.RevoluteMDH

Create revolute robot link object using MDH notation

\[ L = \text{RevoluteMDH}(\text{options}) \]

is a revolute link object with the kinematic and dynamic parameters specified by the key/value pairs using the modified Denavit-Hartenberg conventions.

Options

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>'d', D</td>
<td>joint extension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'a', A</td>
<td>joint offset (default 0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'alpha', A</td>
<td>joint twist (default 0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'standard'</td>
<td>defined using standard D&amp;H parameters (default).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'modified'</td>
<td>defined using modified D&amp;H parameters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'offset', O</td>
<td>joint variable offset (default 0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'qlim', L</td>
<td>joint limit (default [])</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'I', I</td>
<td>link inertia matrix ((3 \times 1, 6 \times 1 \text{ or } 3 \times 3))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'r', R</td>
<td>link centre of gravity ((3 \times 1))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'m', M</td>
<td>link mass ((1 \times 1))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'G', G</td>
<td>motor gear ratio (default 1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'B', B</td>
<td>joint friction, motor referenced (default 0)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
‘Jm’, J  motor inertia, motor referenced (default 0)
‘Tc’, T  Coulomb friction, motor referenced (1 × 1 or 2 × 1), (default [0 0])
‘sym’  consider all parameter values as symbolic not numeric

Notes

• The joint angle, theta, is provided as an argument to the A() method.
• The link inertia matrix (3 × 3) is symmetric and can be specified by giving a 3 × 3 matrix, the diagonal elements [Ixx Iyy Izz], or the moments and products of inertia [Ixx Iyy Izz Ixy Iyz Ixz].
• All friction quantities are referenced to the motor not the load.
• Gear ratio is used only to convert motor referenced quantities such as friction and inertia to the link frame.

See also

Link, Prismatic, RevoluteMDH

rot2

SO(2) Rotation matrix

\[ R = \text{rot2}(\theta) \] is an SO(2) rotation matrix (2 × 2) representing a rotation of theta radians.

\[ R = \text{rot2}(\theta, \text{`deg'}) \] as above but theta is in degrees.

See also

SE2, trot2, isrot2, trplot2, rotx, roty, rotz, SO2

rotx

Rotation about X axis

\[ R = \text{rotx}(\theta) \] is an SO(3) rotation matrix (3 × 3) representing a rotation of theta radians about the x-axis.
\( R = \text{rotx}(\text{theta}, \text{`deg'}) \) as above but \text{theta} is in degrees.

**See also**

\text{roty, rotz, angvec2r, rot2, SO3.Rx}

---

**roty**

Rotation about Y axis

\( R = \text{roty}(\text{theta}) \) is an SO(3) rotation matrix \((3 \times 3)\) representing a rotation of \text{theta} radians about the y-axis.

\( R = \text{roty}(\text{theta}, \text{`deg'}) \) as above but \text{theta} is in degrees.

**See also**

\text{rotx, rotz, angvec2r, rot2, SO3.Ry}

---

**rotz**

Rotation about Z axis

\( R = \text{rotz}(\text{theta}) \) is an SO(3) rotation matrix \((3 \times 3)\) representing a rotation of \text{theta} radians about the z-axis.

\( R = \text{rotz}(\text{theta}, \text{`deg'}) \) as above but \text{theta} is in degrees.

**See also**

\text{rotx, roty, angvec2r, rot2, SO3.Rx}
rpy2jac

Jacobian from RPY angle rates to angular velocity

\[ J = \text{rpy2jac}(\text{rpy, options}) \] is a Jacobian matrix (3 × 3) that maps ZYX roll-pitch-yaw angle rates to angular velocity at the operating point \( \text{rpy} = [R, P, Y] \).

\[ J = \text{rpy2jac}(R, p, y, \text{options}) \] as above but the roll-pitch-yaw angles are passed as separate arguments.

Options

‘xyz’ Use XYZ roll-pitch-yaw angles
‘yxz’ Use YXZ roll-pitch-yaw angles

Notes

- Used in the creation of an analytical Jacobian.

See also

eul2jac, SerialLink.JACOBE

rpy2r

Roll-pitch-yaw angles to rotation matrix

\[ R = \text{rpy2r}(\text{roll, pitch, yaw, options}) \] is an SO(3) orthonormal rotation matrix (3 × 3) equivalent to the specified roll, pitch, yaw angles angles. These correspond to rotations about the Z, Y, X axes respectively. If \( \text{roll, pitch, yaw} \) are column vectors (\( N \times 1 \)) then they are assumed to represent a trajectory and \( R \) is a three-dimensional matrix (\( 3 \times 3 \times N \)), where the last index corresponds to rows of \( \text{roll, pitch, yaw} \).

\[ R = \text{rpy2r}(\text{rpy, options}) \] as above but the roll, pitch, yaw angles are taken from the vector (\( 1 \times 3 \)) \( \text{rpy} = [\text{roll, pitch, yaw}] \). If \( \text{rpy} \) is a matrix (\( N \times 3 \)) then \( R \) is a three-dimensional matrix (\( 3 \times 3 \times N \)), where the last index corresponds to rows of \( \text{rpy} \) which are assumed to be \([\text{roll, pitch, yaw}]\).

Options
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

‘deg’ Compute angles in degrees (radians default)
‘xyz’ Rotations about X, Y, Z axes (for a robot gripper)
‘zyx’ Rotations about Z, Y, X axes (for a mobile robot, default)
‘yxz’ Rotations about Y, X, Z axes (for a camera)
‘arm’ Rotations about X, Y, Z axes (for a robot arm)

‘vehicle’ Rotations about Z, Y, X axes (for a mobile robot)
‘camera’ Rotations about Y, X, Z axes (for a camera)

Note

• Toolbox rel 8-9 has XYZ angle sequence as default.
• ZYX order is appropriate for vehicles with direction of travel in the X direction.
  XYZ order is appropriate if direction of travel is in the Z direction.
• ‘arm’, ‘vehicle’, ‘camera’ are synonyms for ‘xyz’, ‘zyx’ and ‘yxz’ respectively.

See also

tr2rpy, eul2tr

rpy2tr

Roll-pitch-yaw angles to homogeneous transform

\[ T = \text{rpy2tr}(\text{roll}, \text{pitch}, \text{yaw}, \text{options}) \]

is an SE(3) homogeneous transformation matrix (4 × 4) with zero translation and rotation equivalent to the specified roll, pitch, yaw angles. These correspond to rotations about the Z, Y, X axes respectively. If roll, pitch, yaw are column vectors \((N \times 1)\) then they are assumed to represent a trajectory and \(R\) is a three-dimensional matrix \((4 \times 4 \times N)\), where the last index corresponds to rows of roll, pitch, yaw.

\[ T = \text{rpy2tr}(\text{rpy}, \text{options}) \]

as above but the roll, pitch, yaw angles are taken from the vector \((1 \times 3)\) \(\text{rpy} = [\text{roll}, \text{pitch}, \text{yaw}]\). If \(\text{rpy}\) is a matrix \((N \times 3)\) then \(R\) is a three-dimensional matrix \((4 \times 4 \times N)\), where the last index corresponds to rows of \(\text{rpy}\) which are assumed to be \(\text{roll}, \text{pitch}, \text{yaw}\).
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Options

‘deg’ Compute angles in degrees (radians default)
‘xyz’ Rotations about X, Y, Z axes (for a robot gripper)
‘zyx’ Rotations about Z, Y, X axes (for a mobile robot, default)
‘yxz’ Rotations about Y, X, Z axes (for a camera)
‘arm’ Rotations about X, Y, Z axes (for a robot arm)

‘vehicle’ Rotations about Z, Y, X axes (for a mobile robot)

‘camera’ Rotations about Y, X, Z axes (for a camera)

Note

- Toolbox rel 8-9 has the reverse angle sequence as default.
- ZYX order is appropriate for vehicles with direction of travel in the X direction.
  XYZ order is appropriate if direction of travel is in the Z direction.
- ‘arm’, ‘vehicle’, ‘camera’ are synonyms for ‘xyz’, ‘zyx’ and ‘yxz’ respectively.

See also

tr2rpy, rpy2r, eul2tr

RRT

Class for rapidly-exploring random tree navigation

A concrete subclass of the abstract Navigation class that implements the rapidly exploring random tree (RRT) algorithm. This is a kinodynamic planner that takes into account the motion constraints of the vehicle.

Methods

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RRT</td>
<td>Constructor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plan</td>
<td>Compute the tree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>query</td>
<td>Compute a path</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plot</td>
<td>Display the tree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>display</td>
<td>Display the parameters in human readable form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>char</td>
<td>Convert to string</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Robotics Toolbox 10.3.1 for MATLAB® 278

Copyright ©Peter Corke 2018
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Properties (read only)

graph A PGraph object describing the tree

Example

goal = [0,0,0];
start = [0,2,0];
veh = Bicycle('steermax', 1.2);
rrt = RRT(veh, 'goal', goal, 'range', 5);
rrt.plan() % create navigation tree
rrt.query(start, goal) % animate path from this start location

References


• Robotics, Vision & Control, Section 5.2.5, P. Corke, Springer 2011.

See also

Navigation, PRM, DXform, Dstar, PGraph

RRT.RRT

Create an RRT navigation object

R = RRT.RRT(veh, options) is a rapidly exploring tree navigation object for a vehicle kinematic model given by a Vehicle subclass object veh.

R = RRT.RRT(veh, map, options) as above but for a region with obstacles defined by the occupancy grid map.

Options

‘npoints’, N Number of nodes in the tree (default 500)
‘simtime’, T Interval over which to simulate kinematic model toward random point (default 0.5s)
‘goal’, P Goal position (1 × 2) or pose (1 × 3) in workspace
‘speed’, S Speed of vehicle [m/s] (default 1)
‘root’, R Configuration of tree root (3 × 1) (default [0,0,0])
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

‘revcost’, C  Cost penalty for going backwards (default 1)
‘range’, R  Specify rectangular bounds of robot’s workspace:

- R scalar; X: -R to +R, Y: -R to +R
- R (1 × 2); X: -R(1) to +R(1), Y: -R(2) to +R(2)
- R (1 × 4); X: R(1) to R(2), Y: R(3) to R(4)

Other options are provided by the Navigation superclass.

Notes

- ‘range’ option is ignored if an occupancy grid is provided.

Reference


See also

Vehicle, Bicycle, Unicycle

RRT.char

Convert to string

R.char() is a string representing the state of the RRT object in human-readable form.

RRT.plan

Create a rapidly exploring tree

R.plan(options) creates the tree roadmap by driving the vehicle model toward random goal points. The resulting graph is kept within the object.

Options

‘goal’, P  Goal pose (1 × 3)
‘ntrials’, N  Number of path trials (default 50)
‘noprogress’  Don’t show the progress bar
‘samples’  Show progress in a plot of the workspace
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

- ‘.’ for each random point x_rand
- ‘o’ for the nearest point which is added to the tree
- red line for the best path

Notes

- At each iteration we need to find a vehicle path/control that moves it from a random point towards a point on the graph. We sample ntrials of random steer angles and velocities and choose the one that gets us closest (computationally slow, since each path has to be integrated over time).

RRT.plot

Visualize navigation environment

R.plot displays the navigation tree in 3D, where the vertical axis is vehicle heading angle. If an occupancy grid was provided this is also displayed.

RRT.query

Find a path between two points

x = R.path(start, goal) finds a path (N x 3) from pose start (1 x 3) to pose goal (1 x 3). The pose is expressed as [x, Y, THETA].

R.path(start, goal) as above but plots the path in 3D, where the vertical axis is vehicle heading angle. The nodes are shown as circles and the line segments are blue for forward motion and red for backward motion.

Notes

- The path starts at the vertex closest to the start state, and ends at the vertex closest to the goal state. If the tree is sparse this might be a poor approximation to the desired start and end.

See also

RRT.plot
rt2tr

Convert rotation and translation to homogeneous transform

\[ \mathbf{TR} = \text{rt2tr}(\mathbf{R}, \mathbf{t}) \]

is a homogeneous transformation matrix \((N+1 \times N+1)\) formed from

an orthonormal rotation matrix \(\mathbf{R} (N \times N)\) and a translation vector \(\mathbf{t} (N \times 1)\). Works for \(\mathbf{R}\) in SO(2) or SO(3):

- If \(\mathbf{R}\) is \(2 \times 2\) and \(\mathbf{t}\) is \(2 \times 1\), then \(\mathbf{TR}\) is \(3 \times 3\)
- If \(\mathbf{R}\) is \(3 \times 3\) and \(\mathbf{t}\) is \(3 \times 1\), then \(\mathbf{TR}\) is \(4 \times 4\)

For a sequence \(\mathbf{R} (N \times N \times K)\) and \(\mathbf{t} (N \times K)\) results in a transform sequence \((N+1 \times N+1 \times K)\).

Notes

- The validity of \(\mathbf{R}\) is not checked

See also

t2r, r2t, tr2rt

rtbdemo

Robot toolbox demonstrations

rtbdemo displays a menu of toolbox demonstration scripts that illustrate:

- fundamental datatypes
  - rotation and homogeneous transformation matrices
  - quaternions
  - trajectories
- serial link manipulator arms
  - forward and inverse kinematics
  - robot animation
  - forward and inverse dynamics
- mobile robots
  - kinematic models and control
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

- path planning (D*, PRM, Lattice, RRT)
- localization (EKF, particle filter)
- SLAM (EKF, pose graph)
- quadrotor control

rtbdemo(T) as above but waits for T seconds after every statement, no need to push the enter key periodically.

Notes

- By default the scripts require the user to periodically hit <Enter> in order to move through the explanation.
- Some demos require Simulink

RTBPlot

Plot utilities for Robotics Toolbox

RTBPlot.box

Draw a box

BPX(ax, R, extent, color, offset, options) draws a cylinder parallel to axis ax ('x', 'y' or 'z') of side length R between extent(1) and extent(2).

RTBPlot.cyl

Draw a cylinder

CYL(ax, R, extent, color, offset, options) draws a cylinder parallel to axis ax ('x', 'y' or 'z') of radius R between extent(1) and extent(2).

options are passed through to surf.

See also

surf, RTBPlot.box
RTBPlot.install_teach_panel

robot like object, has n fkine animate methods

RTBPose

Superclass for SO2, SO3, SE2, SE3

This abstract class provides common methods for the 2D and 3D orientation and pose classes: SO2, SE2, SO3 and SE3.

Methods

dim          dimension of the underlying matrix
isSE         true for SE2 and SE3
issym        true if value is symbolic
plot         graphically display coordinate frame for pose
animate      graphically display coordinate frame for pose
print        print the pose in single line format
display      print the pose in human readable matrix form
char         convert to human readable matrix as a string
double       convert to real rotation or homogeneous transformation matrix
simplify     apply symbolic simplification to all elements
vpa          apply vpa to all elements

Operators

+            elementwise addition, result is a matrix
-            elementwise subtraction, result is a matrix
            multiplication within group, also SO3 x vector
/            multiplication within group by inverse
==           test equality
≠            test inequality

A number of compatibility methods give the same behaviour as the classic RTB functions:

tr2rt         convert to rotation matrix and translation vector
t2r           convert to rotation matrix
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

trprint   print single line representation
trprint2  print single line representation
trplot    plot coordinate frame
trplot2   plot coordinate frame
tranimate aimate coordinate frame

Notes

- Multiplication and division with normalization operations are performed in the subclasses.
- SO3 is polymorphic with UnitQuaternion making it easy to change rotational representations.
- If the File Exchange function cprintf is available it is used to print the matrix in color: red for rotation and blue for translation.

See also

SO2, SO3, SE2, SE3

RTBPose.animate

Animate a coordinate frame

RTBPose.animate(p1, p2, options) animates a 3D coordinate frame moving from pose p1 to pose p2, which can be SO3 or SE3.

RTBPose.animate(p, options) animates a coordinate frame moving from the identity pose to the pose p represented by any of the types listed above.

RTBPose.animate(pv, options) animates a trajectory, where pv is a vector of SO2, SO3, SE2, SE3 objects. Compatible with matrix function tranimate(T), tranimate(T1, T2).

Options (inherited from tranimate)

‘fps’, fps       Number of frames per second to display (default 10)
‘nsteps’, n      The number of steps along the path (default 50)
‘axis’, A        Axis bounds [xmin, xmax, ymin, ymax, zmin, zmax]
‘movie’, M       Save frames as files in the folder M
‘cleanup’        Remove the frame at end of animation
‘noxyz’          Don’t label the axes
‘rgb’            Color the axes in the order x=red, y=green, z=blue
‘retain’         Retain frames, don’t animate
Additional options are passed through to TRPLOT.

See also

*tranimate*

---

**RTBPose.char**

Convert to string

\[ s = \text{P.char}() \]

is a string showing homogeneous transformation elements as a matrix.

See also

*RTBPose.display*

---

**RTBPose.dim**

Dimension

\[ n = \text{P.dim}() \]

is the dimension of the group object, 2 for SO2, 3 for SE2 and SO3, and 4 for SE3.

---

**RTBPose.display**

Display a pose

\[ \text{P.display}() \]

displays the pose.

**Notes**

- This method is invoked implicitly at the command line when the result of an expression is an RTBPose subclass object and the command has no trailing semicolon.
- If the function cprintf is found is used is used to colorise the matrix, rotational elements in red, translational in blue.
See also

SO2, SO3, SE2, SE3

### RTBPose.double

**Convert to matrix**

\[
T = \text{P.double}() \quad \text{is a matrix representation of the pose P, either a rotation matrix or a homogeneous transformation matrix.}
\]

If P is a vector \((1 \times N)\) then \(T\) will be a 3-dimensional array \((M \times M \times N)\).

**Notes**

- If the pose is symbolic the result will be a symbolic matrix.

### RTBPose.isSE

**Test if pose**

\text{P.isSE}() \quad \text{is true if the object is of type SE2 or SE3.}

### RTBPose.issym

**Test if pose is symbolic**

\text{P.issym}() \quad \text{is true if the pose has symbolic rather than real values.}

### RTBPose.minus

**Subtract poses**

\(P1 - P2\) is the elementwise difference of the matrix elements of the two poses. The result is a matrix not the input class type since the result of subtraction is not in the group.
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

RTBPose.mpower

Exponential of pose

$P^N$ is the exponential of $P$ where $N$ is an integer. It is equivalent of compounding the rigid-body motion of $P$ with itself $N-1$ times.

Notes

- $N$ can be 0 in which case the result is the identity matrix.
- $N$ can be negative which is equivalent to the inverse of $P^{abs(N)}$.

See also

RTBPose.power, RTBPose.mtimes, RTBPose.times

RTBPose.mrdivide

Compound SO2 object with inverse

$R = P/Q$ is a pose object representing the composition of the pose object $P$ by the inverse of the pose object $Q$, which is matrix multiplication of their equivalent matrices with the second one inverted.

If either, or both, of $P$ or $Q$ are vectors, then the result is a vector.

If $P$ is a vector $(1 \times N)$ then $R$ is a vector $(1 \times N)$ such that $R(i) = P(i)/Q$.

If $Q$ is a vector $(1 \times N)$ then $R$ is a vector $(1 \times N)$ such that $R(i) = P/Q(i)$.

If both $P$ and $Q$ are vectors $(1 \times N)$ then $R$ is a vector $(1 \times N)$ such that $R(i) = P(i)/R(i)$.

See also

RTBPose.mtimes

RTBPose.mtimes

Compound pose objects

$R = P*Q$ is a pose object representing the composition of the two poses described by the objects $P$ and $Q$, which is multiplication of their equivalent matrices.
If either, or both, of P or Q are vectors, then the result is a vector.

If P is a vector (1 × N) then R is a vector (1 × N) such that R(i) = P(i)*Q.

If Q is a vector (1 × N) then R is a vector (1 × N) such that R(i) = P*Q(i).

If both P and Q are vectors (1 × N) then R is a vector (1 × N) such that R(i) = P(i)*R(i).

W = P*V is a column vector (2 × 1) which is the transformation of the column vector
V (2 × 1) by the rotation described by the SO2 object P. P can be a vector and/or V can
be a matrix, a columnwise set of vectors.

If P is a vector (1 × N) then W is a matrix (2 × N) such that W(:,i) = P(i)*V.

If V is a matrix (2 × N) V is a matrix (2 × N) then W is a matrix (2 × N) such that W(:,i) = P*V(:,i).

See also

RTBPose.mrdivide

RTBPose.plot

Draw a coordinate frame (compatibility)

trplot(p, options) draws a 3D coordinate frame represented by p which is SO2, SO3,
SE2 or SE3.

Compatible with matrix function trplot(T).

Options are passed through to trplot or trplot2 depending on the object type.

See also

trplot, trplot2

RTBPose.plus

Add poses

P1+P2 is the elementwise summation of the matrix elements of the two poses. The
result is a matrix not the input class type since the result of addition is not in the group.
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

RTBPose.power

Exponential of pose

$P^N$ is the exponential of $P$ where $N$ is an integer, followed by normalization. It is equivalent of compounding the rigid-body motion of $P$ with itself $N-1$ times.

Notes

- $N$ can be 0 in which case the result is the identity matrix.
- $N$ can be negative which is equivalent to the inverse of $P^{abs}(N)$.

See also

RTBPose.mpower, RTBPose.mtimes, RTBPose.times

RTBPose.print

Compact display of pose

$P\text{.print}(\text{options})$ displays the homogeneous transform in a compact single-line format. If $P$ is a vector then each element is printed on a separate line.

Options are passed through to trprint or trprint2 depending on the object type.

See also

trprint, trprint2

RTBPose.prod

Compound array of poses

$T\text{.prod}$ is a pose representing the product (composition) of the successive elements of $T$ ($1 \times N$). $P$ is a scalar of the same type (SO2, SE2, SO3, SE3) as $T$.

Note

- Composition is performed with the .^ operator.
See also

RTBPose.times, RTBPose.mtimes

RTBPose.simplify

Symbolic simplification

\( p2 = P.simplify() \) applies symbolic simplification to each element of internal matrix representation of the pose.

See also

simplify

RTBPose.subs

Symbolic substitution

\( T = \text{subs}(T, \text{old}, \text{new}) \) replaces OLD with NEW in the symbolic transformation \( T \). See also: subs

RTBPose.t2r

Get rotation matrix (compatibility)

\( R = t2r(p) \) returns the rotation matrix corresponding to the pose \( p \) which is either SE2 or SE3.

Compatible with matrix function \( R = t2r(T) \)

RTBPose.tr2rt

Split rotational and translational components (compatibility)

\([R,t] = \text{tr2rt}(p)\) returns the rotation matrix and translation vector corresponding to the pose \( p \) which is either SE2 or SE3.

Compatible with matrix function \([R,t] = \text{tr2rt}(T)\)
RTBPose.tranimate

Animate a coordinate frame (compatibility)

\texttt{TRANIMATE(p1, p2, options)} animates a 3D coordinate frame moving from pose \( p1 \) to pose \( p2 \), which can be SO2, SO3, SE2 or SE3.

\texttt{TRANIMATE(p, options)} animates a coordinate frame moving from the identity pose to the pose \( p \) represented by any of the types listed above.

\texttt{TRANIMATE(pv, options)} animates a trajectory, where \( pv \) is a vector of SO2, SO3, SE2, SE3 objects.

Compatible with matrix function \texttt{tranimate(T)}, \texttt{tranimate(T1, T2)}.

**Options (inherited from tranimate)**

- ‘fps’, fps Number of frames per second to display (default 10)
- ‘nsteps’, n The number of steps along the path (default 50)
- ‘axis’, A Axis bounds [xmin, xmax, ymin, ymax, zmin, zmax]
- ‘movie’, M Save frames as files in the folder M
- ‘cleanup’ Remove the frame at end of animation
- ‘noxyz’ Don’t label the axes
- ‘rgb’ Color the axes in the order x=red, y=green, z=blue
- ‘retain’ Retain frames, don’t animate

Additional options are passed through to TRPLOT.

**See also**

RTBPose.animate, tranimate

RTBPose.trplot

Draw a coordinate frame (compatibility)

\texttt{trplot(p, options)} draws a 3D coordinate frame represented by \( p \) which is SO2, SO3, SE2, SE3.

Compatible with matrix function \texttt{trplot(T)}.

**Options (inherited from trplot)**

- ‘handle’, h Update the specified handle
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

`color`, C The color to draw the axes, MATLAB colorspec C
`noaxes` Don’t display axes on the plot
`axis`, A Set dimensions of the MATLAB axes to A=[xmin xmax ymin ymax zmin zmax]
`frame`, F The coordinate frame is named {F} and the subscript on the axis labels is F.
`frametlabel`, F The coordinate frame is named {F}, axes have no subscripts.
`text_opts`, opt A cell array of MATLAB text properties
`axhandle`, A Draw in the MATLAB axes specified by the axis handle A
`view`, V Set plot view parameters V=[az el] angles, or ‘auto’ for view toward origin of coordinate frame
`length`, s Length of the coordinate frame arms (default 1)
`arrow` Use arrows rather than line segments for the axes
`width`, w Width of arrow tips (default 1)
`thick`, t Thickness of lines (default 0.5)
`perspective` Display the axes with perspective projection
`3d` Plot in 3D using anaglyph graphics
`anaglyph`, A Specify anaglyph colors for ‘3d’ as 2 characters for left and right (default colors ‘rc’): chosen from r)ed, g)reen, b)lue, c)yan, m)agenta.
`dispar`, D Disparity for 3d display (default 0.1)
`text` Enable display of X,Y,Z labels on the frame
`labels`, L Label the X,Y,Z axes with the 1st, 2nd, 3rd character of the string L
`rgb` Display X,Y,Z axes in colors red, green, blue respectively
`rviz` Display chunky rviz style axes

See also

RTBPose.plot, trplot

RTBPose.trplot2

Draw a coordinate frame (compatibility)

trplot2(p, options) draws a 2D coordinate frame represented by p
Compatible with matrix function trplot2(T).

Options (inherited from trplot)

`handle`, h Update the specified handle
`axis`, A Set dimensions of the MATLAB axes to A=[xmin xmax ymin ymax]
`color`, c The color to draw the axes, MATLAB colorspec
`noaxes` Don’t display axes on the plot
`frame`, F The frame is named {F} and the subscript on the axis labels is F.
`frametlabel`, F The coordinate frame is named {F}, axes have no subscripts.
`text_opts`, opt A cell array of Matlab text properties
`axhandle`, A Draw in the MATLAB axes specified by A
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

'view', V  Set plot view parameters V=[az el] angles, or ‘auto’ for view toward origin of coordinate frame
'length', s  Length of the coordinate frame arms (default 1)
'arrow'  Use arrows rather than line segments for the axes
'width', w  Width of arrow tips

See also

RTBPose.plot, trplot2

RTBPose.trprint

Compact display of homogeneous transformation (compatibility)

trprint(p, options) displays the homogeneous transform in a compact single-line format. If p is a vector then each element is printed on a separate line.

Compatible with matrix function trprint(T).

Options (inherited from trprint)

'rpy'  display with rotation in roll/pitch/yaw angles (default)
'euler'  display with rotation in ZYX Euler angles
'angvec'  display with rotation in angle/vector format
'radian'  display angle in radians (default is degrees)
'fmt', f  use format string f for all numbers, (default %g)
'label', l  display the text before the transform

See also

RTBPose.print, trprint

RTBPose.trprint2

Compact display of homogeneous transformation (compatibility)

trprint2(p, options) displays the homogeneous transform in a compact single-line format. If p is a vector then each element is printed on a separate line.

Compatible with matrix function trprint2(T).
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Options (inherited from trprint2)

- ‘radian’ display angle in radians (default is degrees)
- ‘fmt’, f use format string f for all numbers, (default %g)
- ‘label’, l display the text before the transform

See also

RTBPose.print, trprint2

RTBPose.vpa

Variable precision arithmetic

\[ p2 = P.vpa() \] numerically evaluates each element of internal matrix representation of the pose.

\[ p2 = P.vpa(d) \] as above but with d decimal digit accuracy.

See also

simplify

runscript

Run an M-file in interactive fashion

runscript(script, options) runs the M-file script and pauses after every executable line in the file until a key is pressed. Comment lines are shown without any delay between lines.

Options

- ‘delay’, D Don’t wait for keypress, just delay of D seconds (default 0)
- ‘cdelay’, D Pause of D seconds after each comment line (default 0)
- ‘begin’ Start executing the file after the comment line ‘% begin (default false)
- ‘dock’ Cause the figures to be docked when created
- ‘path’, P Look for the file script in the folder P (default .)
- ‘dock’ Dock figures within GUI
- ‘nocolor’ Don’t use cprintf to print lines in color (comments black, code blue)
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Notes

- If no file extension is given in script, .m is assumed.
- A copyright text block will be skipped and not displayed.
- If cprintf exists and ‘nocolor’ is not given then lines are displayed in color.
- Leading comment characters are not displayed.
- If the executable statement has comments immediately afterward (no blank lines) then the pause occurs after those comments are displayed.
- A simple ‘-’ prompt indicates when the script is paused, hit enter.
- If the function cprintf() is in your path, the display is more colorful. You can get this file from MATLAB File Exchange.
- If the file has a lot of boilerplate, you can skip over and not display it by giving the ‘begin’ option which searches for the first line starting with %%%begin and commences execution at the line after that.

See also

eval

SE2

Representation of 2D rigid-body motion

This subclass of SO2 < RTBPose is an object that represents an SE(2) rigid-body motion.

Constructor methods

SE2  general constructor
SE2.exp  exponentiate an se(2) matrix
SE2.rand  random transformation
new  new SE2 object

Information and test methods

dim*  returns 2
isSE*  returns true
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

issym* true if rotation matrix has symbolic elements
isa check if matrix is SE2

Display and print methods

plot* graphically display coordinate frame for pose
animate* graphically animate coordinate frame for pose
print* print the pose in single line format
display* print the pose in human readable matrix form
char* convert to human readable matrix as a string

Operation methods

det determinant of matrix component
eig eigenvalues of matrix component
log logarithm of rotation matrix
inv inverse
simplify* apply symbolic simplication to all elements
interp interpolate between poses

Conversion methods

check convert object or matrix to SE2 object
theta return rotation angle
double convert to rotation matrix
R convert to rotation matrix
SE2 convert to SE2 object with zero translation
T convert to homogeneous transformation matrix
t translation column vector

Compatibility methods

isrot2* returns false
ishomog2* returns true
tr2rt* convert to rotation matrix and translation vector
t2r* convert to rotation matrix
trprint2* print single line representation
trplot2* plot coordinate frame

tranimate2* animate coordinate frame
transl2 return translation as a row vector
Static methods

check convert object or matrix to SO2 object

SE2.SE2

Construct an SE(2) object

Constructs an SE(2) pose object that contains a $3 \times 3$ homogeneous transformation matrix.

$T = \text{SE2}()$ is a null relative motion

$T = \text{SE2}(x, y)$ is an object representing pure translation defined by $x$ and $y$

$T = \text{SE2}(xy)$ is an object representing pure translation defined by $xy$ ($2 \times 1$). If $xy$ ($N \times 2$) returns an array of SE2 objects, corresponding to the rows of $xy$.

$T = \text{SE2}(x, y, \theta)$ is an object representing translation, $x$ and $y$, and rotation, angle $\theta$.

$T = \text{SE2}(xy, \theta)$ is an object representing translation, $xy$ ($2 \times 1$), and rotation, angle $\theta$

$T = \text{SE2}(xyt)$ is an object representing translation, $xyt(1)$ and $xyt(2)$, and rotation, angle $xyt(3)$. If $xyt$ ($N \times 3$) returns an array of SE2 objects, corresponding to the rows of $xyt$.

$T = \text{SE2}(R)$ is an object representing pure rotation defined by the orthonormal rotation matrix $R$ ($2 \times 2$)

$T = \text{SE2}(R, xy)$ is an object representing rotation defined by the orthonormal rotation matrix $R$ ($2 \times 2$) and position given by $xy$ ($2 \times 1$)

$T = \text{SE2}(T)$ is an object representing translation and rotation defined by the homogeneous transformation matrix $T$ ($3 \times 3$). If $T$ ($3 \times 3 \times N$) returns an array of SE2 objects, corresponding to the third index of $T$.

$T = \text{SE2}(T)$ is an object representing translation and rotation defined by the SE2 object $T$, effectively cloning the object. If $T$ ($N \times 1$) returns an array of SE2 objects, corresponding to the index of $T$.

Options

‘deg’ Angle is specified in degrees

Notes

- Arguments can be symbolic

Robotics Toolbox 10.3.1 for MATLAB® 2018 Copyright © Peter Corke 2018
The form \(SE2(\mathbf{xy})\) is ambiguous with \(SE2(\mathbf{R})\) if \(\mathbf{xy}\) has 2 rows, the second form is assumed.

The form \(SE2(\mathbf{xyt})\) is ambiguous with \(SE2(\mathbf{T})\) if \(\mathbf{xyt}\) has 3 rows, the second form is assumed.

**SE2.check**

Convert to SE2

\[ q = \text{SE2.check}(x) \]

is an \(SE2\) object where \(x\) is \(SE2\) or \(3 \times 3\) homogeneous transformation matrix.

**SE2.exp**

Construct SE2 object from Lie algebra

\[ p = \text{SE2.exp}(\text{se2}) \]

creates an \(SE2\) object by exponentiating the \(se(2)\) argument \((3 \times 3)\).

**SE2.get.t**

Get translational component

\(P_t\) is a column vector \((2 \times 1)\) representing the translational component of the rigid-body motion described by the \(SE2\) object \(P\).

**Notes**

- If \(P\) is a vector the result is a MATLAB comma separated list, in this case use \(P\.transl()\).

**See also**

SE2.transl
SE2.interp

Interpolate between SO2 objects

P1.interp(p2, s) is an SE2 object representing interpolation between rotations represented by SE3 objects P1 and p2. s varies from 0 (P1) to 1 (p2). If s is a vector (1 x N) then the result will be a vector of SE2 objects.

Notes

• It is an error if S is outside the interval 0 to 1.

See also

SO2.angle

SE2.inv

Inverse of SE2 object

q = inv(p) is the inverse of the SE2 object p. p*q will be the identity matrix.

Notes

• This is formed explicitly, no matrix inverse required.

SE2.isa

Test if matrix is SE(2)

SE2.ISA(T) is true (1) if the argument T is of dimension 3 x 3 or 3 x 3 x N, else false (0).

SE2.ISA(T, true’) as above, but also checks the validity of the rotation sub-matrix.

Notes

• The first form is a fast, but incomplete, test for a transform in SE(3).
• There is ambiguity in the dimensions of SE2 and SO3 in matrix form.
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

See also
SO3.ISA, SE2.ISA, SO2.ISA, ishomog2

SE2.log

Lie algebra

se2 = P.log() is the Lie algebra augmented skew-symmetric matrix (3 x 3) corresponding to the SE2 object P.

See also
SE2.Twist, logm

SE2.new

Construct a new object of the same type

p2 = P.new(x) creates a new object of the same type as P, by invoking the SE2 constructor on the matrix x (3 x 3).

p2 = P.new() as above but defines a null motion.

Notes

- Serves as a dynamic constructor.
- This method is polymorphic across all RTBPose derived classes, and allows easy creation of a new object of the same class as an existing one.

See also
SE3.new, SO3.new, SO2.new

SE2.rand

Construct a random SE(2) object

SE2.rand() is an SE2 object with a uniform random translation and a uniform random orientation. Random numbers are in the interval 0 to 1.
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

See also

rand

SE2.SE3

Lift to 3D

\( q = P.\text{SE3}() \) is an \( \text{SE3} \) object formed by lifting the rigid-body motion described by the \( \text{SE2} \) object \( P \) from 2D to 3D. The rotation is about the z-axis, and the translational is within the xy-plane.

See also

\( \text{SE3} \)

SE2.set.t

Set translational component

\( P.t = T.V \) sets the translational component of the rigid-body motion described by the \( \text{SE2} \) object \( P \) to \( T.V \) (2 \( \times \) 1).

Notes

- TV can be a row or column vector.
- If TV contains a symbolic value then the entire matrix is converted to symbolic.

SE2.SO2

Extract SO(2) rotation

\( q = \text{SO2}(p) \) is an \( \text{SO2} \) object that represents the rotational component of the \( \text{SE2} \) rigid-body motion.

See also

\( \text{SE2.R} \)

Robotics Toolbox 10.3.1 for MATLAB® 302

Copyright © Peter Corke 2018
SE2.T

Get homogeneous transformation matrix

\[ T = P.T() \] is the homogeneous transformation matrix \((3 \times 3)\) associated with the SE2 object \(P\), and has zero translational component. If \(P\) is a vector \((1 \times N)\) then \(T\) \((3 \times 3 \times N)\) is a stack of rotation matrices, with the third dimension corresponding to the index of \(P\).

See also

SO2.T

SE2.transl

Get translational component

\[ tv = P.transl() \] is a row vector \((1 \times 2)\) representing the translational component of the rigid-body motion described by the SE2 object \(P\). If \(P\) is a vector of objects \((1 \times N)\) then \(tv\) \((N \times 2)\) will have one row per object element.

SE2.Twist

Convert to Twist object

\[ tw = P.Twist() \] is the equivalent Twist object. The elements of the twist are the unique elements of the Lie algebra of the SE2 object \(P\).

See also

SE2.log, Twist

SE2.xyt

Construct SE2 object from Lie algebra

\[ xyt = P.xyt() \] is a column vector \((3 \times 1)\) comprising the minimum three parameters of this rigid-body motion \([x; y; \theta]\) with translation \((x, y)\) and rotation \(\theta\).
SE3

SE(3) homogeneous transformation class

This subclass of SE3 < SO3 < RTBPose is an object that represents an SE(3) rigid-body motion.

\( T = \textbf{se3}() \) is an SE(3) homogeneous transformation (4 × 4) representing zero translation and rotation.

\( T = \textbf{se3}(x,y,z) \) as above represents a pure translation.

\( T = \textbf{SE3}.\textbf{rx}(\theta) \) as above represents a pure rotation about the x-axis.

Constructor methods

- \( \textbf{SE3} \): general constructor
- \( \textbf{SE3}.\text{exp} \): exponentiate an se(3) matrix
- \( \textbf{SE3}.\text{angvec} \): rotation about vector
- \( \textbf{SE3}.\text{eul} \): rotation defined by Euler angles
- \( \textbf{SE3}.\text{oa} \): rotation defined by o- and a-vectors
- \( \textbf{SE3}.\text{rpy} \): rotation defined by roll-pitch-yaw angles
- \( \textbf{SE3}.\text{rx} \): rotation about x-axis
- \( \textbf{SE3}.\text{Ry} \): rotation about y-axis
- \( \textbf{SE3}.\text{Rz} \): rotation about z-axis
- \( \textbf{SE3}.\text{rand} \): random transformation
- \( \text{new} \): new SE3 object

Information and test methods

- \( \text{dim}^* \): returns 4
- \( \text{isSE}^* \): returns true
- \( \text{issym}^* \): true if rotation matrix has symbolic elements
- \( \text{isidentity} \): true for null motion
- \( \text{SE3} . \text{isa} \): check if matrix is SO2

Display and print methods

- \( \text{plot}^* \): graphically display coordinate frame for pose
- \( \text{animate}^* \): graphically animate coordinate frame for pose
- \( \text{print}^* \): print the pose in single line format
- \( \text{display}^* \): print the pose in human readable matrix form
- \( \text{char}^* \): convert to human readable matrix as a string
### Operation methods

- **det** determinant of matrix component
- **eig** eigenvalues of matrix component
- **log** logarithm of rotation matrix \( r \geq 0 \) \&\& \( r \leq 1 \ub 
- **inv** inverse
- **simplify** apply symbolic simplification to all elements
- **Ad** adjoint matrix \((6 \times 6)\)
- **increment** update pose based on incremental motion
- **interp** interpolate poses
- **velxform** compute velocity transformation
- **interp** interpolate between poses
- **ctraj** Cartesian motion

### Conversion methods

- **SE3.check** convert object or matrix to SE3 object
- **double** convert to rotation matrix
- **R** return rotation matrix
- **SO3** return rotation part as an SO3 object
- **T** convert to homogeneous transformation matrix
- **UnitQuaternion** convert to UnitQuaternion object
- **toangvec** convert to rotation about vector form
- **toeul** convert to Euler angles
- **torpy** convert to roll-pitch-yaw angles
- **t** translation column vector
- **tv** translation column vector for vector of SE3

### Compatibility methods

- **homtrans** apply to vector
- **isrot** returns false
- **ishomog** returns true
- **tr2rt** convert to rotation matrix and translation vector
- **t2r** convert to rotation matrix
- **trprint** print single line representation
- **trplot** plot coordinate frame
- **tranimate** animate coordinate frame
- **tr2eul** convert to Euler angles
- **tr2rpy** convert to roll-pitch-yaw angles
- **t2r** convert to rotation matrix
- **transl** return translation as a row vector

* means inherited from RTBPose
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Operators

+ elementwise addition, result is a matrix
- elementwise subtraction, result is a matrix
  multiplication within group, also group x vector
.* multiplication within group followed by normalization
/ multiply by inverse
./ multiply by inverse followed by normalization
== test equality
≠ test inequality

Properties

n normal (x) vector
o orientation (y) vector
a approach (z) vector
t translation vector

For single SE3 objects only, for a vector of SE3 objects use the equivalent methods

t translation as a $3 \times 1$ vector (read/write)
R rotation as a $3 \times 3$ matrix (read/write)

Methods

tv return translations as a $3 \times N$ vector

Notes

- The properties R, t are implemented as MATLAB dependent properties. When applied to a vector of SE3 object the result is a comma-separated list which can be converted to a matrix by enclosing it in square brackets, eg [T.t] or more conveniently using the method T.transl

See also

SO3, SE2, RTBPose
SE3.SE3

Create an SE(3) object

Constructs an SE(3) pose object that contains a $4 \times 4$ homogeneous transformation matrix.

$T = \text{SE3}()$ is a null relative motion

$T = \text{SE3}(x, y, z)$ is an object representing pure translation defined by $x, y$ and $z$.

$T = \text{SE3}(\text{xyz})$ is an object representing pure translation defined by $\text{xyz}$ ($3 \times 1$). If $\text{xyz}$ ($N \times 3$) returns an array of SE3 objects, corresponding to the rows of $\text{xyz}$

$T = \text{SE3}(R, xyz)$ is an object representing rotation defined by the orthonormal rotation matrix $R$ ($3 \times 3$) and position given by $\text{xyz}$ ($3 \times 1$)

$T = \text{SE3}(T)$ is an object representing translation and rotation defined by the homogeneous transformation matrix $T$ ($3 \times 3$). If $T$ ($3 \times 3 \times N$) returns an array of SE3 objects, corresponding to the third index of $T$

$T = \text{SE3}(T)$ is an object representing translation and rotation defined by the SE3 object $T$, effectively cloning the object. If $T$ ($N \times 1$) returns an array of SE3 objects, corresponding to the index of $T$

Options

'deg'  Angle is specified in degrees

Notes

- Arguments can be symbolic

SE3.Ad

Adjoint matrix

$a = S.\text{Ad}()$ is the adjoint matrix ($6 \times 6$) corresponding to the SE(3) value $S$.

See also

Twist.ad
SE3.angvec

Construct an SE(3) object from angle and axis vector

\[ R = \text{SE3.angvec}(\theta, v) \] is an orthonormal rotation matrix \((3 \times 3)\) equivalent to a rotation of \(\theta\) about the vector \(v\).

**Notes**

- If \(\theta == 0\) then return identity matrix.
- If \(\theta \neq 0\) then \(v\) must have a finite length.

**See also**

SO3.angvec, eul2r, rpy2r, tr2angvec

SE3.check

Convert to SE3

\[ q = \text{SE3.check}(x) \] is an SE3 object where \(x\) is SE3 object or \(4 \times 4\) homogeneous transformation matrix.

SE3.ctraj

Cartesian trajectory between two poses

\[ t_c = T_0.\text{ctraj}(T_1, n) \] is a Cartesian trajectory defined by a vector of SE3 objects \((1 \times n)\) from pose \(T_0\) to \(T_1\), both described by SE3 objects. There are \(n\) points on the trajectory that follow a trapezoidal velocity profile along the trajectory.

\[ t_c = \text{CTRAJ}(T_0, T_1, s) \] as above but the elements of \(s\) \((n \times 1)\) specify the fractional distance along the path, and these values are in the range \([0 1]\). The \(i^{th}\) point corresponds to a distance \(s(i)\) along the path.

**Notes**

- In the second case \(s\) could be generated by a scalar trajectory generator such as TPOLY or LSPB (default).
- Orientation interpolation is performed using quaternion interpolation.
Reference

Robotics, Vision & Control, Sec 3.1.5, Peter Corke, Springer 2011

See also

lspb, mstraj, trinterp, ctraj, UnitQuaternion.interp

---

**SE3.delta**

**SE3 object from differential motion vector**

\[ T = \text{SE3}.delta(d) \] is an **SE3** pose object representing differential translation and rotation. The vector \( d = (dx, dy, dz, dRx, dRy, dRz) \) represents an infinitesimal motion, and is an approximation to the spatial velocity multiplied by time.

See also

SE3.todelta, SE3.increment, tr2delta

---

**SE3.eul**

**Construct an SE(3) object from Euler angles**

\[ p = \text{SE3.eul}(\phi, \theta, \psi, \text{options}) \] is an **SE3** object equivalent to the specified Euler angles with zero translation. These correspond to rotations about the Z, Y, Z axes respectively. If \( \phi, \theta, \psi \) are column vectors \((N \times 1)\) then they are assumed to represent a trajectory then \( p \) is a vector \((1 \times N)\) of **SE3** objects.

\[ p = \text{SE3.eul2R}(\text{eul}, \text{options}) \] as above but the Euler angles are taken from consecutive columns of the passed matrix \( \text{eul} = [\phi \ \theta \ \psi] \). If \( \text{eul} \) is a matrix \((N \times 3)\) then they are assumed to represent a trajectory then \( p \) is a vector \((1 \times N)\) of **SE3** objects.

Options

`'deg'` Compute angles in degrees (radians default)

Note

- The vectors \( \phi, \theta, \psi \) must be of the same length.
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

See also

SO3.eul, SE3.rpy, eul2tr, rpy2tr, tr2eul

---

**SE3.exp**

**SE3 object from se(3)**

\( \text{SE3.exp}(\sigma) \) is the **SE3** rigid-body motion given by the se(3) element \( \sigma \) (4 × 4).

\( \text{SE3.exp}(\exp(S)) \) as above, but the se(3) value is expressed as a twist vector (6 × 1).

\( \text{SE3.exp}(\sigma, \theta) \) as above, but the motion is given by \( \sigma \ast \theta \) where \( \sigma \) is an se(3) element (4 × 4) whose rotation part has a unit norm.

**Notes**

- wraps trexp.

See also

trexp

---

**SE3.homtrans**

Apply transformation to points

\( P: \text{homtrans}(v) \) applies **SE3** pose object \( P \) to the points stored columnwise in \( v \) (3 × N) and returns transformed points (3 × N).

**Notes**

- \( P \) is an SE3 object defining the pose of \( \{A\} \) with respect to \( \{B\} \).
- The points are defined with respect to frame \( \{A\} \) and are transformed to be with respect to frame \( \{B\} \).
- Equivalent to \( P \ast v \) using overloaded SE3 operators.
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

See also

RTBPose.mtimes, homtrans

SE3.increment

Apply incremental motion to an SE3 pose

\[ p1 = P.\text{increment}(d) \] is an SE3 pose object formed by applying the incremental motion vector \( d \) (1 \times 6) in the frame associated with SE3 pose \( P \).

See also

SE3.todelta, delta2tr, tr2delta

SE3.interp

Interpolate SE3 poses

\[ P1.\text{interp}(p2, s) \] is an SE3 object representing an interpolation between poses represented by SE3 objects \( P1 \) and \( p2 \). \( s \) varies from 0 (\( P1 \)) to 1 (\( p2 \)). If \( s \) is a vector (1 \times N) then the result will be a vector of SO3 objects.

\[ P1.\text{interp}(p2,n) \] as above but returns a vector (1 \times n) of SE3 objects interpolated between \( P1 \) and \( p2 \) in \( n \) steps.

Notes

- The rotational interpolation (slerp) can be interpreted as interpolation along a great circle arc on a sphere.
- It is an error if \( S \) is outside the interval 0 to 1.

See also

trinterp, UnitQuaternion
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

**SE3.inv**

Inverse of SE3 object

\[ q = \text{inv}(p) \] is the inverse of the SE3 object \( p \). \( p^*q \) will be the identity matrix.

**Notes**

- This is formed explicitly, no matrix inverse required.

**SE3.isa**

Test if a homogeneous transformation

\( \text{SE3.ISA}(T) \) is true (1) if the argument \( T \) is of dimension \( 4 \times 4 \) or \( 4 \times 4 \times N \), else false (0).

\( \text{SE3.ISA}(T, 'valid') \) as above, but also checks the validity of the rotation sub-matrix.

**Notes**

- The first form is a fast, but incomplete, test for a transform in SE(3).

**See also**

SO3.ISA, SE2.ISA, SO2.ISA

**SE3.isidentity**

Apply incremental motion to an SE(3) pose

\( \text{P.isidentity}() \) is true of the SE3 object \( P \) corresponds to null motion, that is, its homogeneous transformation matrix is identity.
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

SE3.log

Lie algebra

\( \mathfrak{se}_3 = P.\log() \) is the Lie algebra expressed as an augmented skew-symmetric matrix \((4 \times 4)\) corresponding to the SE3 object \(P\).

See also

SE3.logs, SE3.Twist, trlog, logm

SE3.logs

Lie algebra

\( \mathfrak{se}_3 = P.\log() \) is the Lie algebra expressed as vector \((1 \times 6)\) corresponding to the SE2 object \(P\). The vector comprises the translational elements followed by the unique elements of the skew-symmetric rotation submatrix.

See also

SE3.log, SE3.Twist, trlog, logm

SE3.new

Construct a new object of the same type

\( p_2 = P.\text{new}(x) \) creates a new object of the same type as \(P\), by invoking the SE3 constructor on the matrix \(x\) \((4 \times 4)\).

\( p_2 = P.\text{new}() \) as above but defines a null motion.

Notes

- Serves as a dynamic constructor.
- This method is polymorphic across all RTBPose derived classes, and allows easy creation of a new object of the same class as an existing one.
See also

SO3.new, SO2.new, SE2.new

SE3.oa

Construct an SE(3) object from orientation and approach vectors

\[ p = \text{SE3.oa}(\mathbf{o}, \mathbf{a}) \]

is an SE3 object for the specified orientation and approach vectors (3 × 1) formed from 3 vectors such that \( R = [\mathbf{N} \mathbf{o} \mathbf{a}] \) and \( \mathbf{N} = \mathbf{o} \times \mathbf{a} \), with zero translation.

Notes

- The rotation submatrix is guaranteed to be orthonormal so long as \( \mathbf{o} \) and \( \mathbf{a} \) are not parallel.
- The vectors \( \mathbf{o} \) and \( \mathbf{a} \) are parallel to the Y- and Z-axes of the coordinate frame.

References


See also

rpy2r, eul2r, oa2tr, SO3.oa

SE3.rand

Construct a random SE(3) object

\[ \text{SE3.rand}() \]

is an SE3 object with a uniform random translation and a uniform random RPY/ZYX orientation. Random numbers are in the interval 0 to 1.

See also

rand
SE3.rpy

Construct an SE(3) object from roll-pitch-yaw angles

\( p = \text{SE3.rpy}(\text{roll, pitch, yaw, options}) \) is an SE3 object equivalent to the specified roll, pitch, yaw angles angles with zero translation. These correspond to rotations about the Z, Y, X axes respectively. If \( \text{roll, pitch, yaw} \) are column vectors \( (N \times 1) \) then they are assumed to represent a trajectory then \( p \) is a vector \( (1 \times N) \) of SE3 objects.

\( p = \text{SE3.rpy}(\text{rpy, options}) \) as above but the roll, pitch, yaw angles angles angles are taken from consecutive columns of the passed matrix \( \text{rpy} = [\text{roll, pitch, yaw}] \). If \( \text{rpy} \) is a matrix \( (N \times 3) \) then they are assumed to represent a trajectory and \( p \) is a vector \( (1 \times N) \) of SE3 objects.

Options

- ‘deg’ Compute angles in degrees (radians default)
- ‘xyz’ Rotations about X, Y, Z axes (for a robot gripper)
- ‘yxz’ Rotations about Y, X, Z axes (for a camera)

See also

SO3.rpy, SE3.eul, tr2rpy, eul2tr

SE3.Rx

Rotation about X axis

\( p = \text{SE3.Rx}(\text{theta}) \) is an SE3 object representing a rotation of \( \text{theta} \) radians about the x-axis. If the \( \text{theta} \) is a vector \( (1 \times N) \) then \( p \) will be a vector \( (1 \times N) \) of corresponding SE3 objects.

\( p = \text{SE3.Rx}(\text{theta}, \text{deg}) \) as above but \( \text{theta} \) is in degrees.

See also

SE3.Ry, SE3.Rz, rotx
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

SE3.Ry

Rotation about Y axis

\( p = \text{SE3.Ry}(\text{theta}) \) is an SE3 object representing a rotation of theta radians about the y-axis. If the theta is a vector \((1 \times N)\) then \(p\) will be a vector \((1 \times N)\) of corresponding SE3 objects.

\( p = \text{SE3.Ry}(\text{theta}, \text{`deg'}) \) as above but theta is in degrees.

See also

SE3.Ry, SE3.Rz, rotx

SE3.Rz

Rotation about Z axis

\( p = \text{SE3.Rz}(\text{theta}) \) is an SE3 object representing a rotation of theta radians about the z-axis. If the theta is a vector \((1 \times N)\) then \(p\) will be a vector \((1 \times N)\) of corresponding SE3 objects.

\( p = \text{SE3.Rz}(\text{theta}, \text{`deg'}) \) as above but theta is in degrees.

See also

SE3.Ry, SE3.Rz, rotx

SE3.set.t

Get translation vector

\( T = P.t \) is the translational part of SE3 object as a 3-element column vector.

Notes

- If applied to a vector will return a comma-separated list, use .transl() instead.

See also

SE3.transl, transl
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

**SE3.SO3**

*Convert rotational component to SO3 object*

P.SO3 is an SO3 object representing the rotational component of the SE3 pose P. If P is a vector \((N \times 1)\) then the result is a vector \((N \times 1)\).

**SE3.T**

*Get homogeneous transformation matrix*

\(T = P.T()\) is the homogeneous transformation matrix \((3 \times 3)\) associated with the SO2 object P, and has zero translational component. If P is a vector \((1 \times N)\) then \(T\) \((3 \times 3 \times N)\) is a stack of rotation matrices, with the third dimension corresponding to the index of P.

**See also**

SO2.T

**SE3.toangvec**

*Convert to angle-vector form*

\([\text{theta,v}] = P.toangvec(options)\) is rotation expressed in terms of an angle \(\text{theta}\) \((1 \times 1)\) about the axis \(v\) \((1 \times 3)\) equivalent to the rotational part of the SE3 object P.

If P is a vector \((1 \times N)\) then \(\text{theta}\) \((K \times 1)\) is a vector of angles for corresponding elements of the vector and \(v\) \((K \times 3)\) are the corresponding axes, one per row.

**Options**

‘deg’ Return angle in degrees

**Notes**

- If no output arguments are specified the result is displayed.
See also
angvec2r, angvec2tr, trlog

**SE3.todelta**

Convert SE(3) object to differential motion vector

\[ d = \text{SE3.todelta}(p_0, p_1) \]

is the \((6 \times 1)\) differential motion vector \((dx, dy, dz, dRx, dRy, dRz)\) corresponding to infinitessimal motion (in the \(p_0\) frame) from SE(3) pose \(p_0\) to \(p_1\).

\[ d = \text{SE3.todelta}(p) \]

as above but the motion is with respect to the world frame.

**Notes**

- \(d\) is only an approximation to the motion, and assumes that \(p_0 \approx p_1\) or \(p \approx \text{eye}(4,4)\).
- can be considered as an approximation to the effect of spatial velocity over a time interval, average spatial velocity multiplied by time.

See also
SE3.increment, tr2delta, delta2tr

**SE3.toeul**

Convert to Euler angles

\[ \text{eul} = P.'\text{toeul}(\text{options}) \]

are the ZYZ Euler angles \((1 \times 3)\) corresponding to the rotational part of the SE3 object \(P\). The 3 angles \(\text{eul} = [\text{PHI}, \text{THETA}, \text{PSI}]\) correspond to sequential rotations about the Z, Y and Z axes respectively.

If \(P\) is a vector \((1 \times N)\) then each row of \(\text{eul}\) corresponds to an element of the vector.

**Options**

- `‘deg’` Compute angles in degrees (radians default)
- `‘flip’` Choose first Euler angle to be in quadrant 2 or 3.
Notes

• There is a singularity for the case where THETA=0 in which case PHI is arbitrarily set to zero and PSI is the sum (PHI+PSI).

See also

SO3.toeul, SE3.torpy, eul2tr, tr2rpy

SE3.torpy

Convert to roll-pitch-yaw angles

\( \text{rpy} = P.\text{torpy}(\text{options}) \) are the roll-pitch-yaw angles \((1 \times 3)\) corresponding to the rotational part of the SE3 object \(P\). The 3 angles \(\text{rpy}=[R,P,Y]\) correspond to sequential rotations about the Z, Y and X axes respectively.

If \(P\) is a vector \((1 \times N)\) then each row of \(\text{rpy}\) corresponds to an element of the vector.

Options

'\text{deg}' Compute angles in degrees (radians default)

'\text{xyz}' Return solution for sequential rotations about X, Y, Z axes

'\text{yxz}' Return solution for sequential rotations about Y, X, Z axes

Notes

• There is a singularity for the case where \(P=\pi/2\) in which case \(R\) is arbitrarily set to zero and \(Y\) is the sum (\(R+Y\)).

See also

SE3.torpy, SE3.toeul, rpy2tr, tr2eul

SE3.transl

Get translation vector

\( T = P.\text{transl}() \) is the translational part of SE3 object as a 3-element row vector. If \(P\) is a vector \((1 \times N)\) then
the rows of $T (M \times 3)$ are the translational component of the corresponding pose in the sequence.

$[x, y, z] = P.\text{transl}()$ as above but the translational part is returned as three components. If $P$ is a vector $(1 \times N)$ then $x, y, z (1 \times N)$ are the translational components of the corresponding pose in the sequence.

Notes

- The .t method only works for a single pose object, on a vector it returns a comma-separated list.

See also

SE3.t, transl

**SE3.tv**

*Return translation for a vector of SE3 objects*

$P.\text{tv}$ is a column vector $(3 \times 1)$ representing the translational part of the SE3 pose object $P$. If $P$ is a vector of SE3 objects $(N \times 1)$ then the result is a matrix $(3 \times N)$ with columns corresponding to the elements of $P$.

See also

SE3.t

**SE3.Twist**

*Convert to Twist object*

$tw = P.\text{Twist}()$ is the equivalent Twist object. The elements of the twist are the unique elements of the Lie algebra of the SE3 object $P$.

See also

SE3.logs, Twist
SE3.velxform

Velocity transformation

Transform velocity between frames. A is the world frame, B is the body frame and C is another frame attached to the body. PAB is the pose of the body frame with respect to the world frame, PCB is the pose of the body frame with respect to frame C.

\[ \mathbf{J} = \mathbf{P}_{AB}.\mathbf{velxform}() \] is a 6 × 6 Jacobian matrix that maps velocity from frame B to frame A.

\[ \mathbf{J} = \mathbf{P}_{CB}.\mathbf{velxform('samebody')} \] is a 6 × 6 Jacobian matrix that maps velocity from frame C to frame B. This is also the adjoint of PCB.

Sensor

Sensor superclass

An abstract superclass to represent robot navigation sensors.

Methods

- plot: plot a line from robot to map feature
- display: print the parameters in human readable form
- char: convert to string

Properties

- robot: The Vehicle object on which the sensor is mounted
- map: The PointMap object representing the landmarks around the robot

Reference

Robotics, Vision & Control, Peter Corke, Springer 2011

See also

RangeBearingSensor, EKF, Vehicle, LandmarkMap
Sensor.Sensor

Sensor object constructor

\[ s = \text{Sensor}(\text{vehicle}, \text{map}, \text{options}) \] is a sensor mounted on a vehicle described by the Vehicle subclass object \text{vehicle} and observing landmarks in a map described by the LandmarkMap class object \text{map}.

Options

- ‘animate’ animate the action of the laser scanner
- ‘ls’, LS laser scan lines drawn with style ls (default ‘r-’)
- ‘skip’, I return a valid reading on every \( I \)th call
- ‘fail’, T sensor simulates failure between timesteps \( T=[T_{MIN},T_{MAX}] \)

Notes

- Animation shows a ray from the vehicle position to the selected landmark.

Sensor.char

Convert sensor parameters to a string

\[ s = S.\text{char}() \] is a string showing sensor parameters in a compact human readable format.

Sensor.display

Display status of sensor object

\[ S.\text{display}() \] displays the state of the sensor object in human-readable form.

Notes

- This method is invoked implicitly at the command line when the result of an expression is a Sensor object and the command has no trailing semicolon.

See also

Sensor.char
Sensor.plot

Plot sensor reading

Sensor.plot(J) draws a line from the robot to the Jth map feature.

Notes

- The line is drawn using the linestyle given by the property ls
- There is a delay given by the property delay

SerialLink

Serial-link robot class

A concrete class that represents a serial-link arm-type robot. Each link and joint in the chain is described by a Link-class object using Denavit-Hartenberg parameters (standard or modified).

Constructor methods

- SerialLink general constructor
- L1+L2 construct from Link objects

Display/plot methods

- animate animate robot model
- display print the link parameters in human readable form
- dyn display link dynamic parameters
- edit display and edit kinematic and dynamic parameters
- getpos get position of graphical robot
- plot display graphical representation of robot
- plot3d display 3D graphical model of robot
- teach drive the graphical robot

Testing methods

- islimit test if robot at joint limit

Robotics Toolbox 10.3.1 for MATLAB® 323
Copyright © Peter Corke 2018
isconfig test robot joint configuration
issym test if robot has symbolic parameters
isprismatic index of prismatic joints
isrevolute index of revolute joints
isspherical test if robot has spherical wrist
isdh test if robot has standard DH model
ismdh test if robot has modified DH model

Conversion methods

char convert to string
sym convert to symbolic parameters
todegrees convert joint angles to degrees
toradians convert joint angles to radians

SerialLink.SerialLink

Create a SerialLink robot object

R = SerialLink(links, options) is a robot object defined by a vector of Link class objects which includes the subclasses Revolute, Prismatic, RevoluteMDH or PrismaticMDH.

R = SerialLink(options) is a null robot object with no links.

R = SerialLink([R1 R2 ...], options) concatenate robots, the base of R2 is attached to the tip of R1. Can also be written as R1*R2 etc.

R = SerialLink(R1, options) is a deep copy of the robot object R1, with all the same properties.

R = SerialLink(dh, options) is a robot object with kinematics defined by the matrix dh which has one row per joint and each row is [theta d a alpha] and joints are assumed revolute. An optional fifth column sigma indicate revolute (sigma=0) or prismatic (sigma=1). An optional sixth column is the joint offset.

Options

'name', NAME set robot name property to NAME
'comment', COMMENT set robot comment property to COMMENT
'manufacturer', MANUF set robot manufacturer property to MANUF
'base', T set base transformation matrix property to T
'tool', T set tool transformation matrix property to T
'gravity', G set gravity vector property to G
'plotopt', P set default options for .plot() to P
'plotopt3d', P set default options for .plot3d() to P
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

'nofast' don’t use RNE MEX file
'configs', P provide a cell array of predefined configurations, as name, value pairs

Examples

Create a 2-link robot

L(1) = Link([ 0 0 a1 pi/2], 'standard');
L(2) = Link([ 0 0 a2 0], 'standard');
twolink = SerialLink(L, 'name', 'two link');

Create a 2-link robot (most descriptive)

L(1) = Revolute('d', 0, 'a', a1, 'alpha', pi/2);
L(2) = Revolute('d', 0, 'a', a2, 'alpha', 0);
twolink = SerialLink(L, 'name', 'two link');

Create a 2-link robot (least descriptive)

twolink = SerialLink([0 0 a1 0; 0 0 a2 0], 'name', 'two link');

Robot objects can be concatenated in two ways

R = R1 * R2;
R = SerialLink([R1 R2]);

Note

- SerialLink is a reference object, a subclass of Handle object.
- SerialLink objects can be used in vectors and arrays
- Link subclass elements passed in must be all standard, or all modified, dh parameters.
- When robots are concatenated (either syntax) the intermediate base and tool transforms are removed since general constant transforms cannot be represented in Denavit-Hartenberg notation.

See also

Link, Revolute, Prismatic, RevoluteMDH, PrismaticMDH, SerialLink.plot

SerialLink.A

Link transformation matrices

s = R.A(J, q) is an SE3 object (4 × 4) that transforms between link frames for the Jth joint. q is a vector (1 × N) of joint variables. For:
- standard DH parameters, this is from frame {J-1} to frame {J}.
• modified DH parameters, this is from frame \{J\} to frame \{J+1\}.
\[ s = R \cdot A(J, q) \] as above but is a composition of link transform matrices given in the list \( jlist \), and the joint variables are taken from the corresponding elements of \( q \).

Exmaples

For example, the link transform for joint 4 is
\[ \text{robot.A}(4, q_4) \]
The link transform for joints 3 through 6 is
\[ \text{robot.A}(3:6, q) \]
where \( q \) is \( 1 \times 6 \) and the elements \( q(3) \ldots q(6) \) are used.

Notes

• Base and tool transforms are not applied.

See also

Link.A

SerialLink.accel

Manipulator forward dynamics

\[ \text{qdd} = R \cdot \text{accel}(q, \text{qd, torque}) \] is a vector \((N \times 1)\) of joint accelerations that result from applying the actuator force/torque \((1 \times N)\) to the manipulator robot \( R \) in state \( q \) \((1 \times N)\) and \( \text{qd} \) \((1 \times N)\), and \( N \) is the number of robot joints.

If \( q, \text{qd, torque} \) are matrices \((K \times N)\) then \( \text{qdd} \) is a matrix \((K \times N)\) where each row is the acceleration corresponding to the equivalent rows of \( q, \text{qd, torque} \).

\[ \text{qdd} = R \cdot \text{accel}(x) \] as above but \( x=[q, qd, \text{torque}] \) \((1 \times 3N)\).

Note

• Useful for simulation of manipulator dynamics, in conjunction with a numerical integration function.
• Uses the method 1 of Walker and Orin to compute the forward dynamics.
• Featherstone’s method is more efficient for robots with large numbers of joints.
• Joint friction is considered.
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

References


See also

SerialLink.fdyn, SerialLink.rne, SerialLink, ode45

SerialLink.animate

Update a robot animation

R.animate(q) updates an existing animation for the robot R. This will have been created using R.plot(). Updates graphical instances of this robot in all figures.

Notes

- Called by plot() and plot3d() to actually move the arm models.
- Used for Simulink robot animation.

See also

SerialLink.plot

SerialLink.char

Convert to string

s = R.char() is a string representation of the robot’s kinematic parameters, showing DH parameters, joint structure, comments, gravity vector, base and tool transform.

SerialLink.cinertia

Cartesian inertia matrix

m = R.cinertia(q) is the N × N Cartesian (operational space) inertia matrix which relates Cartesian force/torque to Cartesian acceleration at the joint configuration q.
and N is the number of robot joints.

See also

SerialLink.inertia, SerialLink.rne

**SerialLink.collisions**

**Perform collision checking**

\( C = R . \text{collisions}(q, \text{model}) \) is true if the SerialLink object \( R \) at pose \( q \) \((1 \times N)\) intersects the solid model \( \text{model} \) which belongs to the class CollisionModel. The model comprises a number of geometric primitives with an associated pose.

\( C = R . \text{collisions}(q, \text{model}, \text{dynmodel}, t_{\text{dyn}}) \) as above but also checks dynamic collision model \( \text{dynmodel} \) whose elements are at pose \( t_{\text{dyn}} \). \( t_{\text{dyn}} \) is an array of transformation matrices \((4 \times 4 \times P)\), where \( P = \text{length}(\text{dynmodel} \text{primitives}) \). The \( P \)th plane of \( t_{\text{dyn}} \) premultiplies the pose of the \( P \)th primitive of \( \text{dynmodel} \).

\( C = R . \text{collisions}(q, \text{model}, \text{dynmodel}) \) as above but assumes \( t_{\text{dyn}} \) is the robot’s tool frame.

**Trajectory operation**

If \( q \) is \( M \times N \) it is taken as a pose sequence and \( C \) is \( M \times 1 \) and the collision value applies to the pose of the corresponding row of \( q \). \( t_{\text{dyn}} \) is \( 4 \times 4 \times M \times P \).

**Notes**

- Requires the pHRIWARE package which defines CollisionModel class. Available from: [https://github.com/bryan91/pHRIWARE](https://github.com/bryan91/pHRIWARE).
- The robot is defined by a point cloud, given by its points property.
- The function does not currently check the base of the SerialLink object.
- If \( \text{model} \) is \([\]) then no static objects are assumed.

**Author**

Bryan Moutrie
See also
CollisionModel, SerialLink

SerialLink.coriolis

Coriolis matrix

\[ C = R.\text{coriolis}(q, qd) \] is the Coriolis/centripetal matrix \((N \times N)\) for the robot in configuration \(q\) and velocity \(qd\), where \(N\) is the number of joints. The product \(C^*qd\) is the vector of joint force/torque due to velocity coupling. The diagonal elements are due to centripetal effects and the off-diagonal elements are due to Coriolis effects. This matrix is also known as the velocity coupling matrix, since it describes the disturbance forces on any joint due to velocity of all other joints.

If \(q\) and \(qd\) are matrices \((K \times N)\), each row is interpreted as a joint state vector, and the result \((N \times N \times K)\) is a 3d-matrix where each plane corresponds to a row of \(q\) and \(qd\).

\[ C = R.\text{coriolis}(qqd) \] as above but the matrix \(qqd\) \((1 \times 2N)\) is \([q qd]\).

Notes

- Joint viscous friction is also a joint force proportional to velocity but it is eliminated in the computation of this value.
- Computationally slow, involves \(N^2/2\) invocations of RNE.

See also
SerialLink.rne

SerialLink.DH

Convert modified DH model to standard

\[ \text{rmdh} = R.\text{DH()} \] is a SerialLink object that represents the same kinematics as \(R\) but expressed using standard DH parameters.

Notes

- can only be applied to a model expressed with modified DH parameters.

See also: MDH
SerialLink.display

Display parameters

R.display() displays the robot parameters in human-readable form.

Notes

- This method is invoked implicitly at the command line when the result of an expression is a SerialLink object and the command has no trailing semicolon.

See also

SerialLink.char, SerialLink.dyn

SerialLink.dyn

Print inertial properties

R.dyn() displays the inertial properties of the SerialLink object in a multi-line format. The properties shown are mass, centre of mass, inertia, gear ratio, motor inertia and motor friction.

R.dyn(J) as above but display parameters for joint J only.

See also

Link.dyn

SerialLink.edit

Edit kinematic and dynamic parameters

R.edit displays the kinematic parameters of the robot as an editable table in a new figure.

R.edit(’dyn’) as above but also includes the dynamic parameters in the table.
Notes

- The ‘Save’ button copies the values from the table to the SerialLink manipulator object.
- To exit the editor without updating the object just kill the figure window.

SerialLink.fdyn

Integrate forward dynamics

\[ [T, q, qd] = R.fdyn(t_{\text{max}}, \text{ftfun}) \]
integrate the dynamics of the robot over the time interval 0 to \( t_{\text{max}} \) and returns vectors of time \( T (K \times 1) \), joint position \( q (K \times N) \) and joint velocity \( qd (K \times N) \). The initial joint position and velocity are zero. The torque applied to the joints is computed by the user-supplied control function \( \text{ftfun} \):

\[
\text{TAU} = \text{FTFUN(ROBOT, T, Q, QD)}
\]

where \( q (1 \times N) \) and \( qd (1 \times N) \) are the manipulator joint coordinate and velocity state respectively, and \( T \) is the current time.

\[ [t, q, qd] = R.fdyn(T_{\text{max}}, \text{ftfun}, q_0, qd_0) \]
as above but allows the initial joint position \( q_0 (1 \times N) \) and velocity \( qd_0 (1 \times N) \) to be specified.

\[ [T, q, qd] = R.fdyn(T_1, \text{ftfun}, q_0, qd_0, \text{ARG1, ARG2, ...}) \]
allows optional arguments to be passed through to the user-supplied control function:

\[
\text{TAU} = \text{FTFUN(ROBOT, T, Q, QD, ARG1, ARG2, ...)}
\]

For example, if the robot was controlled by a PD controller we can define a function to compute the control

\[
\text{function tau = myftfun(t, q, qd, qstar, P, D)}
\]
\[
\text{tau} = P \cdot (qstar - q) + D \cdot qd;
\]

and then integrate the robot dynamics with the control

\[ [t, q] = \text{robot.fdyn(10, @myftfun, qstar, P, D)}; \]

Note

- This function performs poorly with non-linear joint friction, such as Coulomb friction. The \( \text{R.nofriction()} \) method can be used to set this friction to zero.
- If \( \text{ftfun} \) is not specified, or is given as 0 or [], then zero torque is applied to the manipulator joints.
- The MATLAB built-in integration function \( \text{ode45()} \) is used.
See also

SerialLink.accel, SerialLink.nofriction, SerialLink.rne, ode45

SerialLink.fellipse

Force ellipsoid for seriallink manipulator

R.fellipse(q, options) displays the force ellipsoid for the robot R at pose q. The ellipsoid is centered at the tool tip position.

Options

'2d'    Ellipse for translational xy motion, for planar manipulator
'trans' Ellipsoid for translational motion (default)
'rot'   Ellipsoid for rotational motion

Display options as per plot_ellipse to control ellipsoid face and edge color and transparency.

Example

To interactively update the force ellipsoid while using sliders to change the robot’s pose:

    robot.teach('callback', @(r,q) r.fellipse(q))

Notes

- The ellipsoid is tagged with the name of the robot prepended to “fellipse”.
- Calling the function with a different pose will update the ellipsoid.

See also

SerialLink.jacob0, SerialLink.vellipse, plot_ellipse
SerialLink.fkine

Forward kinematics

\( T = R.fkine(q, \text{options}) \) is the pose of the robot end-effector as an SE3 object for the joint configuration \( q \) (1 \( \times \) \( N \)).

If \( q \) is a matrix (\( K \times N \)) the rows are interpreted as the generalized joint coordinates for a sequence of points along a trajectory. \( q(i,j) \) is the \( j^{th} \) joint parameter for the \( i^{th} \) trajectory point. In this case \( T \) is an array of SE3 objects (K) where the subscript is the index along the path.

\[ T,\text{all} \] = \( R.fkine(q) \) as above but \text{all} (N) is a vector of SE3 objects describing the pose of the link frames 1 to \( N \).

Options

‘deg’ Assume that revolute joint coordinates are in degrees not radians

Note

- The robot’s base or tool transform, if present, are incorporated into the result.
- Joint offsets, if defined, are added to \( q \) before the forward kinematics are computed.
- If the result is symbolic then each element is simplified.

See also

SerialLink.ikine, SerialLink.ikine6s

SerialLink.friction

Friction force

\( \tau = R.friction(qd) \) is the vector of joint friction forces/torques for the robot moving with joint velocities \( qd \).

The friction model includes:

- Viscous friction which is a linear function of velocity.
- Coulomb friction which is proportional to \( \text{sign}(qd) \).
Notes

• The friction value should be added to the motor output torque, it has a negative value when $q_d > 0$.
• The returned friction value is referred to the output of the gearbox.
• The friction parameters in the Link object are referred to the motor.
• Motor viscous friction is scaled up by $G^2$.
• Motor Coulomb friction is scaled up by $G$.
• The appropriate Coulomb friction value to use in the non-symmetric case depends on the sign of the joint velocity, not the motor velocity.
• The absolute value of the gear ratio is used. Negative gear ratios are tricky: the Puma560 has negative gear ratio for joints 1 and 3.

See also

Link.friction

SerialLink.gencoords

Vector of symbolic generalized coordinates

$q = R.gencoords()$ is a vector $(1 \times N)$ of symbols $[q_1 \ q_2 \ldots \ q_N]$.

$[q, q_d] = R.gencoords()$ as above but $q_d$ is a vector $(1 \times N)$ of symbols $[q_d1 \ q_d2 \ldots \ q_dN]$.

$[q, q_d, q_{dd}] = R.gencoords()$ as above but $q_{dd}$ is a vector $(1 \times N)$ of symbols $[q_{dd1} \ q_{dd2} \ldots \ q_{ddN}]$.

See also

SerialLink.genforces

SerialLink.genforces

Vector of symbolic generalized forces

$q = R.genforces()$ is a vector $(1 \times N)$ of symbols $[Q_1 \ Q_2 \ldots \ Q_N]$. 
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

See also

SerialLink.gencoords

SerialLink.get.config

Retrun the joint configuration string

SerialLink.getpos

Get joint coordinates from graphical display

\[ q = \text{R.getpos}() \] returns the joint coordinates set by the last plot or teach operation on the graphical robot.

See also

SerialLink.plot, SerialLink.teach

SerialLink.gravjac

Fast gravity load and Jacobian

\[ [\text{tau}, \text{jac0}] = \text{R.gravjac}(q) \] is the generalised joint force/torques due to gravity \( \text{tau} \) (\( 1 \times N \)) and the manipulator Jacobian in the base frame \( \text{jac0} \) (\( 6 \times N \)) for robot pose \( q \) (\( 1 \times N \)), where \( N \) is the number of robot joints.

\[ [\text{tau}, \text{jac0}] = \text{R.gravjac}(q, \text{grav}) \] as above but gravitational acceleration is given explicitly by \( \text{grav} \) (\( 3 \times 1 \)).

Trajectory operation

If \( q \) is \( M \times N \) where \( N \) is the number of robot joints then a trajectory is assumed where each row of \( q \) corresponds to a robot configuration. \( \text{tau} \) (\( M \times N \)) is the generalised joint torque, each row corresponding to an input pose, and \( \text{jac0} \) (\( 6 \times N \times M \)) where each plane is a Jacobian corresponding to an input pose.
Notes

- The gravity vector is defined by the SerialLink property if not explicitly given.
- Does not use inverse dynamics function RNE.
- Faster than computing gravity and Jacobian separately.

Author

Bryan Moutrie

See also

SerialLink pay, SerialLink, SerialLink gravload, SerialLink jacob0

SerialLink.gravload

Gravity load on joints

taug = R.gravload(q) is the joint gravity loading (1 × N) for the robot R in the joint configuration q (1 × N), where N is the number of robot joints. Gravitational acceleration is a property of the robot object.

If q is a matrix (M × N) each row is interpreted as a joint configuration vector, and the result is a matrix (M × N) each row being the corresponding joint torques.

taug = R.gravload(q, grav) as above but the gravitational acceleration vector grav is given explicitly.

See also

SerialLink gravjac, SerialLink rne, SerialLink itorque, SerialLink coriolis

SerialLink.ikcon

Inverse kinematics by optimization with joint limits

q = R.ikcon(T, options) are the joint coordinates (1 × N) corresponding to the robot end-effector pose T which is an SE3 object or homogenous transform matrix (4 × 4), and N is the number of robot joints. options is an optional list of name/value pairs than can be passed to fmincon.
[\textbf{q,err}] = \textbf{robot.ikcon}(\textbf{T}, \textbf{options}) as above but also returns \textbf{err} which is the scalar final value of the objective function.

[\textbf{q,err,exitflag}] = \textbf{robot.ikcon}(\textbf{T}, \textbf{options}) as above but also returns the status \textbf{exitflag} from \textbf{fmincon}.

[\textbf{q,err,exitflag}] = \textbf{robot.ikcon}(\textbf{T}, \textbf{q0}, \textbf{options}) as above but specify the initial joint coordinates \textbf{q0} used for the minimisation.

\textbf{Trajectory operation}

In all cases if \textbf{T} is a vector of SE3 objects (1 \times M) or a homogeneous transform sequence (4 \times 4 \times M) then returns the joint coordinates corresponding to each of the transforms in the sequence. \textbf{q} is \(M \times N\) where \(N\) is the number of robot joints. The initial estimate of \textbf{q} for each time step is taken as the solution from the previous time step.

\textbf{err} and \textbf{exitflag} are also \(M \times 1\) and indicate the results of optimisation for the corresponding trajectory step.

\textbf{Notes}

- Requires \textbf{fmincon} from the MATLAB Optimization Toolbox.
- Joint limits are considered in this solution.
- Can be used for robots with arbitrary degrees of freedom.
- In the case of multiple feasible solutions, the solution returned depends on the initial choice of \textbf{q0}.
- Works by minimizing the error between the forward kinematics of the joint angle solution and the end-effector frame as an optimisation. The objective function (error) is described as:

\[
\text{sumsqr}\left\{ (\text{inv}(\textbf{T}) \cdot \text{robot.fkine}(<\textbf{q}> - \text{eye}(4)) \cdot \omega) \right\}
\]

Where omega is some gain matrix, currently not modifiable.

\textbf{Author}

Bryan Moutrie

\textbf{See also}

SerialLink.ikunc, fmincon, SerialLink.ikine, SerialLink.fkine
SerialLink.ikine

Inverse kinematics by optimization without joint limits

$q = R.\text{ikine}(T)$ are the joint coordinates $(1 \times N)$ corresponding to the robot end-effector pose $T$ which is an SE3 object or homogeneous transform matrix $(4 \times 4)$, and $N$ is the number of robot joints.

This method can be used for robots with any number of degrees of freedom.

Options

- ‘ilimit’, L maximum number of iterations (default 500)
- ‘rlimit’, L maximum number of consecutive step rejections (default 100)
- ‘tol’, $T$ final error tolerance (default $10^{-10}$)
- ‘lambda’, L initial value of lambda (default 0.1)
- ‘lambdamin’, L minimum allowable value of lambda (default 0)
- ‘quiet’ be quiet
- ‘verbose’ be verbose
- ‘mask’, M mask vector $(6 \times 1)$ that correspond to translation in X, Y and Z, and rotation about X, Y and Z respectively.
- ‘$q0$’, q initial joint configuration (default all zeros)
- ‘search’ search over all configurations
- ‘slimit’, L maximum number of search attempts (default 100)
- ‘transpose’, A use Jacobian transpose with step size A, rather than Levenberg-Marquadt

Trajectory operation

In all cases if $T$ is a vector of SE3 objects $(1 \times M)$ or a homogeneous transform sequence $(4 \times 4 \times M)$ then returns the joint coordinates corresponding to each of the transforms in the sequence. $q$ is $M \times N$ where $N$ is the number of robot joints. The initial estimate of $q$ for each time step is taken as the solution from the previous time step.

Underactuated robots

For the case where the manipulator has fewer than 6 DOF the solution space has more dimensions than can be spanned by the manipulator joint coordinates.

In this case we specify the ‘mask’ option where the mask vector $(1 \times 6)$ specifies the Cartesian DOF (in the wrist coordinate frame) that will be ignored in reaching a solution. The mask vector has six elements that correspond to translation in X, Y and Z, and rotation about X, Y and Z respectively. The value should be 0 (for ignore) or 1. The number of non-zero elements should equal the number of manipulator DOF.

For example when using a 3 DOF manipulator rotation orientation might be unimportant in which case use the option: ‘mask’, [1 1 1 0 0 0].
For robots with 4 or 5 DOF this method is very difficult to use since orientation is specified by \( \mathbf{T} \) in world coordinates and the achievable orientations are a function of the tool position.

**References**


**Notes**

- This has been completely reimplemented in RTB 9.11
- Does NOT require MATLAB Optimization Toolbox.
- Solution is computed iteratively.
- Implements a Levenberg-Marquadt variable step size solver.
- The tolerance is computed on the norm of the error between current and desired tool pose. This norm is computed from distances and angles without any kind of weighting.
- The inverse kinematic solution is generally not unique, and depends on the initial guess \( \mathbf{Q}_0 \) (defaults to 0).
- The default value of \( \mathbf{Q}_0 \) is zero which is a poor choice for most manipulators (eg. puma560, twolink) since it corresponds to a kinematic singularity.
- Such a solution is completely general, though much less efficient than specific inverse kinematic solutions derived symbolically, like \texttt{ikine6s} or \texttt{ikine3}.
- This approach allows a solution to be obtained at a singularity, but the joint angles within the null space are arbitrarily assigned.
- Joint offsets, if defined, are added to the inverse kinematics to generate \( \mathbf{q} \).
- Joint limits are not considered in this solution.
- The ‘search’ option performs a brute-force search with initial conditions chosen from the entire configuration space.
- If the ‘search’ option is used any prismatic joint must have joint limits defined.

**See also**

\texttt{SerialLink.ikcon}, \texttt{SerialLink.ikunc}, \texttt{SerialLink.fkine}, \texttt{SerialLink.ikine6s}
SerialLink.ikine3

Inverse kinematics for 3-axis robot with no wrist

\( q = \text{R.ikine3}(T) \) is the joint coordinates \((1 \times 3)\) corresponding to the robot end-effector pose \( T \) represented by the homogeneous transform. This is an analytic solution for a 3-axis robot (such as the first three joints of a robot like the Puma 560).

\( q = \text{R.ikine3}(T, \text{config}) \) as above but specifies the configuration of the arm in the form of a string containing one or more of the configuration codes:

- ‘l’ arm to the left (default)
- ‘r’ arm to the right
- ‘u’ elbow up (default)
- ‘d’ elbow down

Notes

- The same as IKINE6S without the wrist.
- The inverse kinematic solution is generally not unique, and depends on the configuration string.
- Joint offsets, if defined, are added to the inverse kinematics to generate \( q \).

Trajectory operation

In all cases if \( T \) is a vector of SE3 objects \((1 \times M)\) or a homogeneous transform sequence \((4 \times 4 \times M)\) then returns the joint coordinates corresponding to each of the transforms in the sequence. \( q \) is \( M \times 3 \).

Reference

Inverse kinematics for a PUMA 560 based on the equations by Paul and Zhang From The International Journal of Robotics Research Vol. 5, No. 2, Summer 1986, p. 32-44

Author

Robert Biro with Gary Von McMurray, GTRI/ATRP/IIMB, Georgia Institute of Technology 2/13/95

See also

SerialLink.FKINE, SerialLink.IKINE
SerialLink.ikine6s

Analytical inverse kinematics

\( \mathbf{q} = \text{R.iKINE6S}(\mathbf{T}, \text{config}) \) as above but specifies the configuration of the arm in the form of a string containing one or more of the configuration codes:

- ‘l’ arm to the left (default)
- ‘r’ arm to the right
- ‘u’ elbow up (default)
- ‘d’ elbow down
- ‘n’ wrist not flipped (default)
- ‘f’ wrist flipped (rotated by 180 deg)

Trajectory operation

In all cases if \( \mathbf{T} \) is a vector of SE3 objects \( (1 \times M) \) or a homogeneous transform sequence \( (4 \times 4 \times M) \) then R.ikcon() returns the joint coordinates corresponding to each of the transforms in the sequence.

Notes

- Treats a number of specific cases:
  - Robot with no shoulder offset
  - Robot with a shoulder offset (has lefty/righty configuration)
  - Robot with a shoulder offset and a prismatic third joint (like Stanford arm)
  - The Puma 560 arms with shoulder and elbow offsets (4 lengths parameters)
  - The Kuka KR5 with many offsets (7 length parameters)
- The inverse kinematics for the various cases determined using ikine_sym.
- The inverse kinematic solution is generally not unique, and depends on the configuration string.
- Joint offsets, if defined, are added to the inverse kinematics to generate \( \mathbf{q} \).
- Only applicable for standard Denavit-Hartenberg parameters
Reference


Author

• The Puma560 case: Robert Biro with Gary Von McMurray, GTRI/ATRP/IIMB, Georgia Institute of Technology, 2/13/95

See also

SerialLink.fkine, SerialLink.ikine, SerialLink.ikine_sym

SerialLink.ikine_sym

Symbolic inverse kinematics

$q = \text{R.IKINE\_SYM}(k, \text{options})$ is a cell array ($C \times 1$) of inverse kinematic solutions of the SerialLink object ROBOT. The cells of $q$ represent the different possible configurations. Each cell of $q$ is a vector ($N \times 1$), and the $J^{th}$ element is the symbolic expression for the $J^{th}$ joint angle. The solution is in terms of the desired end-point pose of the robot which is represented by the symbolic matrix ($3 \times 4$) with elements

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
nx & ox & ax & tx \\
ny & oy & ay & ty \\
nz & ox & az & tz
\end{bmatrix}
\]

where the first three columns specify orientation and the last column specifies translation.

$k <= N$ can have only specific values:

• 2 solve for translation $tx$ and $ty$
• 3 solve for translation $tx$, $ty$ and $tz$
• 6 solve for translation and orientation

Options

‘file’, $F$ Write the solution to an m-file named $F$
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Example

```matlab
mdl_planar2
sol = p2.ikine_sym(2);
length(sol)
ans =
   2 % there are 2 solutions
s1 = sol{1} % is one solution
q1 = s1(1); % the expression for q1
q2 = s1(2); % the expression for q2
```

References

- The kinematics of manipulators under computer control, D.L. Pieper, Stanford report AI 72, October 1968.

Notes

- Requires the MATLAB Symbolic Math Toolbox.
- This code is experimental and has a lot of diagnostic prints.
- Based on the classical approach using Pieper’s method.

SerialLink.ikinem

Numerical inverse kinematics by minimization

\[ \mathbf{q} = \text{R.ikinem}(\mathbf{T}) \]

\( \mathbf{q} = \text{R.ikinem}(\mathbf{T}, \mathbf{q}_0, \text{options}) \) specifies the initial estimate of the joint coordinates. 

In all cases if \( \mathbf{T} \) is \( 4 \times 4 \times M \) it is taken as a homogeneous transform sequence and \text{R.ikinem}() returns the joint coordinates corresponding to each of the transforms in the sequence. \( \mathbf{q} \) is \( M \times N \) where \( N \) is the number of robot joints. The initial estimate of \( \mathbf{q} \) for each time step is taken as the solution from the previous time step.

Options

- ‘pweight’, \( P \) weighting on position error norm compared to rotation error (default 1)
- ‘stiffness’, \( S \) Stiffness used to impose a smoothness contraint on joint angles, useful when \( N \) is large (default 0)
- ‘qlimits’ Enforce joint limits
Notes

- PROTOTYPE CODE UNDER DEVELOPMENT, intended to do numerical inverse kinematics with joint limits
- The inverse kinematic solution is generally not unique, and depends on the initial guess \( q_0 \) (defaults to 0).
- The function to be minimized is highly nonlinear and the solution is often trapped in a local minimum, adjust \( q_0 \) if this happens.
- The default value of \( q_0 \) is zero which is a poor choice for most manipulators (eg. puma560, twolink) since it corresponds to a kinematic singularity.
- Such a solution is completely general, though much less efficient than specific inverse kinematic solutions derived symbolically, like ikine6s or ikine3. % - Uses Levenberg-Marquadt minimizer LMFsolve if it can be found, if ‘nolm’ is not given, and ‘qlimits’ false
- The error function to be minimized is computed on the norm of the error between current and desired tool pose. This norm is computed from distances and angles and ‘pweight’ can be used to scale the position error norm to be congruent with rotation error norm.
- This approach allows a solution to obtained at a singularity, but the joint angles within the null space are arbitrarily assigned.
- Joint offsets, if defined, are added to the inverse kinematics to generate \( q \).
- Joint limits become explicit contraints if ‘qlimits’ is set.

See also

fminsearch, fmincon, SerialLink.fkine, SerialLink.ikine, tr2angvec

SerialLink.ikunc

Inverse manipulator by optimization without joint limits

\[
q = \text{R.ikunc}(T, \text{options})
\]

are the joint coordinates \((1 \times N)\) corresponding to the robot end-effector pose \( T \) which is an SE3 object or homogenous transform matrix \((4 \times 4)\), and \( N \) is the number of robot joints. \text{options} is an optional list of name/value pairs than can be passed to fminunc.

\[
[q, \text{err}] = \text{robot.ikunc}(T, \text{options})
\]

as above but also returns \text{err} which is the scalar final value of the objective function.
[
  \text{q.err.exitflag}\] = \text{robot.ikunc(T.options)} as above but also returns the status \text{exitflag}
from \text{fminunc}.

[
  \text{q.err.exitflag}\] = \text{robot.ikunc(T, q0, options)} as above but specify the initial joint
coordinates \text{q0} used for the minimisation.

**Trajectory operation**

In all cases if \( T \) is a vector of SE3 objects \((1 \times M)\) or a homogeneous transform se-
quence \((4 \times 4 \times M)\) then returns the joint coordinates corresponding to each of the
transforms in the sequence. \( q \) is \( M \times N \) where \( N \) is the number of robot joints. The
initial estimate of \( q \) for each time step is taken as the solution from the previous time
step.

\text{err} and \text{exitflag} are also \( M \times 1 \) and indicate the results of optimisation for the corre-
sponding trajectory step.

**Notes**

- Requires \text{fminunc} from the MATLAB Optimization Toolbox.

- Joint limits are not considered in this solution.

- Can be used for robots with arbitrary degrees of freedom.

- In the case of multiple feasible solutions, the solution returned depends on the
initial choice of \text{q0}

- Works by minimizing the error between the forward kinematics of the joint angle
solution and the end-effector frame as an optimisation. The objective function
(error) is described as:

  \[
  \text{sumsqr}( \text{inv}(T) \cdot \text{robot.fkine}(q) - \text{eye}(4)) \ast \text{omega} \]

Where omega is some gain matrix, currently not modifiable.

**Author**

Bryan Moutrie

**See also**

SerialLink.ikcon, fmincon, SerialLink.ikine, SerialLink.fkine
SerialLink.inertia

Manipulator inertia matrix

\( i = R.\text{inertia}(q) \) is the symmetric joint inertia matrix \((N \times N)\) which relates joint torque to joint acceleration for the robot at joint configuration \(q\).

If \(q\) is a matrix \((K \times N)\), each row is interpreted as a joint state vector, and the result is a 3d-matrix \((N \times N \times K)\) where each plane corresponds to the inertia for the corresponding row of \(q\).

Notes

- The diagonal elements \(i(J,J)\) are the inertia seen by joint actuator \(J\).
- The off-diagonal elements \(i(J,K)\) are coupling inertias that relate acceleration on joint \(J\) to force/torque on joint \(K\).
- The diagonal terms include the motor inertia reflected through the gear ratio.

See also

SerialLink.RNE, SerialLink.CINERTIA, SerialLink.ITORQUE

SerialLink.isconfig

Test for particular joint configuration

\( R.\text{isconfig}(s) \) is true if the robot has the joint configuration string given by the string \(s\).

Example:

\[
\text{robot.isconfig('RRRRRR');}
\]

See also

SerialLink.config

SerialLink.isdh

Test if SerialLink object has a standard DH model

\( v = R.\text{isdh}() \) is true if the SerialLink manipulator \(R\) has a standard DH model.
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

See also: ismdh

SerialLink.islimit

Joint limit test

\( v = R.\text{islimit}(q) \) is a vector of boolean values, one per joint, false (0) if \( q(i) \) is within the joint limits, else true (1).

Notes

- Joint limits are not used by many methods, exceptions being:
  - ikcon() to specify joint constraints for inverse kinematics.
  - by plot() for prismatic joints to help infer the size of the workspace

See also

Link.islimit

SerialLink.ismdh

Test if SerialLink object has a modified DH model

\( v = R.\text{ismdh}() \) is true if the SerialLink manipulator R has a modified DH model

See also: isdh

SerialLink.isprismatic

identify prismatic joints

\( X = R.\text{isprismatic} \) is a list of logical variables, one per joint, true if the corresponding joint is prismatic, otherwise false.

See also

Link.isprismatic, SerialLink.isrevolute
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

SerialLink.isrevolute

**identify revolute joints**

\[ X = \text{R.isrevolute} \]

is a list of logical variables, one per joint, true if the corresponding joint is revolute, otherwise false.

See also

Link.isrevolute, SerialLink.isprismatic

SerialLink.isspherical

**Test for spherical wrist**

\[ \text{R.isspherical()} \]

is true if the robot has a spherical wrist, that is, the last 3 axes are revolute and their axes intersect at a point.

See also

SerialLink.ikine6s

SerialLink.issym

**Test if SerialLink object is a symbolic model**

\[ \text{res} = \text{R.issym()} \]

is true if the SerialLink manipulator R has symbolic parameters

Authors

Joern Malzahn, (joern.malzahn@tu-dortmund.de)

SerialLink.itorque

**Inertia torque**

\[ \text{tau}_i = \text{R.itorque}(q, qdd) \]

is the inertia force/torque vector \((1 \times N)\) at the specified joint configuration \(q\) \((1 \times N)\) and acceleration \(qdd\) \((1 \times N)\), and \(N\) is the number of robot joints. \(\text{tau}_i = \text{INERTIA}(q)^*qdd\).
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

If $q$ and $qdd$ are matrices $(K \times N)$, each row is interpreted as a joint state vector, and the result is a matrix $(K \times N)$ where each row is the corresponding joint torques.

**Note**

- If the robot model contains non-zero motor inertia then this will included in the result.

**See also**

SerialLink.inertia, SerialLink.jacob0

---

**SerialLink.jacob0**

**Jacobian in world coordinates**

$j_0 = R.jacob0(q, \text{options})$ is the Jacobian matrix $(6 \times N)$ for the robot in pose $q$ $(1 \times N)$, and $N$ is the number of robot joints. The manipulator Jacobian matrix maps joint velocity to end-effector spatial velocity $V = j_0*QD$ expressed in the world-coordinate frame.

**Options**

- `'rpy'` Compute analytical Jacobian with rotation rate in terms of XYZ roll-pitch-yaw angles
- `'eul'` Compute analytical Jacobian with rotation rates in terms of Euler angles
- `'exp'` Compute analytical Jacobian with rotation rates in terms of exponential coordinates
- `'trans'` Return translational submatrix of Jacobian
- `'rot'` Return rotational submatrix of Jacobian

**Note**

- End-effector spatial velocity is a vector $(6 \times 1)$: the first 3 elements are translational velocity, the last 3 elements are rotational velocity as angular velocity (default), RPY angle rate or Euler angle rate.
- This Jacobian accounts for a base and/or tool transform if set.
- The Jacobian is computed in the end-effector frame and transformed to the world frame.
- The default Jacobian returned is often referred to as the geometric Jacobian.
See also

SerialLink.jacobe, jsingu, deltatr, tr2delta, jsingu

---

**SerialLink.jacob_dot**

**Derivative of Jacobian**

\[ \text{jdq} = R.\text{jacob\_dot}(q, qd) \]

The derivative of Jacobian \( \text{jdq} \) is the product (6 \( \times \) 1) of the derivative of the Jacobian (in the world frame) and the joint rates.

**Notes**

- This term appears in the formulation for operational space control \( XDD = J(q)QDD + JDOT(q)qd \)
- Written as per the reference and not very efficient.

**References**


See also

SerialLink.jacob0, diff2tr, tr2diff

---

**SerialLink.jacobe**

**Jacobian in end-effector frame**

\[ \text{je} = R.\text{jacobe}(q, \text{options}) \]

The Jacobian \( \text{je} \) is the Jacobian matrix (6 \( \times \) \( N \)) for the robot in pose \( q \), and \( N \) is the number of robot joints. The manipulator Jacobian matrix maps joint velocity to end-effector spatial velocity \( V = \text{je}*QD \) in the end-effector frame.
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Options

`trans`    Return translational submatrix of Jacobian
`rot`      Return rotational submatrix of Jacobian

Notes

- Was `jacobn()` is earlier version of the Toolbox.
- This Jacobian accounts for a tool transform if one is set.
- This Jacobian is often referred to as the geometric Jacobian.
- Prior to release 10 this function was named `jacbn`.

References


See also

`SerialLink.jacob0, jsingu, delta2tr, tr2delta`

SerialLink.jointdynamics

Transfer function of joint actuator

`tf = R.jointdynamics(q)` is a vector of N continuous-time transfer function objects that represent the transfer function $1/(J_s+B)$ for each joint based on the dynamic parameters of the robot and the configuration $q$ ($1 \times N$). N is the number of robot joints.

`% tf = R.jointdynamics(q, QD)` as above but include the linearized effects of Coulomb friction when operating at joint velocity $QD$ ($1 \times N$).

Notes

- Coulomb friction is ignored.

See also

`tf, SerialLink.rne`
**SerialLink.jtraj**

**Joint space trajectory**

$q = R.jtraj(T_1, t_2, k, \text{options})$ is a joint space trajectory $(k \times N)$ where the joint coordinates reflect motion from end-effector pose $T_1$ to $t_2$ in $k$ steps, where $N$ is the number of robot joints. $T_1$ and $t_2$ are SE3 objects or homogeneous transformation matrices $(4 \times 4)$. The trajectory $q$ has one row per time step, and one column per joint.

**Options**

- `'ikine'`, $F$ A handle to an inverse kinematic method, for example $F = @p560.ikunc$. Default is $ikine6s()$ for a 6-axis spherical wrist, else $ikine()$.

**Notes**

- Zero boundary conditions for velocity and acceleration are assumed.
- Additional options are passed as trailing arguments to the inverse kinematic function, eg. configuration options like `'ru'`.

**See also**

`jtraj`, `SerialLink.ikine`, `SerialLink.ikine6s`

---

**SerialLink.maniplty**

**Manipulability measure**

$m = R.maniplty(q, \text{options})$ is the manipulability index (scalar) for the robot at the joint configuration $q$ $(1 \times N)$ where $N$ is the number of robot joints. It indicates dexterity, that is, how isotropic the robot’s motion is with respect to the 6 degrees of Cartesian motion. The measure is high when the manipulator is capable of equal motion in all directions and low when the manipulator is close to a singularity.

If $q$ is a matrix $(m \times N)$ then $m (m \times 1)$ is a vector of manipulability indices for each joint configuration specified by a row of $q$.

$[m, c_i] = R.maniplty(q, \text{options})$ as above, but for the case of the Asada measure returns the Cartesian inertia matrix $c_i$.

R.\text{maniplty}(q) displays the translational and rotational manipulability.

Two measures can be computed:
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

- Yoshikawa's manipulability measure is based on the shape of the velocity ellipsoid and depends only on kinematic parameters (default).

- Asada's manipulability measure is based on the shape of the acceleration ellipsoid which in turn is a function of the Cartesian inertia matrix and the dynamic parameters. The scalar measure computed here is the ratio of the smallest/largest ellipsoid axis. Ideally the ellipsoid would be spherical, giving a ratio of 1, but in practice will be less than 1.

Options

'trans' manipulability for transational motion only (default)
'rot' manipulability for rotational motion only
'all' manipulability for all motions
'dof', D is a vector (1 × 6) with non-zero elements if the corresponding DOF is to be included for manipulability
'yoshikawa' use Yoshikawa algorithm (default)
'asada' use Asada algorithm

Notes

- The ‘all’ option includes rotational and translational dexterity, but this involves adding different units. It can be more useful to look at the translational and rotational manipulability separately.

- Examples in the RVC book (1st edition) can be replicated by using the ‘all’ option

References


See also

SerialLink.inertia, SerialLink.jacob0
SerialLink.MDH

Convert standard DH model to modified

\( \text{rmdh} = \text{R.MDH()} \) is a SerialLink object that represents the same kinematics as R but expressed using modified DH parameters.

Notes

- can only be applied to a model expressed with standard DH parameters.

See also: DH

SerialLink.mtimes

Concatenate robots

\( \text{R} = \text{R1} \ast \text{R2} \) is a robot object that is equivalent to mechanically attaching robot R2 to the end of robot R1.

Notes

- If R1 has a tool transform or R2 has a base transform these are discarded since DH convention does not allow for general intermediate transformations.

SerialLink.nofriction

Remove friction

\( \text{rnf} = \text{R.nofriction()} \) is a robot object with the same parameters as R but with non-linear (Coulomb) friction coefficients set to zero.

\( \text{rnf} = \text{R.nofriction(’all’)} \) as above but viscous and Coulomb friction coefficients set to zero.

\( \text{rnf} = \text{R.nofriction(’viscous’)} \) as above but viscous friction coefficients are set to zero.

Notes

- Non-linear (Coulomb) friction can cause numerical problems when integrating the equations of motion (R.fdyn).

  - The resulting robot object has its name string prefixed with ‘NF’.
SerialLink.pay

Joint forces due to payload

\( \mathbf{\tau} = \text{R.PAY}(\mathbf{w}, \mathbf{J}) \) returns the generalised joint force/torques due to a payload wrench \( \mathbf{w} \) (1 \times 6) and where the manipulator Jacobian is \( \mathbf{J} \) (6 \times N), and N is the number of robot joints.

\( \mathbf{\tau} = \text{R.PAY}(\mathbf{q}, \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{f}) \) as above but the Jacobian is calculated at pose \( \mathbf{q} \) (1 \times N) in the frame given by \( \mathbf{f} \) which is ‘0’ for world frame, ‘e’ for end-effector frame.

Uses the formula \( \mathbf{\tau} = \mathbf{J}' \mathbf{w} \), where \( \mathbf{w} \) is a wrench vector applied at the end effector, \( \mathbf{w} = [Fx \; Fy \; Fz \; Mx \; My \; Mz]' \).

Trajectory operation

In the case \( \mathbf{q} \) is \( M \times N \) or \( \mathbf{J} \) is \( 6 \times N \times M \) then \( \mathbf{\tau} \) is \( M \times N \) where each row is the generalised force/torque at the pose given by corresponding row of \( \mathbf{q} \).

Notes

- Wrench vector and Jacobian must be from the same reference frame.
- Tool transforms are taken into consideration when \( \mathbf{f} = \text{‘e’} \).
- Must have a constant wrench - no trajectory support for this yet.

Author

Bryan Moutrie

See also

SerialLink.paycap, SerialLink.jacob0, SerialLink.jacobe
SerialLink.paycap

Static payload capacity of a robot

\[ \text{[wmax, J]} = \text{R.paycap(q, w, f, tlim)} \] returns the maximum permissible payload wrench \( \text{wmax} (1 \times 6) \) applied at the end-effector, and the index of the joint \( \text{J} \) which hits its force/torque limit at that wrench. \( \text{q} (1 \times N) \) is the manipulator pose, \( \text{w} \) the payload wrench \( (1 \times 6) \), \( \text{f} \) the wrench reference frame (either ‘0’ or ‘e’) and \( \text{tlim} (2 \times N) \) is a matrix of joint forces/torques (first row is maximum, second row minimum).

Trajectory operation

In the case \( \text{q} \) is \( M \times N \) then \( \text{wmax} \) is \( M \times 6 \) and \( \text{J} \) is \( M \times 1 \) where the rows are the results at the pose given by corresponding row of \( \text{q} \).

Notes

- Wrench vector and Jacobian must be from the same reference frame
- Tool transforms are taken into consideration for \( \text{f} = \text{‘e’} \).

Author

Bryan Moutrie

See also

SerialLink.pay, SerialLink.gravic, SerialLink.gravload

SerialLink.payload

Add payload mass

\( \text{R.payload(m, p)} \) adds a payload with point mass \( \text{m} \) at position \( \text{p} \) in the end-effector coordinate frame.

\( \text{R.payload(0)} \) removes added payload

Notes

- An added payload will affect the inertia, Coriolis and gravity terms.
- Sets, rather than adds, the payload. Mass and CoM of the last link is overwritten.
See also

SerialLink.rne, SerialLink.gravload

**SerialLink.perturb**

**Perturb robot parameters**

\[ \mathbf{r}_p = \mathbf{R}\text{.perturb}(\mathbf{p}) \] is a new robot object in which the dynamic parameters (link mass and inertia) have been perturbed. The perturbation is multiplicative so that values are multiplied by random numbers in the interval \((1 - p)\) to \((1 + p)\). The name string of the perturbed robot is prefixed by ‘\(p\)’.

Useful for investigating the robustness of various model-based control schemes. For example to vary parameters in the range +/- 10 percent is:

\[
\mathbf{r}_2 = \mathbf{p560}\text{.perturb}(0.1);
\]

See also

SerialLink.rne

**SerialLink.plot**

**Graphical display and animation**

\[ \mathbf{R}\text{.plot}(\mathbf{q}, \text{options}) \] displays a graphical animation of a robot based on the kinematic model. A stick figure polyline joins the origins of the link coordinate frames. The robot is displayed at the joint angle \(\mathbf{q} (1 \times N)\), or if a matrix \((M \times N)\) it is animated as the robot moves along the \(M\)-point trajectory.

**Options**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>‘workspace’, W</td>
<td>Size of robot 3D workspace, (W = [xmn, xmx ymn ymx zmn zmx])</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘floorlevel’, L</td>
<td>Z-coordinate of floor (default -1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘delay’, D</td>
<td>Delay between frames for animation (s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘fps’, fps</td>
<td>Number of frames per second for display, inverse of ‘delay’ option</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘[no]loop’</td>
<td>Loop over the trajectory forever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘[no]raise’</td>
<td>Autoraise the figure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘movie’, M</td>
<td>Save an animation to the movie (M)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘trail’, L</td>
<td>Draw a line recording the tip path, with line style (L). (L) can be a cell array, eg. {'r', 'LineWidth', 2}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Robotics Toolbox 10.3.1 for MATLAB©357

Copyright ©Peter Corke 2018
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

'scale', S Annotation scale factor
'zoom', Z Reduce size of auto-computed workspace by Z, makes robot look bigger
'ortho' Orthographic view
'perspective' Perspective view (default)
'view', V Specify view V='x', 'y', 'top' or [az el] for side elevations, plan view, or general view by azimuth and elevation angle.
'top' View from the top.

'no shading' Enable Gouraud shading (default true)
'lightpos', L Position of the light source (default [0 0 20])
'no name' Display the robot's name

'no wrist' Enable display of wrist coordinate frame
'xyz' Wrist axis label is XYZ
'noa' Wrist axis label is NOA
'no arrow' Display wrist frame with 3D arrows

'no tiles' Enable tiled floor (default true)
'tiles', S Side length of square tiles on the floor (default 0.2)
'tile1color', C Color of even tiles [r g b] (default [0.5 1 0.5] light green)
'tile2color', C Color of odd tiles [r g b] (default [1 1 1] white)

'no shadow' Enable display of shadow (default true)
'shadowcolor', C Colorspec of shadow, [r g b]
'shadowwidth', W Width of shadow line (default 6)

'no axes' Enable display of joint axes (default false)
'no jvec' Enable display of joint axis vectors (default false)
'no joints' Enable display of joints
'jointcolor', C Colorspec for joint cylinders (default [0.7 0 0])
'pjointcolor', C Colorspec for prismatic joint boxes (default [0.4 1 .03])
'jointdiam', D Diameter of joint cylinder in scale units (default 5)

'linkcolor', C Colorspec of links (default 'b')

'no base' Enable display of base 'pedestal'
'basecolor', C Color of base (default 'k')
'basewidth', W Width of base (default 3)

The options come from 3 sources and are processed in order:

- Cell array of options returned by the function PLOTBOTOPT (if it exists)
- Cell array of options given by the 'plotopt' option when creating the SerialLink object.
- List of arguments in the command line.

Many boolean options can be enabled or disabled with the ‘no’ prefix. The various option sources can toggle an option, the last value encountered is used.

Graphical annotations and options

The robot is displayed as a basic stick figure robot with annotations such as:

- shadow on the floor
• XYZ wrist axes and labels
• joint cylinders and axes

which are controlled by options.

The size of the annotations is determined using a simple heuristic from the workspace dimensions. This dimension can be changed by setting the multiplicative scale factor using the ‘mag’ option.

**Figure behaviour**

- If no figure exists one will be created and the robot drawn in it.
- If no robot of this name is currently displayed then a robot will be drawn in the current figure. If hold is enabled (hold on) then the robot will be added to the current figure.
- If the robot already exists then that graphical model will be found and moved.

**Multiple views of the same robot**

If one or more plots of this robot already exist then these will all be moved according to the argument \( \mathbf{q} \). All robots in all windows with the same name will be moved.

Create a robot in figure 1

```matlab
figure(1)
p560.plot(qz);
```

Create a robot in figure 2

```matlab
figure(2)
p560.plot(qz);
```

Now move both robots

```matlab
p560.plot(qn)
```

**Multiple robots in the same figure**

Multiple robots can be displayed in the same plot by using “hold on” before calls to robot.plot().

Create a robot in figure 1

```matlab
figure(1)
p560.plot(qz);
```

Make a clone of the robot named bob

```matlab
bob = SerialLink(p560, 'name', 'bob');
```

Draw bob in this figure

```matlab
hold on
bob.plot(qn)
```
 CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

To animate both robots so they move together:

```matlab
tqg = jtraj(qr, qz, 100);
for q=tqg'
p560.plot(q');
bob.plot(q');
end
```

Making an animation

The ‘movie’ **options** saves the animation as a movie file or separate frames in a folder

- ‘movie’, ‘file.mp4’ saves as an MP4 movie called file.mp4
- ‘movie’, ‘folder’ saves as files NNNN.png into the specified folder
  - The specified folder will be created
  - NNNN are consecutive numbers: 0000, 0001, 0002 etc.
  - To convert frames to a movie use a command like:
    ```bash
    ffmpeg -r 10 -i %04d.png out.avi
    ```

Notes

- The **options** are processed when the figure is first drawn, to make different **options** come into effect it is neccessary to clear the figure.
- The link segments do not neccessarily represent the links of the robot, they are a pipe network that joins the origins of successive link coordinate frames.
- Delay betwen frames can be eliminated by setting option ‘delay’, 0 or ‘fps’, Inf.
- By default a quite detailed **plot** is generated, but turning off labels, axes, shadows etc. will speed things up.
- Each graphical robot object is tagged by the robot’s name and has UserData that holds graphical handles and the handle of the robot object.
- The graphical state holds the last joint configuration
- The size of the **plot** volume is determined by a heuristic for an all-revolute robot. If a prismatic joint is present the ‘workspace’ option is required. The ‘zoom’ option can reduce the size of this workspace.

See also

- SerialLink.plot3d, plotbotopt, SerialLink.animate, SerialLink.teach
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

SerialLink.plot3d

Graphical display and animation of solid model robot

R.plot3d(q, options) displays and animates a solid model of the robot. The robot is displayed at the joint angle q (1 × N), or if a matrix (M × N) it is animated as the robot moves along the M-point trajectory.

Options

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>'color', C</td>
<td>A cell array of color names, one per link. These are mapped to RGB using colorname(). If not given, colors come from the axis ColorOrder property.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'alpha', A</td>
<td>Set alpha for all links, 0 is transparent, 1 is opaque (default 1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'path', P</td>
<td>Overide path to folder containing STL model files</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'workspace', W</td>
<td>Size of robot 3D workspace, W = [xmin, xmax ymin ymx zmin zmx]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'floorlevel', L</td>
<td>Z-coordinate of floor (default -1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'delay', D</td>
<td>Delay between frames for animation (s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'fps', fps</td>
<td>Number of frames per second for display, inverse of ‘delay’ option</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'[no]loop'</td>
<td>Loop over the trajectory forever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'[no]raise'</td>
<td>Autoraise the figure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'movie', M</td>
<td>Save frames as files in the folder M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'trail', L</td>
<td>Draw a line recording the tip path, with line style L. L can be a cell array, eg. {'r', 'LineWidth', 2}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'scale', S</td>
<td>Annotation scale factor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'ortho'</td>
<td>Orthographic view (default)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'perspective'</td>
<td>Perspective view</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'view', V</td>
<td>Specify view V='x', 'y', 'top' or [az el] for side elevations, plan view, or general view by azimuth and elevation angle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'[no]wrist'</td>
<td>Enable display of wrist coordinate frame</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'xyz'</td>
<td>Wrist axis label is XYZ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'noa'</td>
<td>Wrist axis label is NOA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'[no]arrow'</td>
<td>Display wrist frame with 3D arrows</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'[no]tiles'</td>
<td>Enable tiled floor (default true)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'tilesize', S</td>
<td>Side length of square tiles on the floor (default 0.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'tile1color', C</td>
<td>Color of even tiles [r g b] (default [0.5 1 0.5] light green)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'tile2color', C</td>
<td>Color of odd tiles [r g b] (default [1 1 1] white)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'[no]axes'</td>
<td>Enable display of joint axes (default true)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'[no]joints'</td>
<td>Enable display of joints</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'[no]base'</td>
<td>Enable display of base shape</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

- Solid models of the robot links are required as STL files (ascii or binary) with extension .stl.
- The solid models live in RVCTOOLS/robot/data/ARTE.

Robotics Toolbox 10.3.1 for MATLAB®361 Copyright ©Peter Corke 2018
Each STL model is called ‘linkN’.stl where N is the link number 0 to N

The specific folder to use comes from the SerialLink.model3d property

The path of the folder containing the STL files can be overridden using the ‘path’ option

The height of the floor is set in decreasing priority order by:
  – ‘workspace’ option, the fifth element of the passed vector
  – ‘floorlevel’ option
  – the lowest z-coordinate in the link1.stl object

Making an animation

The ‘movie’ options saves the animation as a movie file or separate frames in a folder
  – ‘movie’,‘file.mp4’ saves as an MP4 movie called file.mp4
  – ‘movie’,‘folder’ saves as files NNNN.png into the specified folder

  – The specified folder will be created
  – NNNN are consecutive numbers: 0000, 0001, 0002 etc.
  – To convert frames to a movie use a command like:

    ffmpeg -r 10 -i %04d.png out.avi

Authors

  – Peter Corke, based on existing code for plot().
  – Bryan Moutrie, demo code on the Google Group for connecting ARTE and RTB.

Acknowledgments

  – STL files are from ARTE: A ROBOTICS TOOLBOX FOR EDUCATION by Arturo Gil (https://arvc.umh.es/arte) are included, with permission.
  – The various authors of STL reading code on file exchange, see stlRead.m

See also

SerialLink.plot, plotbotopt3d, SerialLink.animate, SerialLink.teach, stlRead
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

SerialLink.plus

Append a link objects to a robot

R+L is a SerialLink object formed appending a deep copy of the Link L to the SerialLink robot R.

Notes

- The link L can belong to any of the Link subclasses.
- Extends to arbitrary number of objects, eg. R+L1+L2+L3+L4.

See also

Link.plus

SerialLink.qmincon

Use redundancy to avoid joint limits

\( q_s = R.\text{qmincon}(q) \) exploits null space motion and returns a set of joint angles \( q_s \) \((1 \times N)\) that result in the same end-effector pose but are away from the joint coordinate limits. \( N \) is the number of robot joints.

\([q, err] = R.\text{qmincon}(q)\) as above but also returns \( err \) which is the scalar final value of the objective function.

\([q, err, exitflag] = R.\text{qmincon}(q)\) as above but also returns the status \( exitflag \) from fmincon.

Trajectory operation

In all cases if \( q \) is \( M \times N \) it is taken as a pose sequence and \( R.\text{qmincon}() \) returns the adjusted joint coordinates \( (M \times N) \) corresponding to each of the poses in the sequence.

\( err \) and \( exitflag \) are also \( M \times 1 \) and indicate the results of optimisation for the corresponding trajectory step.

Notes

- Requires fmincon from the MATLAB Optimization Toolbox.
- Robot must be redundant.
Inverse dynamics

\[ \tau = R.\text{rne}(q, qd, qdd, \text{options}) \]

is the joint torque required for the robot \( R \) to achieve the specified joint position \( q \) \((1 \times N)\), velocity \( qd \) \((1 \times N)\) and acceleration \( qdd \) \((1 \times N)\), where \( N \) is the number of robot joints.

\[ \tau = R.\text{rne}(x, \text{options}) \] as above where \( x = [q, qd, qdd] \) \((1 \times 3N)\).

\[ \begin{bmatrix} \tau, wbase \end{bmatrix} = R.\text{rne}(x, \text{grav, fext}) \] as above but the extra output is the wrench on the base.

Options

- ‘gravity’, \( G \) specify gravity acceleration (default \([0,0,9.81]\))
- ‘fext’, \( W \) specify wrench acting on the end-effector \( W = [Fx Fy Fz Mx My Mz] \)
- ‘slow’ do not use MEX file

Trajectory operation

If \( q, qd \) and \( qdd \) \((M \times N)\), or \( x \) \((M \times 3N)\) are matrices with \( M \) rows representing a trajectory then \( \tau \) \((M \times N)\) is a matrix with rows corresponding to each trajectory step.

MEX file operation

This algorithm is relatively slow, and a MEX file can provide better performance. The MEX file is executed if:

- the ‘slow’ option is not given, and
- the robot is not symbolic, and
- the SerialLink property fast is true, and
- the MEX file frne.mexXXX exists in the subfolder rvctools/robot/mex.
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Notes

• The torque computed contains a contribution due to armature inertia and joint friction.
• See the README file in the mex folder for details on how to configure MEX-file operation.
• The M-file is a wrapper which calls either RNE_DH or RNE_MDH depending on the kinematic conventions used by the robot object, or the MEX file.
• If a model has no dynamic parameters set the result is zero.

See also

SerialLink.accel, SerialLink.gravload, SerialLink.inertia

SerialLink.teach

Graphical teach pendant

Allow the user to “drive” a graphical robot using a graphical slider panel.

R.teach(options) adds a slider panel to a current robot plot.

R.teach(q, options) as above but the robot joint angles are set to q (1 × N).

Options

‘eul’ Display tool orientation in Euler angles (default)
‘rpy’ Display tool orientation in roll/pitch/yaw angles
‘approach’ Display tool orientation as approach vector (z-axis)
‘[no]deg’ Display angles in degrees (default true)
‘callback’, CB Set a callback function, called with robot object and joint angle vector: CB(R, q)

Example

To display the velocity ellipsoid for a Puma 560

p560.teach(’callback’, @(r,q) r.vellipse(q));

GUI

• The specified callback function is invoked every time the joint configuration changes. the joint coordinate vector.
• The Quit (red X) button removes the teach panel from the robot plot.

Notes

• If the robot is displayed in several windows, only one has the teach panel added.
• All currently displayed robots move as the sliders are adjusted.
• The slider limits are derived from the joint limit properties. If not set then for
  – a revolute joint they are assumed to be [-pi, +pi]
  – a prismatic joint they are assumed unknown and an error occurs.

See also

SerialLink.plot, SerialLink.getpos

SerialLink.todegrees

Convert joint angles to degrees

\[ q_2 = R.todegrees(q) \]

\( q_2 \) is a vector of joint coordinates where those elements corresponding to revolute joints are converted from radians to degrees. Elements corresponding to prismatic joints are copied unchanged.

See also

SerialLink.toradians

SerialLink.toradians

Convert joint angles to radians

\[ q_2 = R.toradians(q) \]

\( q_2 \) is a vector of joint coordinates where those elements corresponding to revolute joints are converted from degrees to radians. Elements corresponding to prismatic joints are copied unchanged.

See also

SerialLink.todegrees
SerialLink.trchain

Convert to elementary transform sequence

\( s = R.\text{TRCHAIN}(\text{options}) \) is a sequence of elementary transforms that describe the kinematics of the serial link robot arm. The string \( s \) comprises a number of tokens of the form \( X(\text{ARG}) \) where \( X \) is one of \( T_x, T_y, T_z, R_x, R_y, \) or \( R_z \). \( \text{ARG} \) is a joint variable, or a constant angle or length dimension.

For example:

```
>> mdl_puma560
>> p560.trchain
ans =
Rz(q1)Rx(90)Rz(q2)Tx(0.431800)Rz(q3)Tz(0.150050)Tx(0.020300)Rx(-90)
Rz(q4)Tz(0.431800)Rx(90)Rz(q5)Rx(-90)Rz(q6)
```

Options

- ‘[no]deg’ Express angles in degrees rather than radians (default deg)
- ‘sym’ Replace length parameters by symbolic values \( L_1, L_2 \) etc.

See also

trchain, trotx, troty, trotz, transl, DHFactor

SerialLink.twists

Joint axis twists

\( [\mathbf{tw}, \mathbf{T}_0] = R.\text{twists}(\mathbf{q}) \) is a vector of Twist objects \( (1 \times N) \) that represent the axes of the joints for the robot with joint coordinates \( \mathbf{q} (1 \times N) \). \( \mathbf{T}_0 \) is an SE3 object representing the pose of the tool.

\( [\mathbf{tw}, \mathbf{T}_0] = R.\text{twists}() \) as above but the joint coordinates are taken to be zero.

Notes

\( \mathbf{tw}, \mathbf{T}_0 \) is the product of exponential representation of the robot’s forward kinematics:

\[
\prod( [\mathbf{tw}.\exp(\mathbf{q}) \mathbf{T}_0] )
\]

See also

Twist

Robotics Toolbox 10.3.1 for MATLAB® 367 Copyright ©Peter Corke 2018
SerialLink.vellipse

Velocity ellipsoid for seriallink manipulator

R.vellipse(q, options) displays the velocity ellipsoid for the robot R at pose q. The ellipsoid is centered at the tool tip position.

Options

- ‘2d’ Ellipse for translational xy motion, for planar manipulator
- ‘trans’ Ellipsoid for translational motion (default)
- ‘rot’ Ellipsoid for rotational motion

Display options as per plot_ellipse to control ellipsoid face and edge color and transparency.

Example

To interactively update the velocity ellipsoid while using sliders to change the robot’s pose:

    robot.teach('callback', @(r,q) r.vellipse(q))

Notes

- The ellipsoid is tagged with the name of the robot prepended to ".vellipse".
- Calling the function with a different pose will update the ellipsoid.

See also

SerialLink.jacob0, SerialLink.fellipse, plot_ellipse

simulinkext

Return file extension of Simulink block diagrams.

str = simulinkext() is either

- ‘.mdl’ if Simulink version number is less than 8
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Notes

The file extension for Simulink block diagrams has changed from Matlab 2011b to Matlab 2012a. This function is used for backwards compatibility.

Author

Joern Malzahn, (joern.malzahn@tu-dortmund.de)

See also

symexpr2slblock, doesblockexist, distributeblocks

---

**skew**

Create skew-symmetric matrix

\[ s = \text{skew}(v) \] is a skew-symmetric matrix formed from \( v \).

If \( v \) (1 \times 1) then \( s = \)
\[
\begin{bmatrix}
0 & -v \\
v & 0
\end{bmatrix}
\]

and if \( v \) (1 \times 3) then \( s = \)
\[
\begin{bmatrix}
0 & -v_z & v_y \\
v_z & 0 & -v_x \\
-v_y & v_x & 0
\end{bmatrix}
\]

Notes

- This is the inverse of the function VEX().
- These are the generator matrices for the Lie algebras so(2) and so(3).

References

See also

skew, vex

skewa

Create augmented skew-symmetric matrix

\[ s = \text{skewa}(v) \] is an augmented skew-symmetric matrix formed from \( v \).

If \( v \) \((1 \times 3)\) then \( s = \)

\[
| 0 & -v3 & v1 |
| v3 & 0 & v2 |
| 0 & 0 & 0 |
\]

and if \( v \) \((1 \times 6)\) then \( s = \)

\[
| 0 & -v6 & v5 & v1 |
| v6 & 0 & -v4 & v2 |
| -v5 & v4 & 0 & v3 |
| 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 |
\]

Notes

- This is the inverse of the function VEXA().
- These are the generator matrices for the Lie algebras \( \text{se}(2) \) and \( \text{se}(3) \).
- Map twist vectors in 2D and 3D space to \( \text{se}(2) \) and \( \text{se}(3) \).

References


See also

skew, vex, Twist
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

SO2

Representation of 2D rotation

This subclass of RTBPose is an object that represents an SO(2) rotation.

Constructor methods

- SO2: general constructor
- SO2.exp: exponentiate an so(2) matrix
- SO2.rand: random orientation
- new: new SO2 object

Information and test methods

- dim*: returns 2
- isSE*: returns false
- issym*: true if rotation matrix has symbolic elements
- isa: check if matrix is SO2

Display and print methods

- plot*: graphically display coordinate frame for pose
- animate*: graphically animate coordinate frame for pose
- print*: print the pose in single line format
- display*: print the pose in human readable matrix form
- char*: convert to human readable matrix as a string

Operation methods

- det: determinant of matrix component
- eig: eigenvalues of matrix component
- log: logarithm of rotation matrix
- inv: inverse
- simplify*: apply symbolic simplication to all elements
- interp: interpolate between rotations

Conversion methods

- check: convert object or matrix to SO2 object
- theta: return rotation angle

Robotics Toolbox 10.3.1 for MATLAB©371       Copyright ©Peter Corke 2018
double convert to rotation matrix
R convert to rotation matrix
SE2 convert to SE2 object with zero translation
T convert to homogeneous transformation matrix with zero translation

**Compatibility methods**

- isrot2* returns true
- ishomog2* returns false
- trprint2* print single line representation
- trplot2* plot coordinate frame

- tranimate2* animate coordinate frame

* means inherited from RTBPose

**Operators**

- + elementwise addition, result is a matrix
- - elementwise subtraction, result is a matrix
- multiplication within group, also group x vector
- / multiply by inverse
- == test equality
- ≠ test inequality

**See also**

SE2, SO3, SE3, RTBPose

### SO2

**Construct an SO(2) object**

- \( p = \text{SO2}() \) is an \( \text{SO2} \) object representing null rotation.
- \( p = \text{SO2}(\text{theta}) \) is an \( \text{SO2} \) object representing rotation of \( \text{theta} \) radians. If \( \text{theta} \) is a vector (N) then \( p \) is a vector of objects, corresponding to the elements of \( \text{theta} \).
- \( p = \text{SO2}(\text{theta}, \text{'deg'}) \) as above but with \( \text{theta} \) degrees.
- \( p = \text{SO2}(\text{R}) \) is an \( \text{SO2} \) object formed from the rotation matrix \( \text{R} \) \( (2 \times 2) \)
- \( p = \text{SO2}(\text{T}) \) is an \( \text{SO2} \) object formed from the rotational part of the homogeneous transformation matrix \( \text{T} \) \( (3 \times 3) \)
\texttt{p = SO2(Q)} is an SO2 object that is a copy of the SO2 object Q. \%

\textbf{See also}
\begin{itemize}
  \item rot2, SE2, SO3
\end{itemize}

\subsubsection*{SO2\texttt{.angle}}
\textbf{Rotation angle}
\begin{align*}
  \texttt{theta = P.angle()} \text{ is the rotation angle, in radians, associated with the SO2 object P.}
\end{align*}

\subsubsection*{SO2\texttt{.char}}
\textbf{Convert to string}
\begin{align*}
  \texttt{s = P.char()} \text{ is a string containing rotation matrix elements.}
\end{align*}

\textbf{See also}
\begin{itemize}
  \item RTB.display
\end{itemize}

\subsubsection*{SO2\texttt{.check}}
\textbf{Convert to SO2}
\begin{align*}
  \texttt{q = SO2.check(x)} \text{ is an SO2 object where } x \text{ is SO2, } 2 \times 2, \text{ SE2 or } 3 \times 3 \text{ homogeneous transformation matrix.}
\end{align*}

\subsubsection*{SO2\texttt{.det}}
\textbf{Determinant of SO2 object}
\begin{align*}
  \texttt{det(p)} \text{ is the determinant of the SO2 object } p \text{ and should always be +1.}
\end{align*}
SO2.eig

Eigenvalues and eigenvectors

\( E = \text{eig}(p) \) is a column vector containing the eigenvalues of the the rotation matrix of the SO2 object \( p \).

\([v,d] = \text{eig}(p)\) produces a diagonal matrix \( d \) of eigenvalues and a full matrix \( v \) whose columns are the corresponding eigenvectors so that \( A*v = v*d \).

See also

eig

SO2.exp

Construct SO2 object from Lie algebra

\( p = \text{SO2.exp}(so2) \) creates an SO2 object by exponentiating the se(2) argument (2 × 2).

SO2.interp

Interpolate between SO2 objects

\( \text{P1.interp}(p2, s) \) is an SO2 object representing interpolation between rotations represented by SO2 objects P1 and \( p2 \). \( s \) varies from 0 (P1) to 1 (\( p2 \)). If \( s \) is a vector (1 × \( N \)) then the result will be a vector of SO2 objects.

Notes

- It is an error if \( S \) is outside the interval 0 to 1.

See also

SO2.angle
SO2.inv

Inverse of SO2 object

\( q = \text{inv}(p) \) is the inverse of the SO2 object \( p \). \( p^* q \) will be the identity matrix.

Notes

- This is simply the transpose of the matrix.

SO2.isa

Test if matrix is SO(2)

\( \text{SO2.isa}(T) \) is true (1) if the argument \( T \) is of dimension \( 2 \times 2 \) or \( 2 \times 2 \times N \), else false (0).

\( \text{SO2.isa}(T, \text{true}) \) as above, but also checks the validity of the rotation matrix, ie. its determinant is +1.

Notes

- The first form is a fast, but incomplete, test for a transform in SE(3).

See also

SO3.ISA, SE2.ISA, SE2.ISA, ishomog2

SO2.log

Lie algebra

\( \text{so2} = P.\log() \) is the Lie algebra skew-symmetric matrix (\( 2 \times 2 \)) corresponding to the SO2 object \( P \).
**SO2.new**

**Construct a new object of the same type**

\[ p_2 = P.\text{new}(x) \] creates a new object of the same type as \( P \), by invoking the \( \text{SO2} \) constructor on the matrix \( x \ (2 \times 2) \).

\[ p_2 = P.\text{new}() \] as above but defines a null motion.

**Notes**

- Serves as a dynamic constructor.
- This method is polymorphic across all RTBPose derived classes, and allows easy creation of a new object of the same class as an existing one.

**See also**

SE3.new, SO3.new, SE2.new

**SO2.R**

**Get rotation matrix**

\[ R = P.\text{R}() \] is the rotation matrix \((2 \times 2)\) associated with the \( \text{SO2} \) object \( P \). If \( P \) is a vector \((1 \times N)\) then \( R \ (2 \times 2 \times N) \) is a stack of rotation matrices, with the third dimension corresponding to the index of \( P \).

**See also**

SO2.T

**SO2.rand**

**Construct a random \( \text{SO}(2) \) object**

\( \text{SO2.rand}() \) is an \( \text{SO2} \) object with a uniform random orientation. Random numbers are in the interval 0 to 1.
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

See also

rand

SO2.SE2

Convert to SE2 object

\( q = \text{P.SE2}() \) is an SE2 object formed from the rotational component of the SO2 object \( P \) and with a zero translational component.

See also

SE2

SO2.T

Get homogeneous transformation matrix

\( T = \text{P.T}() \) is the homogeneous transformation matrix \((3 \times 3)\) associated with the SO2 object \( P \), and has zero translational component. If \( P \) is a vector \((1 \times N)\) then \( T \) \((3 \times 3 \times N)\) is a stack of rotation matrices, with the third dimension corresponding to the index of \( P \).

See also

SO2.T

SO2.theta

Rotation angle

\( \text{theta} = \text{P.theta}() \) is the rotation angle, in radians, associated with the SO2 object \( P \).

Notes

- Deprecated, use angle() instead.
SO3

Representation of 3D rotation

This subclass of RTBPose is an object that represents an SO(3) rotation

Constructor methods

- SO3: general constructor
- SO3.exp: exponentiate an so(3) matrix
- SO3.angvec: rotation about vector
- SO3.eul: rotation defined by Euler angles
- SO3.oa: rotation defined by o- and a-vectors
- SO3.rpy: rotation defined by roll-pitch-yaw angles
- SO3.Rx: rotation about x-axis
- SO3.Ry: rotation about y-axis
- SO3.Rz: rotation about z-axis
- SO3.rand: random orientation
- new: new SO3 object

Information and test methods

- dim*: returns 3
- isSE*: returns false
- issym*: true if rotation matrix has symbolic elements

Display and print methods

- plot*: graphically display coordinate frame for pose
- animate*: graphically animate coordinate frame for pose
- print*: print the pose in single line format
- display*: print the pose in human readable matrix form
- char*: convert to human readable matrix as a string

Operation methods

- det: determinant of matrix component
- eig: eigenvalues of matrix component
- log: logarithm of rotation matrix
- inv: inverse
- simplify*: apply symbolic simplication to all elements
- interp: interpolate between rotations

Robotics Toolbox 10.3.1 for MATLAB® 378 Copyright ©Peter Corke 2018
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Conversion methods

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SO3.check</td>
<td>convert object or matrix to SO3 object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>theta</td>
<td>return rotation angle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>double</td>
<td>convert to rotation matrix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R</td>
<td>convert to rotation matrix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SE3</td>
<td>convert to SE3 object with zero translation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T</td>
<td>convert to homogeneous transformation matrix with zero translation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UnitQuaternion</td>
<td>convert to UnitQuaternion object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>toangvec</td>
<td>convert to rotation about vector form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>toeul</td>
<td>convert to Euler angles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>torpy</td>
<td>convert to roll-pitch-yaw angles</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Compatibility methods

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>isrot*</td>
<td>returns true</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ishomog*</td>
<td>returns false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trprint*</td>
<td>print single line representation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trplot*</td>
<td>plot coordinate frame</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tranimate*</td>
<td>animate coordinate frame</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tr2eul</td>
<td>convert to Euler angles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tr2rpy</td>
<td>convert to roll-pitch-yaw angles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trnorm</td>
<td>normalize the rotation matrix</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Static methods

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>check</td>
<td>convert object or matrix to SO2 object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exp</td>
<td>exponentiate an so(3) matrix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isa</td>
<td>check if matrix is (3 \times 3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>angvec</td>
<td>rotation about vector</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eul</td>
<td>rotation defined by Euler angles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oa</td>
<td>rotation defined by o- and a-vectors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rpy</td>
<td>rotation defined by roll-pitch-yaw angles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rx</td>
<td>rotation about x-axis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ry</td>
<td>rotation about y-axis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rz</td>
<td>rotation about z-axis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* means inherited from RTBPose

Operators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>+</td>
<td>elementwise addition, result is a matrix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>elementwise subtraction, result is a matrix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>multiplication within group, also group x vector</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Robotics Toolbox 10.3.1 for MATLAB©379

Copyright ©Peter Corke 2018
multiplication within group followed by normalization
/
multiply by inverse
./
multiply by inverse followed by normalization
==
test equality
≠
test inequality

Properties

n normal (x) vector
o orientation (y) vector
a approach (z) vector

See also
SE2, SO2, SE3, RTBPose

SO3.SO3

Construct an SO(2) object

\[ p = \text{SO3}(\cdot) \] is an SO3 object representing null rotation.

\[ p = \text{SO3}(R) \] is an SO3 object formed from the rotation matrix \( R \) \((3 \times 3)\)

\[ p = \text{SO3}(T) \] is an SO3 object formed from the rotational part of the homogeneous transformation matrix \( T \) \((4 \times 4)\)

\[ p = \text{SO3}(Q) \] is an SO3 object that is a copy of the SO3 object \( Q \).%

See also
SE3, SO2

SO3.angvec

Construct an SO(3) object from angle and axis vector

\[ R = \text{SO3.angvec}(\text{theta}, v) \] is an orthonormal rotation matrix \((3 \times 3)\) equivalent to a rotation of \( \text{theta} \) about the vector \( v \).
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Notes

- If \( \theta = 0 \) then return identity matrix.
- If \( \theta \neq 0 \) then \( v \) must have a finite length.

See also

SE3.angvec, eul2r, rpy2r, tr2angvec

SO3.check

Convert to SO3

\[ q = \text{SO3.check}(x) \] is an SO3 object where \( x \) is SO3 object or 3 \( \times \) 3 orthonormal rotation matrix.

SO3.det

Determinant of SO3 object

\[ \text{det}(p) \] is the determinant of the SO3 object \( p \) and should always be +1.

SO3.eig

Eigenvalues and eigenvectors

\[ E = \text{eig}(p) \] is a column vector containing the eigenvalues of the the rotation matrix of the SO3 object \( p \).

\[ [v,d] = \text{eig}(p) \] produces a diagonal matrix \( d \) of eigenvalues and a full matrix \( v \) whose columns are the corresponding eigenvectors so that \( A^*v = v^*d \).

See also

eig

Robotics Toolbox 10.3.1 for MATLAB® 381 Copyright ©Peter Corke 2018
SO3.eul

Construct an SO(3) object from Euler angles

\[ p = \text{SO3.eul}(\phi, \theta, \psi, \text{options}) \]

is an \text{SO3} object equivalent to the specified Euler angles. These correspond to rotations about the Z, Y, Z axes respectively. If \( \phi, \theta, \psi \) are column vectors (\( N \times 1 \)) then they are assumed to represent a trajectory then \( p \) is a vector (\( 1 \times N \)) of \text{SO3} objects.

\( R = \text{SO3.eul}([\phi \ \theta \ \psi], \text{options}) \)

as above but the Euler angles are taken from consecutive columns of the passed matrix \( \text{eul} = [\phi \ \theta \ \psi] \). If \( \text{eul} \) is a matrix (\( N \times 3 \)) then they are assumed to represent a trajectory then \( p \) is a vector (\( 1 \times N \)) of \text{SO3} objects.

Options

- ‘deg’  
  Compute angles in degrees (radians default)

Note

- The vectors \( \phi, \theta, \psi \) must be of the same length.

See also

\text{SO3.rpy, SE3.eul, eul2tr, rpy2tr, tr2eul}

SO3.exp

Construct \text{SO3} object from Lie algebra

\[ p = \text{SO3.exp}(\text{so2}) \]

creates an \text{SO3} object by exponentiating the se(2) argument (\( 2 \times 2 \)).

SO3.get.a

Get approach vector

\( P:a \) is the approach vector (\( 3 \times 1 \)), the third column of the rotation matrix, which is the \( z \)-axis unit vector.
Chapter 2. Functions and Classes

See also
SO3.n, SO3.o

SO3.get.n
Get normal vector

Pₙ is the normal vector (3 × 1), the first column of the rotation matrix, which is the x-axis unit vector.

See also
SO3.o, SO3.a

SO3.get.o
Get orientation vector

Pₒ is the orientation vector (3 × 1), the second column of the rotation matrix, which is the y-axis unit vector.

See also
SO3.n, SO3.a

SO3.interp
Interpolate between SO3 objects

P₁ interp(p₂, s) is a SO3 object representing a slerp interpolation between rotations represented by SO3 objects P₁ and p₂. s varies from 0 (P₁) to 1 (p₂). If s is a vector (1 × N) then the result will be a vector of SO3 objects.

P₁ interp(p₂, n) as above but returns a vector (1 × n) of SO3 objects interpolated between P₁ and p₂ in n steps.

Notes

• It is an error if S is outside the interval 0 to 1.

Robotics Toolbox 10.3.1 for MATLAB® 383
Copyright © Peter Corke 2018
See also

UnitQuaternion

**SO3.inv**

Inverse of SO3 object

$q = \text{inv}(p)$ is the inverse of the SO3 object $p$. $p^*q$ will be the identity matrix.

**Notes**

- This is simply the transpose of the matrix.

**SO3.isa**

Test if a rotation matrix

$\text{SO3.ISA}(R)$ is true (1) if the argument is of dimension $3 \times 3$ or $3 \times 3 \times N$, else false (0).

$\text{SO3.ISA}(R, \text{'valid'})$ as above, but also checks the validity of the rotation matrix.

**Notes**

- The first form is a fast, but incomplete, test for a rotation in SO(3).

See also

SE3.ISA, SE2.ISA, SO2.ISA

**SO3.log**

Lie algebra

$\text{se2} = \text{P.log}()$ is the Lie algebra augmented skew-symmetric matrix $(3 \times 3)$ corresponding to the SE2 object P.
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

See also

SE2.Twist, trlog

SO3.new

Construct a new object of the same type

\( p_2 = P.\text{new}(x) \) creates a new object of the same type as \( P \), by invoking the SO3 constructor on the matrix \( x \) (3 × 3).

\( p_2 = P.\text{new}() \) as above but defines a null rotation.

Notes

- Serves as a dynamic constructor.
- This method is polymorphic across all RTBPose derived classes, and allows easy creation of a new object of the same class as an existing one.

See also

SE3.new, SO2.new, SE2.new

SO3.oa

Construct an SO(3) object from orientation and approach vectors

\( p = \text{SO3.oa}(o, a) \) is an SO3 object for the specified orientation and approach vectors (3 × 1) formed from 3 vectors such that \( R = [N \ o \ a] \) and \( N = o \times a \).

Notes

- The rotation matrix is guaranteed to be orthonormal so long as \( o \) and \( a \) are not parallel.
- The vectors \( o \) and \( a \) are parallel to the Y- and Z-axes of the coordinate frame.
References


See also

rpy2r, eul2r, oa2tr, SE3.oa

SO3.R

Get rotation matrix

\[ \mathbf{R} = \mathbf{P}.R() \] is the rotation matrix (3 × 3) associated with the \texttt{SO3} object \( \mathbf{P} \). If \( \mathbf{P} \) is a vector (1 × \( N \)) then \( \mathbf{R} \) (3 × 3 × \( N \)) is a stack of rotation matrices, with the third dimension corresponding to the index of \( \mathbf{P} \).

See also

SO3.T

SO3.rand

Construct a random SO(3) object

\texttt{SO3.rand()} is an \texttt{SO3} object with a uniform random RPY/ZYX orientation. Random numbers are in the interval 0 to 1.

See also

rand, UnitQuaternion.rand

SO3.rdivide

Compound SO3 object with inverse and normalize

\( \mathbf{P}/\mathbf{Q} \) is the composition, or matrix multiplication of \texttt{SO3} object \( \mathbf{P} \) by the inverse of \texttt{SO3} object \( \mathbf{Q} \). If either of \( \mathbf{P} \) or \( \mathbf{Q} \) are vectors, then the result is a vector where each element is the product of the object scalar and the corresponding element in the object.
vector. If both P and Q are vectors they must be of the same length, and the result is
the elementwise product of the two vectors.

See also

SO3.mrdivide, SO3.times, tnorm

SO3.rpy

Construct an SO(3) object from roll-pitch-yaw angles

\[ p = \text{SO3.rpy}(\text{roll}, \text{pitch}, \text{yaw}, \text{options}) \]

is an \textbf{SO3} object equivalent to the specified roll, pitch, yaw angles angles. These correspond to rotations about the Z, Y, X axes respectively. If \text{roll}, \text{pitch}, \text{yaw} are column vectors \((N \times 1)\) then they are assumed to represent a trajectory then \(p\) is a vector \((1 \times N)\) of \textbf{SO3} objects.

\[ p = \text{SO3.rpy}(rpy, \text{options}) \]

as above but the roll, pitch, yaw angles angles are taken from consecutive columns of the passed matrix \(rpy = [\text{roll}, \text{pitch}, \text{yaw}]\). If \(rpy\) is a matrix \((N \times 3)\) then they are assumed to represent a trajectory and \(p\) is a vector \((1 \times N)\) of \textbf{SO3} objects.

Options

‘deg’ Compute angles in degrees (radians default)
‘xyz’ Rotations about X, Y, Z axes (for a robot gripper)
‘yxz’ Rotations about Y, X, Z axes (for a camera)

See also

SO3.eul, SE3.rpy, tr2rpy, eul2tr

SO3.Rx

Rotation about X axis

\[ p = \text{SO3.Rx}(\text{theta}) \]

is an \textbf{SO3} object representing a rotation of \text{theta} radians about the x-axis. If the \text{theta} is a vector \((1 \times N)\) then \(p\) will be a vector \((1 \times N)\) of corresponding \textbf{SO3} objects.

\[ p = \text{SO3.Rx}(\text{theta}, \text{‘deg’}) \]

as above but \text{theta} is in degrees.
See also

SO3.Ry, SO3.Rz, rotx

SO3.Ry

Rotation about Y axis

\[ p = \text{SO3.Ry}(\text{theta}) \]

is an \textbf{SO3} object representing a rotation of \textbf{theta} radians about the y-axis. If the \textbf{theta} is a vector (1 \times N) then \textbf{p} will be a vector (1 \times N) of corresponding \textbf{SO3} objects.

\[ p = \text{SO3.Ry}(\text{theta}, \text{'deg'}) \]
as above but \textbf{theta} is in degrees.

See also

SO3.Rx, SO3.Rz, roty

SO3.Rz

Rotation about Z axis

\[ p = \text{SO3.Rz}(\text{theta}) \]

is an \textbf{SO3} object representing a rotation of \textbf{theta} radians about the z-axis. If the \textbf{theta} is a vector (1 \times N) then \textbf{p} will be a vector (1 \times N) of corresponding \textbf{SO3} objects.

\[ p = \text{SO3.Rz}(\text{theta}, \text{'deg'}) \]
as above but \textbf{theta} is in degrees.

See also

SO3.Rx, SO3.Ry, rotz

SO3.SE3

Convert to SE3 object

\[ q = \text{P.SE3}() \]

is an \textbf{SE3} object with a rotational component given by the \textbf{SO3} object \textbf{P}, and with a zero translational component. If \textbf{P} is a vector of \textbf{SO3} objects then \textbf{q} will a same length vector of \textbf{SE3} objects.
See also
SE3

SO3.T

Get homogeneous transformation matrix

$T = P.T()$ is the homogeneous transformation matrix ($4 \times 4$) associated with the SO3 object $P$, and has zero translational component. If $P$ is a vector ($1 \times N$) then $T$ ($4 \times 4 \times N$) is a stack of rotation matrices, with the third dimension corresponding to the index of $P$.

See also
SO3.T

SO3.times

Compound SO3 objects and normalize

$R = P.*Q$ is an SO3 object representing the composition of the two rotations described by the SO3 objects $P$ and $Q$, which is matrix multiplication of their orthonormal rotation matrices followed by normalization.

If either, or both, of $P$ or $Q$ are vectors, then the result is a vector.

If $P$ is a vector ($1 \times N$) then $R$ is a vector ($1 \times N$) such that $R(i) = P(i).*Q(i)$.

If $Q$ is a vector ($1 \times N$) then $R$ is a vector ($1 \times N$) such that $R(i) = P.*Q(i)$.

If both $P$ and $Q$ are vectors ($1 \times N$) then $R$ is a vector ($1 \times N$) such that $R(i) = P(i).*R(i)$.

See also
RTBPose.mtimes, SO3.divide, tmnorm

SO3.toangvec

Convert to angle-vector form

$[\text{theta},v] = P.toangvec(\text{options})$ is rotation expressed in terms of an angle $\text{theta}$ ($1 \times 1$) about the axis $v$ ($1 \times 3$) equivalent to the rotational part of the SO3 object $P$. 
If \( P \) is a vector \((1 \times N)\) then \( \text{theta} \) \((K \times 1)\) is a vector of angles for corresponding elements of the vector and \( \text{v} \) \((K \times 3)\) are the corresponding axes, one per row.

### Options

- ‘deg’  
  Return angle in degrees

### Notes

- If no output arguments are specified the result is displayed.

### See also

angvec2r, angvec2tr, trlog

---

**SO3.toeul**

**Convert to Euler angles**

\( \text{eul} = \text{P.toeul}(\text{options}) \) are the ZYZ Euler angles \((1 \times 3)\) corresponding to the rotational part of the \( \text{SO3} \) object \( P \). The 3 angles \( \text{eul}=[\text{PHI},\text{THETA},\text{PSI}] \) correspond to sequential rotations about the Z, Y and Z axes respectively.

If \( P \) is a vector \((1 \times N)\) then each row of \( \text{eul} \) corresponds to an element of the vector.

### Options

- ‘deg’  
  Compute angles in degrees (radians default)
- ‘flip’  
  Choose first Euler angle to be in quadrant 2 or 3.

### Notes

- There is a singularity for the case where \( \text{THETA}=0 \) in which case \( \text{PHI} \) is arbitrarily set to zero and \( \text{PSI} \) is the sum \((\text{PHI}+\text{PSI})\).

### See also

SO3.torpy, eul2tr, tr2rpy
SO3.torpy

Convert to roll-pitch-yaw angles

\texttt{rpy} = \texttt{P.torpy(options)} are the roll-pitch-yaw angles (1 \times 3) corresponding to the rotational part of the \texttt{SO3} object \texttt{P}. The 3 angles \texttt{rpy}=[R,P,Y] correspond to sequential rotations about the Z, Y and X axes respectively.

If \texttt{P} is a vector (1 \times N) then each row of \texttt{rpy} corresponds to an element of the vector.

\textbf{Options}

- ‘deg’ Compute angles in degrees (radians default)
- ‘xyz’ Return solution for sequential rotations about X, Y, Z axes
- ‘yxz’ Return solution for sequential rotations about Y, X, Z axes

\textbf{Notes}

- There is a singularity for the case where \texttt{P}=\pi/2 in which case \texttt{R} is arbitrarily set to zero and \texttt{Y} is the sum (\texttt{R}+\texttt{Y}).

\textbf{See also}

SO3.toeul, rpy2tr, tr2eul

SO3.tr2eul

Convert to Euler angles (compatibility)

\texttt{rpy} = \texttt{P.tr2eul(options)} is a vector (1 \times 3) of ZYZ Euler angles equivalent to the rotation \texttt{P} (\texttt{SO3} object).

\textbf{Notes}

- Overrides the classic RTB function \texttt{tr2eul} for an SO3 object.
- All the options of \texttt{tr2eul} apply.

\textbf{See also}

\texttt{tr2eul}
**SO3.tr2rpy**

Convert to RPY angles (compatibility)

\[
\text{rpy} = P.\text{tr2rpy}(\text{options})\text{ is a vector (1} \times 3\text{) of roll-pitch-yaw angles equivalent to the rotation } P \text{ (SO3 object).}
\]

Notes

- Overrides the classic RTB function \text{tr2rpy} for an SO3 object.
- All the options of \text{tr2rpy} apply.
- Defaults to ZYX order.

**See also**

\text{tr2rpy}

---

**SO3.trnorm**

Normalize rotation (compatibility)

\[
R = P.\text{trnorm}()\text{ is an SO3 object equivalent to } P \text{ but normalized (guaranteed to be orthogonal).}
\]

Notes

- Overrides the classic RTB function \text{trnorm} for an SO3 object.

**See also**

\text{trnorm}

---

**SO3.UnitQuaternion**

Convert to UnitQuaternion object

\[
q = P.\text{UnitQuaternion}()\text{ is a UnitQuaternion object equivalent to the rotation described by the SO3 object } P.
\]
startup_rtb

Initialize MATLAB paths for Robotics Toolbox

Adds demos, data, and examples to the MATLAB path, and adds also to Java class path.

Notes

- This sets the paths for the current session only.
- To make the settings persistent across sessions you can:
  - Add this script to your MATLAB startup.m script.
  - After running this script run PATHTOOL and save the path.

See also

path, addpath, pathtool, javaaddpath

stlRead

reads any STL file not depending on its format

[v, f, n, name] = stlread(fileName) reads the STL format file (ASCII or binary) and returns vertices V, faces F, normals N and NAME is the name of the STL object (NOT the name of the STL file).

Authors

- Copyright (c) 2015, Pau Mico
symexpr2slblock

Create symbolic embedded MATLAB Function block

symexpr2slblock(varargin) creates an Embedded MATLAB Function block from a symbolic expression. The input arguments are just as used with the functions emlBlock or matlabFunctionBlock.

Notes

- In Symbolic Toolbox versions prior to V5.7 (2011b) the function to create Embedded Matlab Function blocks from symbolic expressions is ‘emlBlock’.
- Since V5.7 (2011b) there is another function named ‘matlabFunctionBlock’ which replaces the old function.
- symexpr2slblock is a wrapper around both functions, which checks for the installed Symbolic Toolbox version and calls the required function accordingly.

Authors

Joern Malzahn, (joern.malzahn@tu-dortmund.de)

See also

emlBlock, matlabFunctionBlock

t2r

Rotational submatrix

\[ R = t2r(T) \] is the orthonormal rotation matrix component of homogeneous transformation matrix \( T \). Works for \( T \) in SE(2) or SE(3)

- If \( T \) is \( 4 \times 4 \), then \( R \) is \( 3 \times 3 \).
• If $T$ is $3 \times 3$, then $R$ is $2 \times 2$.

Notes

• For a homogeneous transform sequence $(K \times K \times N)$ returns a rotation matrix sequence $(K-1 \times K-1 \times N)$.
• The validity of rotational part is not checked

See also

r2t, tr2rt, rt2tr

---

**tb_optparse**

Standard option parser for Toolbox functions

optout = tb_optparse(opt, arglist) is a generalized option parser for Toolbox functions. opt is a structure that contains the names and default values for the options, and arglist is a cell array containing option parameters, typically it comes from V ARARGIN. It supports options that have an assigned value, boolean or enumeration types (string or int).

The software pattern is:

```matlab
function(a, b, c, varargin)
    opt.foo = false;
    opt.bar = true;
    opt.blah = [];
    opt.choose = ['this', 'that', 'other'];
    opt.select = ['#no', '#yes'];
    opt.old = '@foo';
    opt = tb_optparse(opt, varargin);
```

Optional arguments to the function behave as follows:

- `'foo'` sets opt.foo := true
- `'nobar'` sets opt.foo := false
- `'blah', 3` sets opt.blah := 3
- `'blah', {x,y}` sets opt.blah := {x,y}
- `'that'` sets opt.choose := 'that'
- `'yes'` sets opt.select := (the second element)
- `'stuff', 5` sets opt.stuff to {5}
- `'stuff', {'k',3}` sets opt.stuff to {'k',3}
- `'old'` is the same as foo
and can be given in any combination.

If neither of ‘this’, ‘that’ or ‘other’ are specified then opt.choose := ‘this’. Alternatively if:

```matlab
    opt.choose = {{}, 'this', 'that', 'other'};
```

then if neither of ‘this’, ‘that’ or ‘other’ are specified then opt.choose := []

If neither of ‘no’ or ‘yes’ are specified then opt.select := 1.

Note:
- That the enumerator names must be distinct from the field names.
- That only one value can be assigned to a field, if multiple values are required they must placed in a cell array.
- To match an option that starts with a digit, prefix it with ‘d_’, so the field ‘d_3d’ matches the option ‘3d’.
- opt can be an object, rather than a structure, in which case the passed options are assigned to properties.

The return structure is automatically populated with fields: verbose and debug. The following options are automatically parsed:

- ‘verbose’ sets opt.verbose := true
- ‘verbose=2’ sets opt.verbose := 2 (very verbose)
- ‘verbose=3’ sets opt.verbose := 3 (extremely verbose)
- ‘verbose=4’ sets opt.verbose := 4 (ridiculously verbose)
- ‘debug’, N sets opt.debug := N
- ‘showopt’ displays opt and arglist
- ‘setopt’, S sets opt := S, if S.foo=4, and opt.foo is present, then opt.foo is set to 4.

The allowable options are specified by the names of the fields in the structure opt. By default if an option is given that is not a field of opt an error is declared.

- [optout,args] = tb_optparse(opt, arglist) as above but returns all the unassigned options, those that don’t match anything in opt, as a cell array of all unassigned arguments in the order given in arglist.
- [optout,args,ls] = tb_optparse(opt, arglist) as above but if any unmatched option looks like a MATLAB LineSpec (eg. ‘r:’) it is placed in ls rather than in args.
- [objout,args,ls] = tb_optparse(opt, arglist, obj) as above but properties of obj with matching names in opt are set.

Note

- Any input argument or element of the opt struct can be a string instead of a char array.
**tpoly**

Generate scalar polynomial trajectory

\[ s, \, sd, \, sdd \] = \texttt{tpoly}(s0, \, sf, \, m) \] is a scalar trajectory \((m \times 1)\) that varies smoothly from \(s0\) to \(sf\) in \(m\) steps using a quintic (5th order) polynomial. Velocity and acceleration can be optionally returned as \(sd\) \((m \times 1)\) and \(sdd\) \((m \times 1)\) respectively.

\texttt{tpoly}(s0, \, sf, \, m) as above but plots \(s, \, sd\) and \(sdd\) versus time in a single figure.

\[ s, \, sd, \, sdd \] = \texttt{tpoly}(s0, \, sf, \, T) \] as above but the trajectory is computed at each point in the time vector \(T\) \((m \times 1)\).

\[ s, \, sd, \, sdd \] = \texttt{tpoly}(s0, \, sf, \, T, \, qd0, \, qd1) \] as above but also specifies the initial and final velocity of the trajectory.

**Notes**

- If \(m\) is given
  - Velocity is in units of distance per trajectory step, not per second.
  - Acceleration is in units of distance per trajectory step squared, not per second squared.
- If \(T\) is given then results are scaled to units of time.
- The time vector \(T\) is assumed to be monotonically increasing, and time scaling is based on the first and last element.

**Reference:**

Robotics, Vision & Control Chap 3 Springer 2011

**See also**

lspb, jtraj

---

**tr2angvec**

Convert rotation matrix to angle-vector form

\[ \theta, \, v \] = \texttt{tr2angvec}(R, \, \text{options}) \] is rotation expressed in terms of an angle \(\theta\) \((1 \times 1)\) about the axis \(v\) \((1 \times 3)\) equivalent to the orthonormal rotation matrix \(R\) \((3 \times 3)\).

\[ \theta, \, v \] = \texttt{tr2angvec}(T, \, \text{options}) \] as above but uses the rotational part of the homogeneous transform \(T\) \((4 \times 4)\).
If \( R \) (3 \times 3 \times K) or \( T \) (4 \times 4 \times K) represent a sequence then \( \theta \) (\( K \times 1 \)) is a vector of angles for corresponding elements of the sequence and \( v \) (\( K \times 3 \)) are the corresponding axes, one per row.

**Options**

‘deg’    Return angle in degrees

**Notes**

- For an identity rotation matrix both \( \theta \) and \( v \) are set to zero.
- The rotation angle is always in the interval \([0, \pi]\), negative rotation is handled by inverting the direction of the rotation axis.
- If no output arguments are specified the result is displayed.

**See also**

angvec2r, angvec2tr, trlog

---

**tr2delta**

Convert homogeneous transform to differential motion

\[ d = \text{tr2delta}(T_0, T_1) \] is the differential motion (6 \times 1) corresponding to infinitesimal motion (in the \( T_0 \) frame) from pose \( T_0 \) to \( T_1 \) which are homogeneous transformations (4 \times 4) or SE3 objects. \( d=(dx, dy, dz, dRx, dRy, dRz) \).

\[ d = \text{tr2delta}(T) \] as above but the motion is with respect to the world frame.

**Notes**

- \( d \) is only an approximation to the motion \( T \), and assumes that \( T_0 \approx T_1 \) or \( T \approx \text{eye}(4,4) \).
- can be considered as an approximation to the effect of spatial velocity over a a time interval, average spatial velocity multiplied by time.

**Reference**

tr2eul

Convert homogeneous transform to Euler angles

eul = tr2eul(T, options) are the ZYZ Euler angles (1 x 3) corresponding to the rotational part of a homogeneous transform T (4 x 4). The 3 angles eul=[PHI,THETA,PSI] correspond to sequential rotations about the Z, Y and Z axes respectively.

eul = tr2eul(R, options) as above but the input is an orthonormal rotation matrix R (3 x 3).

If R (3 x 3 x K) or T (4 x 4 x K) represent a sequence then each row of eul corresponds to a step of the sequence.

Options

'deg'  Compute angles in degrees (radians default)
'flip'  Choose first Euler angle to be in quadrant 2 or 3.

Notes

- There is a singularity for the case where THETA=0 in which case PHI is arbitrarily set to zero and PSI is the sum (PHI+PSI).

- Translation component is ignored.

See also
eul2tr, tr2rpy
tr2jac

Jacobian for differential motion

$J = \text{tr2jac}(\text{tab})$ is a Jacobian matrix ($6 \times 6$) that maps spatial velocity or differential motion from frame $\{A\}$ to frame $\{B\}$ where the pose of $\{B\}$ relative to $\{A\}$ is represented by the homogeneous transform $\text{tab}$ ($4 \times 4$).

$J = \text{tr2jac}(\text{tab}, \text{‘samebody’})$ is a Jacobian matrix ($6 \times 6$) that maps spatial velocity or differential motion from frame $\{A\}$ to frame $\{B\}$ where both are attached to the same moving body. The pose of $\{B\}$ relative to $\{A\}$ is represented by the homogeneous transform $\text{tab}$ ($4 \times 4$).

See also

wtrans, tr2delta, delta2tr, SE3.velxform

tr2rpy

Convert a homogeneous transform to roll-pitch-yaw angles

$\text{rpy} = \text{tr2rpy}(\text{T}, \text{options})$ are the roll-pitch-yaw angles ($1 \times 3$) corresponding to the rotation part of a homogeneous transform $\text{T}$. The 3 angles $\text{rpy}=[R,P,Y]$ correspond to sequential rotations about the Z, Y and X axes respectively. Roll and yaw angles in $[-\pi, \pi)$ while pitch angle in $[-\pi/2, \pi/2)$.

$\text{rpy} = \text{tr2rpy}(\text{R}, \text{options})$ as above but the input is an orthonormal rotation matrix $\text{R}$ ($3 \times 3$).

If $\text{R}$ ($3 \times 3 \times K$) or $\text{T}$ ($4 \times 4 \times K$) represent a sequence then each row of $\text{rpy}$ corresponds to a step of the sequence.

Options

‘deg’ Compute angles in degrees (radians default)
‘xyz’ Return solution for sequential rotations about X, Y, Z axes
‘zyx’ Return solution for sequential rotations about Z, Y, X axes (default)
‘yxz’ Return solution for sequential rotations about Y, X, Z axes
‘arm’ Return solution for sequential rotations about X, Y, Z axes

‘vehicle’ Return solution for sequential rotations about Z, Y, X axes
‘camera’ Return solution for sequential rotations about Y, X, Z axes
Notes

• There is a singularity for the case where \( P=\pi/2 \) in which case \( R \) is arbitrarily set to zero and \( Y \) is the sum \((R+Y)\).
• Translation component is ignored.
• Toolbox rel 8-9 has XYZ angle sequence as default.
• ‘arm’, ‘vehicle’, ‘camera’ are synonyms for ‘xyz’, ‘zyx’ and ‘yxz’ respectively.

See also

rpy2tr, tr2eul

---

tr2rt

Convert homogeneous transform to rotation and translation

\([R,t] = \text{tr2rt}(T)\) splits a homogeneous transformation matrix \((N \times N)\) into an orthonormal rotation matrix \(R (M \times M)\) and a translation vector \(t (M \times 1)\), where \(N=M+1\).

Works for \(T\) in \(SE(2)\) or \(SE(3)\)

• If \(T\) is \(4 \times 4\), then \(R\) is \(3 \times 3\) and \(T\) is \(3 \times 1\).
• If \(T\) is \(3 \times 3\), then \(R\) is \(2 \times 2\) and \(T\) is \(2 \times 1\).

A homogeneous transform sequence \(T\) \((N \times N \times K)\) is split into rotation matrix sequence \(R \) \((M \times M \times K)\) and a translation sequence \(t \) \((K \times M)\).

Notes

• The validity of \(R\) is not checked.

See also

rt2tr, r2t, t2r
**tranimate**

**Animate a coordinate frame**

**tranimate**(p1, p2, options) animates a 3D coordinate frame moving from pose X1 to pose X2. Poses X1 and X2 can be represented by:

- homogeneous transformation matrices (4 × 4)
- orthonormal rotation matrices (3 × 3)

**tranimate**(x, options) animates a coordinate frame moving from the identity pose to the pose x represented by any of the types listed above.

**tranimate**(xseq, options) animates a trajectory, where xseq is any of

- homogeneous transformation matrix sequence (4 × 4 × N)
- orthonormal rotation matrix sequence (3 × 3 × N)

**Options**

- `fps`, fps Number of frames per second to display (default 10)
- `nsteps`, n The number of steps along the path (default 50)
- `axis`, A Axis bounds [xmin, xmax, ymin, ymax, zmin, zmax]
- `movie`, M Save frames as a movie or sequence of frames
- `cleanup` Remove the frame at end of animation
- `noxyz` Don’t label the axes
- `rgb` Color the axes in the order x=red, y=green, z=blue
- `retain` Retain frames, don’t animate

Additional options are passed through to TRPLOT.

**Notes**

- Uses the Animate helper class to record the frames.

**See also**

trplot, Animate, SE3.animate
tranimate2

Animate a coordinate frame

tranimate2(p1, p2, options) animates a 3D coordinate frame moving from pose X1 to pose X2. Poses X1 and X2 can be represented by:
- homogeneous transformation matrices (4 × 4)
- orthonormal rotation matrices (3 × 3)

tranimate2(x, options) animates a coordinate frame moving from the identity pose to the pose x represented by any of the types listed above.

tranimate2(xseq, options) animates a trajectory, where xseq is any of
- homogeneous transformation matrix sequence (4 × 4 × N)
- orthonormal rotation matrix sequence (3 × 3 × N)

Options

- ‘fps’, fps: Number of frames per second to display (default 10)
- ‘nsteps’, n: The number of steps along the path (default 50)
- ‘axis’, A: Axis bounds [xmin, xmax, ymin, ymax, zmin, zmax]
- ‘movie’, M: Save frames as a movie or sequence of frames
- ‘cleanup’: Remove the frame at end of animation
- ‘noxyz’: Don’t label the axes
- ‘rgb’: Color the axes in the order x=red, y=green, z=blue
- ‘retain’: Retain frames, don’t animate

Additional options are passed through to TRPLOT.

Notes

- Uses the Animate helper class to record the frames.

See also

trplot, Animate, SE3.animate
transl

Create or unpack an SE(3) translational homogeneous transform

Create a translational SE(3) matrix

\[ T = \text{transl}(x, y, z) \] is an SE(3) homogeneous transform (4 \times 4) representing a pure translation of \( x, y \) and \( z \).

\[ T = \text{transl}(p) \] is an SE(3) homogeneous transform (4 \times 4) representing a translation of \( p = [x, y, z] \). If \( p \ (M \times 3) \) it represents a sequence and \( T \ (4 \times 4 \times M) \) is a sequence of homogeneous transforms such that \( T(:,:,i) \) corresponds to the \( i^{th} \) row of \( p \).

Extract the translational part of an SE(3) matrix

\[ p = \text{transl}(T) \] is the translational part of a homogeneous transform \( T \) as a 3-element column vector. If \( T \ (4 \times 4 \times M) \) is a homogeneous transform sequence the rows of \( p \ (M \times 3) \) are the translational component of the corresponding transform in the sequence.

\[ [x, y, z] = \text{transl}(T) \] is the translational part of a homogeneous transform \( T \) as three components. If \( T \ (4 \times 4 \times M) \) is a homogeneous transform sequence then \( x, y, z \ (1 \times M) \) are the translational components of the corresponding transform in the sequence.

Notes

- Somewhat unusually this function performs a function and its inverse. An historical anomaly.

See also

SE3.t, SE3.transl

transl2

Create or unpack an SE(2) translational homogeneous transform

Create a translational SE(2) matrix

\[ T = \text{transl2}(x, y) \] is an SE(2) homogeneous transform (3 \times 3) representing a pure translation.
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

\( T = \text{transl2}(p) \) is a homogeneous transform representing a translation or point \( p=[x,y] \). If \( p \) \((M \times 2)\) it represents a sequence and \( T \) \((3 \times 3 \times M)\) is a sequence of homogeneous transforms such that \( T(:,:,i) \) corresponds to the \( i^{th} \) row of \( p \).

**Extract the translational part of an SE(2) matrix**

\( p = \text{transl2}(T) \) is the translational part of a homogeneous transform as a 2-element column vector. If \( T \) \((3 \times 3 \times M)\) is a homogeneous transform sequence the rows of \( p \) \((M \times 2)\) are the translational component of the corresponding transform in the sequence.

**Notes**
- Somewhat unusually this function performs a function and its inverse. An historical anomaly.

**See also**
- \( \text{SE2.t} \), \( \text{rot2} \), \( \text{ishomog2} \), \( \text{trplot2} \), \( \text{transl} \)

---

**trchain**

**Chain 3D transforms from string**

\( T = \text{trchain}(s, q) \) is a homogeneous transform \((4 \times 4)\) that results from compounding a number of elementary transformations defined by the string \( s \). The string \( s \) comprises a number of tokens of the form \( X(\text{ARG}) \) where \( X \) is one of \( Tx, Ty, Tz, Rx, Ry, \) or \( Rz \). \( \text{ARG} \) is the name of a variable in MATLAB workspace or \( qJ \) where \( J \) is an integer in the range 1 to \( N \) that selects the variable from the \( J^{th} \) column of the vector \( q \) \((1 \times N)\).

For example:
\[
\text{trchain}('Rx(q1)Tx(a1)Ty(q2)Ty(a3)Rz(q3)', [1 2 3])
\]

is equivalent to computing:
\[
\text{trotx}(1) \ast \text{transl}(a1,0,0) \ast \text{troty}(2) \ast \text{transl}(0,a3,0) \ast \text{trotz}(3)
\]

**Notes**
- Variables list in the string must exist in the caller workspace.
- The string can contain spaces between elements, or on either side of \( \text{ARG} \).
- Works for symbolic variables in the workspace and/or passed in via the vector \( q \).

Robotics Toolbox 10.3.1 for MATLAB® ©2018 Copyright ©Peter Corke 2018
• For symbolic operations that involve use of the value pi, make sure you define it first in the workspace: \( \text{pi} = \text{sym}(\text{‘pi’}); \)

**See also**

trchain2, trotx, troty, trotz, transl, SerialLink.trchain, ets

---

**trchain2**

**Chain 2D transforms from string**

\( T = \text{trchain2}(s, q) \) is a homogeneous transform \((3 \times 3)\) that results from compounding a number of elementary transformations defined by the string \( s \). The string \( s \) comprises a number of tokens of the form \( X(\text{ARG}) \) where \( X \) is one of \( T_x, T_y \) or \( R \). \( \text{ARG} \) is the name of a variable in MATLAB workspace or \( q_\text{J} \) where \( J \) is an integer in the range 1 to \( N \) that selects the variable from the \( J \)th column of the vector \( q \) \((1 \times N)\).

For example:

\[
\text{trchain(‘R(q1)Tx(a1)R(q2)Ty(a3)R(q3)’, [1 2 3])}
\]

is equivalent to computing:

\[
\text{trot2(1) * transl2(a1,0) * trot2(2) * transl2(0,a3) * trot2(3)}
\]

**Notes**

• The string can contain spaces between elements or on either side of \( \text{ARG} \).

• Works for symbolic variables in the workspace and/or passed in via the vector \( q \).

• For symbolic operations that involve use of the value \( \text{pi} \), make sure you define it first in the workspace: \( \text{pi} = \text{sym}(\text{‘pi’}); \)

**See also**

trchain, trot2, transl2
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

\textbf{trexp}

\textit{matrix exponential for so(3) and se(3)}

\textbf{For so(3)}

\[ R = \text{trexp}(\omega) \] is the matrix exponential (3 × 3) of the so(3) element \( \omega \) that yields a rotation matrix (3 × 3).

\[ R = \text{trexp}(\omega, \theta) \] as above, but so(3) motion of \( \theta \omega \).

\[ R = \text{trexp}(s, \theta) \] as above, but rotation of \( \theta \) about the unit vector \( s \).

\[ R = \text{trexp}(w) \] as above, but the so(3) value is expressed as a vector \( w \) (1 × 3) where \( w = s \theta \). Rotation by \( ||w|| \) about the vector \( w \).

\textbf{For se(3)}

\[ T = \text{trexp}(\sigma) \] is the matrix exponential (4 × 4) of the se(3) element \( \sigma \) that yields a homogeneous transformation matrix (4 × 4).

\[ T = \text{trexp}(\mathbf{tw}) \] as above, but the se(3) value is expressed as a twist vector \( \mathbf{tw} \) (1 × 6).

\[ T = \text{trexp}(\sigma, \theta) \] as above, but se(3) motion of \( \sigma \theta \), the rotation part of \( \sigma \) (4 × 4) must be unit norm.

\[ T = \text{trexp}(\mathbf{tw}, \theta) \] as above, but se(3) motion of \( \mathbf{tw} \theta \), the rotation part of \( \mathbf{tw} \) (1 × 6) must be unit norm.

\textbf{Notes}

\begin{itemize}
\item Efficient closed-form solution of the matrix exponential for arguments that are so(3) or se(3).
\item If \( \theta \) is given then the first argument must be a unit vector or a skew-symmetric matrix from a unit vector.
\item Angle vector argument order is different to ANGVEC2R.
\end{itemize}

\textbf{References}

\begin{itemize}
\item “Mechanics, planning and control” Park & Lynch, Cambridge, 2017.
\end{itemize}
See also

angvec2r, trlog, trexp2, skew, skewa, Twist

trexp2

matrix exponential for so(2) and se(2)

SO(2)

$$R = \text{trexp2}(\omega)$$ is the matrix exponential $$(2 \times 2)$$ of the so(2) element $$\omega$$ that yields a rotation matrix $$(2 \times 2)$$.  

$$R = \text{trexp2}(\theta)$$ as above, but rotation by $$\theta$$ $$(1 \times 1)$$.

SE(2)

$$T = \text{trexp2}(\sigma)$$ is the matrix exponential $$(3 \times 3)$$ of the se(2) element $$\sigma$$ that yields a homogeneous transformation matrix $$(3 \times 3)$$.  

$$T = \text{trexp2}(\mathbf{tw})$$ as above, but the se(2) value is expressed as a vector $$\mathbf{tw}$$ $$(1 \times 3)$$.

$$T = \text{trexp2}(\sigma, \theta)$$ as above, but se(2) rotation of $$\sigma \theta$$, the rotation part of $$\sigma$$ $$(3 \times 3)$$ must be unit norm.

$$T = \text{trexp}((\mathbf{tw}, \theta))$$ as above, but se(2) rotation of $$\mathbf{tw} \theta$$, the rotation part of $$\mathbf{tw}$$ must be unit norm.

Notes

- Efficient closed-form solution of the matrix exponential for arguments that are so(2) or se(2).

- If $$\theta$$ is given then the first argument must be a unit vector or a skew-symmetric matrix from a unit vector.

References


CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

See also
texp, skew, skewa, Twist

trinterp

Interpolate SE(3) homogeneous transformations

\[ T = \text{trinterp}(T_0, T_1, s) \]

is a homogeneous transform \((4 \times 4)\) interpolated between \(T_0\) when \(s=0\) and \(T_1\) when \(s=1\). \(T_0\) and \(T_1\) are both homogeneous transforms \((4 \times 4)\). Rotation is interpolated using quaternion spherical linear interpolation (slerp). If \(s\) \((N \times 1)\) then \(T\) \((4 \times 4 \times N)\) is a sequence of homogeneous transforms corresponding to the interpolation values in \(s\).

\[ T = \text{trinterp}(T_1, s) \]
as above but interpolated between the identity matrix when \(s=0\) to \(T_1\) when \(s=1\).

See also
ctraj, SE3.interp, UnitQuaternion, trinterp2

trinterp2

Interpolate SE(2) homogeneous transformations

\[ T = \text{trinterp2}(T_0, T_1, s) \]

is a homogeneous transform \((3 \times 3)\) interpolated between \(T_0\) when \(s=0\) and \(T_1\) when \(s=1\). \(T_0\) and \(T_1\) are both homogeneous transforms \((3 \times 3)\). If \(s\) \((N \times 1)\) then \(T\) \((3 \times 3 \times N)\) is a sequence of homogeneous transforms corresponding to the interpolation values in \(s\).

\[ T = \text{trinterp2}(T_1, s) \]
as above but interpolated between the identity matrix when \(s=0\) to \(T_1\) when \(s=1\).

See also

trinterp, SE3.interp, UnitQuaternion
trlog

logarithm of SO(3) or SE(3) matrix

\[ s = \text{trlog}(R) \] is the matrix logarithm (3 \times 3) of \( R \) (3 \times 3) which is a skew symmetric matrix corresponding to the vector \( \theta \times w \) where \( \theta \) is the rotation angle and \( w \) (3 \times 1) is a unit-vector indicating the rotation axis.

\[ [\theta, w] = \text{trlog}(R) \] as above but returns directly \( \theta \) the rotation angle and \( w \) (3 \times 1) the unit-vector indicating the rotation axis.

\[ s = \text{trlog}(T) \] is the matrix logarithm (4 \times 4) of \( T \) (4 \times 4) which has a (3 \times 3) skew symmetric matrix upper left submatrix corresponding to the vector \( \theta \times w \) where \( \theta \) is the rotation angle and \( w \) (3 \times 1) is a unit-vector indicating the rotation axis, and a translation component.

\[ [\theta, \text{twist}] = \text{trlog}(T) \] as above but returns directly \( \theta \) the rotation angle and a twist vector (6 \times 1) comprising \([v,w]\).

Notes

- Efficient closed-form solution of the matrix logarithm for arguments that are SO(3) or SE(3).
- Special cases of rotation by odd multiples of \( \pi \) are handled.
- Angle is always in the interval \([0,\pi]\).

References


See also

trexp, trexp2, Twist

trnorm

Normalize a rotation matrix

\[ \text{rn} = \text{trnorm}(R) \] is guaranteed to be a proper orthogonal matrix rotation matrix (3 \times 3) which is “close” to the non-orthogonal matrix \( R \) (3 \times 3). If \( R = [N,O,A] \) the O and A vectors are made unit length and the normal vector is formed from \( N = O \times A \), and then we ensure that O and A are orthogonal by \( O = A \times N \).
tn = trnorm(T) as above but the rotational submatrix of the homogeneous transformation T (4 × 4) is normalised while the translational part is passed unchanged.

If R (3 × 3 × K) or T (4 × 4 × K) represent a sequence then rn and tn have the same dimension and normalisation is performed on each plane.

Notes

• Only the direction of A (the z-axis) is unchanged.

• Used to prevent finite word length arithmetic causing transforms to become ‘un-normalized’.

See also

oa2tr, SO3.trnorm, SE3.trnorm

trot2

SE2 rotation matrix

T = trot2(theta) is a homogeneous transformation (3 × 3) representing a rotation of theta radians.

T = trot2(theta, ‘deg’) as above but theta is in degrees.

Notes

• Translational component is zero.

See also

rot2, transl2, ishomog2, trplot2, trotx, troty, trotz, SE2
**trotx**

Rotation about X axis

\[ T = \text{trotx}(\theta) \]

is a homogeneous transformation (4 × 4) representing a rotation of \( \theta \) radians about the x-axis.

\[ T = \text{trotx}(\theta, \text{'deg'}) \]

as above but \( \theta \) is in degrees.

**Notes**

- Translational component is zero.

**See also**

rotx, troty, trotz, trot2, SE3.Rx

---

**troty**

Rotation about Y axis

\[ T = \text{troty}(\theta) \]

is a homogeneous transformation (4 × 4) representing a rotation of \( \theta \) radians about the y-axis.

\[ T = \text{troty}(\theta, \text{'deg'}) \]

as above but \( \theta \) is in degrees.

**Notes**

- Translational component is zero.

**See also**

roty, trotx, trotz, trot2, SE3.Ry
trotz

Rotation about Z axis

\[ T = \text{trotz}(\theta) \]

is a homogeneous transformation \((4 \times 4)\) representing a rotation of \(\theta\) radians about the z-axis.

\[ T = \text{trotz}(\theta, \text{‘deg’}) \]

as above but \(\theta\) is in degrees.

**Notes**

- Translational component is zero.

**See also**

rotz, trotx, troty, trot2, SE3.Rz

trplot

**Draw a coordinate frame**

\[ \text{trplot}(T, \text{options}) \]

draws a 3D coordinate frame represented by the homogeneous transform \(T\) \((4 \times 4)\).

\[ H = \text{trplot}(T, \text{options}) \]

as above but returns a handle.

\[ \text{trplot}(R, \text{options}) \]

as above but the coordinate frame is rotated about the origin according to the orthonormal rotation matrix \(R\) \((3 \times 3)\).

\[ H = \text{trplot}(R, \text{options}) \]

as above but returns a handle.

\[ H = \text{trplot}() \]

creates a default frame \(\text{EYE}(3,3)\) at the origin and returns a handle.

**Animation**

Firstly, create a plot and keep the the handle as per above.

\[ \text{trplot}(H, T) \]

moves the coordinate frame described by the handle \(H\) to the pose \(T\) \((4 \times 4)\).
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Options

- ‘handle’, h: Update the specified handle
- ‘color’, C: The color to draw the axes, MATLAB colorspec C
- ‘noaxes’: Don’t display axes on the plot
- ‘axis’, A: Set dimensions of the MATLAB axes to A=[xmin xmax ymin ymax zmin zmax]
- ‘frame’, F: The coordinate frame is named {F} and the subscript on the axis labels is F.
- ‘framelabel’, F: The coordinate frame is named {F}, axes have no subscripts.
- ‘text_opts’, opt: A cell array of MATLAB text properties
- ‘axhandle’, A: Draw in the MATLAB axes specified by the axis handle A
- ‘view’, V: Set plot view parameters V=[az el] angles, or ‘auto’ for view toward origin of coordinate frame
- ‘length’, s: Length of the coordinate frame arms (default 1)
- ‘arrow’: Use arrows rather than line segments for the axes
- ‘width’, w: Width of arrow tips (default 1)
- ‘thick’, t: Thickness of lines (default 0.5)
- ‘perspective’: Display the axes with perspective projection
- ‘3d’: Plot in 3D using anaglyph graphics
- ‘anaglyph’, A: Specify anaglyph colors for ‘3d’ as 2 characters for left and right (default colors ‘rc’): chosen from r)ed, g)reen, b)lue, c)yan, m)agenta.
- ‘dispar’, D: Disparity for 3d display (default 0.1)
- ‘text’: Enable display of X,Y, Z labels on the frame
- ‘labels’, L: Label the X,Y, Z axes with the 1st, 2nd, 3rd character of the string L
- ‘rgb’: Display X,Y,Z axes in colors red, green, blue respectively
- ‘rviz’: Display chunky rviz style axes

Examples

```
trplot(T, 'frame', 'A')
trplot(T, 'frame', 'A', 'color', 'b')
trplot(T1, 'frame', 'A', 'text_opts', {'FontSize', 10, 'FontWeight', 'bold'})
trplot(T1, 'labels', 'NOA');
```

3D anaglyph plot

```
h = trplot(T, 'frame', 'A', 'color', 'b');
trplot(h, T2);
```

Notes

- Multiple frames can be added using the HOLD command
- The ‘arrow’ option requires arrow3 from FileExchange.
trplot2

Plot a planar transformation

trplot2(T, options) draws a 2D coordinate frame represented by the SE(2) homogeneous transform T (3 × 3).

H = trplot2(T, options) as above but returns a handle.

H = trplot2() creates a default frame EYE(2,2) at the origin and returns a handle.

Animation

Firstly, create a plot and keep the the handle as per above.

trplot2(H, T) moves the coordinate frame described by the handle H to the SE(2) pose T (3 × 3).

Options

- 'handle', h Update the specified handle
- 'axis', A Set dimensions of the MATLAB axes to A=[xmin xmax ymin ymax]
- 'color', c The color to draw the axes, MATLAB colorspec
- 'noaxes' Don’t display axes on the plot
- 'frame', F The frame is named {F} and the subscript on the axis labels is F.
- 'framelabel', F The coordinate frame is named {F}, axes have no subscripts.
- 'text_opts', opt A cell array of Matlab text properties
- 'axhandle', A Draw in the MATLAB axes specified by A
- 'view', V Set plot view parameters V=[az el] angles, or ‘auto’ for view toward origin of coordinate frame
- 'length', s Length of the coordinate frame arms (default 1)
- 'arrow' Use arrows rather than line segments for the axes
- 'width', w Width of arrow tips

Examples

trplot2(T, 'frame', 'A')
trplot2(T, 'frame', 'A', 'color', 'b')
trplot2(T1, 'frame', 'A', 'text_opts', {'FontSize', 10, 'FontWeight', 'bold'})

Notes

- Multiple frames can be added using the HOLD command
- The arrow option requires the third party package arrow3 from File Exchange.
- When using the form TRPLOT(H, ...) to animate a frame it is best to set the axis bounds.
The ‘arrow’ option requires arrow3 from FileExchange.

See also

trplot

trprint

Compact display of homogeneous transformation

trprint(T, options) displays the homogeneous transform in a compact single-line format. If T is a homogeneous transform sequence then each element is printed on a separate line.

s = trprint(T, options) as above but returns the string.

trprint T is the command line form of above, and displays in RPY format.

Options

‘rpy’ display with rotation in ZYX roll/pitch/yaw angles (default)
‘xyz’ change RPY angle sequence to XYZ
‘yxz’ change RPY angle sequence to YXZ
‘euler’ display with rotation in ZYZ Euler angles
‘angvec’ display with rotation in angle/vector format
‘radian’ display angle in radians (default is degrees)
‘fmt’, f use format string f for all numbers, (default %g)
‘label’, l display the text before the transform

Examples

```matlab
>> trprint(T2)
t = (0,0,0), RPY/zyx = (-122.704,65.4084,-8.11266) deg
>> trprint(T1, 'label', 'A')
A:t = (0,0,0), RPY/zyx = (-0,0,-0) deg
```

Notes

• If the ‘rpy’ option is selected, then the particular angle sequence can be specified with the options ‘xyz’ or ‘yxz’. ‘zyx’ is the default.
See also

tr2eul, tr2rpy, tr2angvec

---

**trprint2**

Compact display of SE2 homogeneous transformation

**trprint2**(T, options) displays the homogeneous transform in a compact single-line format. If T is a homogeneous transform sequence then each element is printed on a separate line.

s = trprint2(T, options) as above but returns the string.

TRPRINT T is the command line form of above, and displays in RPY format.

**Options**

- ‘radian’ display angle in radians (default is degrees)
- ‘fmt’, f use format string f for all numbers, (default %g)
- ‘label’, l display the text before the transform

**Examples**

```matlab
>> trprint2(T2)
t = (0,0), theta = -122.704 deg
```

See also

trprint

---

**trscale**

Homogeneous transformation for pure scale

T = trscale(s) is a homogeneous transform (4 × 4) corresponding to a pure scale change. If s is a scalar the same scale factor is used for x,y,z, else it can be a 3-vector specifying scale in the x-, y- and z-directions.
Twist

SE(2) and SE(3) Twist class

A Twist class holds the parameters of a twist, a representation of a rigid body displacement in SE(2) or SE(3).

Methods

- S: twist vector (1 × 3 or 1 × 6)
- se: twist as (augmented) skew-symmetric matrix (3 × 3 or 4 × 4)
- T: convert to homogeneous transformation (3 × 3 or 4 × 4)
- R: convert rotational part to matrix (2 × 2 or 3 × 3)
- exp: synonym for T
- ad: logarithm of adjoint
- pitch: pitch of the screw, SE(3) only
- pole: a point on the line of the screw
- prod: product of a vector of Twists
- theta: rotation about the screw
- line: Plucker line object representing line of the screw
- display: print the Twist parameters in human readable form
- char: convert to string

Conversion methods

- SE: convert to SE2 or SE3 object
- double: convert to real vector

Overloaded operators

- *: compose two Twists
  multiply Twist by a scalar

Properties (read only)

- v: moment part of twist (2 × 1 or 3 × 1)
- w: direction part of twist (1 × 1 or 3 × 1)
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

References


See also
texp, trexp2, trlog

**Twist.Twist**

Create Twist object

\[
tw = \text{Twist}(T)
\]

is a Twist object representing the SE(2) or SE(3) homogeneous transformation matrix \( T (3 \times 3 \text{ or } 4 \times 4) \).

\[
tw = \text{Twist}(\mathbf{v})
\]

is a twist object where the vector is specified directly.

3D CASE::

\[
tw = \text{Twist}(\mathbf{R}, \mathbf{A}, \mathbf{Q})
\]

is a Twist object representing rotation about the axis of direction \( \mathbf{A} (3 \times 1) \) and passing through the point \( \mathbf{Q} (3 \times 1) \).

\[
tw = \text{Twist}(\mathbf{R}, \mathbf{A}, \mathbf{Q}, \mathbf{P})
\]

as above but with a pitch of \( \mathbf{P} \) (distance/angle).

\[
tw = \text{Twist}(\mathbf{T}, \mathbf{A})
\]

is a Twist object representing translation in the direction of \( \mathbf{A} (3 \times 1) \).

2D CASE::

\[
tw = \text{Twist}(\mathbf{R}, \mathbf{Q})
\]

is a Twist object representing rotation about the point \( \mathbf{Q} (2 \times 1) \).

\[
tw = \text{Twist}(\mathbf{T}, \mathbf{A})
\]

is a Twist object representing translation in the direction of \( \mathbf{A} (2 \times 1) \).

**Notes**

The argument ‘\( \mathbf{P} \)’ for prismatic is synonymous with ‘\( \mathbf{T} \)’.

**Twist.ad**

Logarithm of adjoint

\( TW.ad \) is the logarithm of the adjoint matrix of the corresponding homogeneous transformation.

Robotics Toolbox 10.3.1 for MATLAB®419  Copyright ©Peter Corke 2018
See also

SE3.Ad

---

**Twist.Ad**

*Adjoint*

TW.Ad is the adjoint matrix of the corresponding homogeneous transformation.

See also

SE3.Ad

---

**Twist.char**

*Convert to string*

s = TW.char() is a string showing Twist parameters in a compact single line format. If TW is a vector of Twist objects return a string with one line per Twist.

See also

Twist.display

---

**Twist.display**

*Display parameters*

L.display() displays the twist parameters in compact single line format. If L is a vector of Twist objects displays one line per element.

**Notes**

- This method is invoked implicitly at the command line when the result of an expression is a Twist object and the command has no trailing semicolon.
See also

Twist.char

**Twist.double**

Return the twist vector

\[
\text{double}(\text{tw}) \text{ is the twist vector in se(2) or se(3) as a vector (3} \times 1 \text{ or } 6 \times 1). \text{ If } \text{tw} \text{ is a vector } (1 \times N) \text{ of Twists the result is a matrix } (6 \times N) \text{ with one column per twist.}
\]

**Notes**

- Sometimes referred to as the twist coordinate vector.

**Twist.exp**

Convert twist to homogeneous transformation

\[
\text{TW.exp} \text{ is the homogeneous transformation equivalent to the twist (SE2 or SE3).}
\]

\[
\text{TW.exp(\theta)} \text{ as above but with a rotation of } \theta \text{ about the twist.}
\]

**Notes**

- For the second form the twist must, if rotational, have a unit rotational component.

See also

Twist.T, trexp, trexp2

**Twist.line**

Line of twist axis in Plucker form

\[
\text{TW.line} \text{ is a Plucker object representing the line of the twist axis.}
\]
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Notes

- For 3D case only.

See also

Plucker

Twist.mtimes

Multiply twist by twist or scalar

TW1 * TW2 is a new Twist representing the composition of twists TW1 and TW2.

TW * T is an SE2 or SE3 that is the composition of the twist TW and the homogeneous transformation object T.

TW * S with its twist coordinates scaled by scalar S.

TW * T compounds a twist with an SE2/3 transformation

Twist.pitch

Pitch of the twist

TW.pitch is the pitch of the Twist as a scalar in units of distance per radian.

Notes

- For 3D case only.

Twist.pole

Point on the twist axis

TW.pole is a point on the twist axis (2 × 1 or 3 × 1).

Notes

- For pure translation this point is at infinity.
**Twist.prod**

**Compound array of twists**

TW.prod is a twist representing the product (composition) of the successive elements of TW \((1 \times N)\), an array of Twists.

**See also**

RTBPose.prod, Twist.mtimes

**Twist.S**

**Return the twist vector**

TW.S is the twist vector in se(2) or se(3) as a vector \((3 \times 1)\) or \((6 \times 1)\).

**Notes**

- Sometimes referred to as the twist coordinate vector.

**Twist.SE**

**Convert twist to SE2 or SE3 object**

TW.SE is an SE2 or SE3 object representing the homogeneous transformation equivalent to the twist.

**See also**

Twist.T, SE2, SE3

**Twist.se**

**Return the twist matrix**

TW.se is the twist matrix in se(2) or se(3) which is an augmented skew-symmetric matrix \((3 \times 3)\) or \((4 \times 4)\).
**Twist.T**

**Convert twist to homogeneous transformation**

TW.T is the homogeneous transformation equivalent to the twist ($3 \times 3$ or $4 \times 4$).

TW.T($\theta$) as above but with a rotation of $\theta$ about the twist.

**Notes**

- For the second form the twist must, if rotational, have a unit rotational component.

**See also**

Twist.exp, trexp, trexp2, trinterp, trinterp2

---

**Twist.theta**

**Twist rotation**

TW.theta is the rotation ($1 \times 1$) about the twist axis in radians.

---

**Twist.unit**

**Return a unit twist**

TW.unit() is a **Twist** object representing a unit aligned with the **Twist** TW.

---

**Unicycle**

**vehicle class**

This concrete class models the kinematics of a differential steer vehicle (unicycle model) on a plane. For given steering and velocity inputs it updates the true vehicle state and returns noise-corrupted odometry readings.
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Methods

init initialize vehicle state
f predict next state based on odometry
step move one time step and return noisy odometry
control generate the control inputs for the vehicle
update update the vehicle state
run run for multiple time steps
Fx Jacobian of f wrt x
Fv Jacobian of f wrt odometry noise
gstep like step() but displays vehicle
plot plot/animate vehicle on current figure
plot_xy plot the true path of the vehicle
add_driver attach a driver object to this vehicle
display display state/parameters in human readable form
char convert to string

Class methods

plotv plot/animate a pose on current figure

Properties (read/write)

x true vehicle state: x, y, theta (3 × 1)
V odometry covariance (2 × 2)
odometry distance moved in the last interval (2 × 1)
rdim dimension of the robot (for drawing)
L length of the vehicle (wheelbase)
alphalim steering wheel limit
maxspeed maximum vehicle speed
T sample interval
verbose verbosity
x_hist history of true vehicle state (N × 3)
driver reference to the driver object
x0 initial state, restored on init()

Examples

Odometry covariance (per timestep) is

\[ V = \text{diag}(\{0.02, 0.5\pi/180\}.^2); \]

Create a vehicle with this noisy odometry

\[ v = \text{Unicycle}('\text{covar}', \text{diag}(\{0.1 0.01\}.^2)); \]

and display its initial state
now apply a speed (0.2m/s) and steer angle (0.1rad) for 1 time step

\[ \text{o} = \text{v}.\text{step}(0.2, 0.1) \]

where \text{o} is the noisy odometry estimate, and the new true vehicle state \text{v}

We can add a driver object

\[ \text{v}.\text{add}\_\text{driver}( \text{RandomPath}(10) ) \]

which will move the vehicle within the region -10<x<10, -10<y<10 which we can see by

\[ \text{v}.\text{run}(1000) \]

which shows an animation of the vehicle moving for 1000 time steps between randomly selected waypoints.

**Notes**

- Subclasses the MATLAB handle class which means that pass by reference semantics apply.

**Reference**

Robotics, Vision & Control, Chap 6 Peter Corke, Springer 2011

**See also**

RandomPath, EKF

---

### Unicycle.Unicycle

**Unicycle object constructor**

\[ \text{v} = \text{Unicycle(va, options)} \]

creates a Unicycle object with actual odometry covariance \text{va} (2 × 2) matrix corresponding to the odometry vector [dx dtheta].

**Options**

- ‘W’, W Wheel separation [m] (default 1)
- ‘vmax’, S Maximum speed (default 5m/s)
- ‘x0’, x0 Initial state (default (0,0,0))
- ‘dt’, T Time interval
`rdim`, R  Robot size as fraction of plot window (default 0.2)
`verbose`  Be verbose

Notes

- Subclasses the MATLAB handle class which means that pass by reference semantics apply.

**Unicycle.char**

Convert to a string

\[
\text{s} = \text{V.char()} \text{ is a string showing vehicle parameters and state in a compact human readable format.}
\]

**See also**

Unicycle.display

**Unicycle.deriv**

be called from a continuous time integrator such as ode45 or Simulink

**Unicycle.f**

Predict next state based on odometry

\[
\text{x}_n = \text{V.f(x, odo)} \text{ is the predicted next state } \text{x}_n (1 \times 3) \text{ based on current state } \text{x} (1 \times 3) \text{ and odometry } \text{odo} (1 \times 2) = \text{[distance, heading_change]}.\]

\[
\text{x}_n = \text{V.f(x, odo, w)} \text{ as above but with odometry noise } \text{w}.\]

Notes

- Supports vectorized operation where \text{x} and \text{x}_n (N \times 3).
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Unicycle.Fv

Jacobian df/dv

\[ \mathbf{J} = \nabla \mathbf{F}_v(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{odo}) \] is the Jacobian \( \frac{d}{d\mathbf{v}} \) (3 \times 2) at the state \( \mathbf{x} \), for odometry input \( \mathbf{odo} \) (1 \times 2) = [distance, heading_change].

See also

Unicycle.F, Vehicle.Fx

Unicycle.Fx

Jacobian df/dx

\[ \mathbf{J} = \nabla \mathbf{F}_x(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{odo}) \] is the Jacobian \( \frac{d}{d\mathbf{x}} \) (3 \times 3) at the state \( \mathbf{x} \), for odometry input \( \mathbf{odo} \) (1 \times 2) = [distance, heading_change].

See also

Unicycle.f, Vehicle.Fv

Unicycle.update

Update the vehicle state

\( \mathbf{odo} = V.\text{update}(\mathbf{u}) \) is the true odometry value for motion with \( \mathbf{u}=[\text{speed,steer}] \).

Notes

- Appends new state to state history property \( \mathbf{x}_\text{hist} \).
- Odometry is also saved as property odometry.
**unit**

Unitize a vector

\[ \mathbf{vn} = \text{unit}(\mathbf{v}) \text{ is a unit-vector parallel to } \mathbf{v}. \]

**Note**

- Reporting error for the case where \( \mathbf{v} \) is non-symbolic and \( \text{norm}(\mathbf{v}) \) is zero

---

**UnitQuaternion**

**unit quaternion class**

A UnitQuaternion is a compact method of representing a 3D rotation that has computational advantages including speed and numerical robustness. A quaternion has 2 parts, a scalar \( s \), and a vector \( \mathbf{v} \) and is typically written: \( \mathbf{q} = s < vx, vy, vz >. \)

A UnitQuaternion is one for which \( s^2 + vx^2 + vy^2 + vz^2 = 1 \). It can be considered as a rotation by an angle \( \theta \) about a unit-vector \( \mathbf{V} \) in space where

\[ \mathbf{q} = \cos(\theta/2) < \mathbf{v} \sin(\theta/2) > \]

**Constructors**

- `UnitQuaternion` general constructor
- `UnitQuaternion.eul` constructor, from Euler angles
- `UnitQuaternion.rpy` constructor, from roll-pitch-yaw angles
- `UnitQuaternion.angvec` constructor, from (angle and vector)
- `UnitQuaternion.omega` constructor for angle*vector
- `UnitQuaternion.Rx` constructor, from x-axis rotation
- `UnitQuaternion.Ry` constructor, from y-axis rotation
- `UnitQuaternion.Rz` constructor, from z-axis rotation
- `UnitQuaternion.vec` constructor, from 3-vector

**Display methods**

- `display` print in human readable form
- `plot` plot a coordinate frame representing orientation of quaternion
- `animate` animates a coordinate frame representing changing orientation of quaternion sequence
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Operation methods

inv  inverse
conj  conjugate
unit  unitized quaternion
dot  derivative of quaternion with angular velocity
norm  norm, or length
inner  inner product
angle  angle between two quaternions
interp  interpolation (slerp) between two quaternions

UnitQuaternion.qvmul  multiply unit- quaternions in 3- vector form

Conversion methods

char  convert to string
double  convert to 4-vector
matrix  convert to $4 \times 4$ matrix
tovec  convert to 3-vector
R  convert to $3 \times 3$ rotation matrix
T  convert to $4 \times 4$ homogeneous transform matrix
toeul  convert to Euler angles
torpy  convert to roll-pitch-yaw angles
toangvec  convert to angle vector form
SO3  convert to SO3 class
SE3  convert to SE3 class

Overloaded operators

$q\cdot q_2$  quaternion (Hamilton) product
$q\cdot^\ast q_2$  quaternion (Hamilton) product followed by unitization
$q\cdot s$  quaternion times scalar
$q/q_2$  $q\cdot q_2.inv$
$q/q_2$  $q\cdot q_2.inv$ followed by unitization
$q/s$  quaternion divided by scalar
$q^n$  q to power n (integer only)
$q+q_2$  elementwise sum of quaternion elements (result is a Quat ernion)
$q-q_2$  elementwise difference of quaternion elements (result is a Quaternion)
$q1==q2$  test for quaternion equality
$q1\neq q2$  test for quaternion inequality

Properties (read only)

s  real part
v  vector part
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Notes

• Many methods and operators are inherited from the Quaternion superclass.
• UnitQuaternion objects can be used in vectors and arrays.
• A subclass of Quaternion
• The + and - operators return a Quaternion object not a UnitQuaternion since the result is not, in general, a valid UnitQuaternion.
• For display purposes a Quaternion differs from a UnitQuaternion by using << notation rather than <<.
• To a large extent polymorphic with the SO3 class.

References


See also

Quaternion, SO3

UnitQuaternion

Create a unit quaternion object

Construct a UnitQuaternion from various other orientation representations.

q = UnitQuaternion() is the identity UnitQuaternion 1<0,0,0> representing a null rotation.

q = UnitQuaternion(q1) is a copy of the UnitQuaternion q1, if q1 is a Quaternion it is normalised.

q = UnitQuaternion(s, v) is a unit quaternion formed by specifying directly its scalar and vector parts which are normalised.

q = UnitQuaternion([s V1 V2 V3]) is a quaternion formed by specifying directly its 4 elements which are normalised.
q = \text{Quaternion}(R) is a \text{UnitQuaternion} corresponding to the SO(3) orthonormal rotation matrix $R$ ($3 \times 3$). If $R$ ($3 \times 3 \times N$) is a sequence then $q$ ($N \times 1$) is a vector of Quaternions corresponding to the elements of $R$.

$q = \text{Quaternion}(T)$ is a \text{UnitQuaternion} equivalent to the rotational part of the SE(3) homogeneous transform $T$ ($4 \times 4$). If $T$ ($4 \times 4 \times N$) is a sequence then $q$ ($N \times 1$) is a vector of Quaternions corresponding to the elements of $T$.

\textbf{Notes}

- Only the $R$ and $T$ forms are vectorised.

See also \text{UnitQuaternion}.eul, \text{UnitQuaternion}.rpy, \text{UnitQuaternion}.angvec, \text{UnitQuaternion}.omega, \text{UnitQuaternion}.Rx, \text{UnitQuaternion}.Ry, \text{UnitQuaternion}.Rz.

\textbf{UnitQuaternion.angle}

\textbf{Angle between two UnitQuaternions}

$Q1.\text{theta}(q2)$ is the angle (in radians) between two UnitQuaternions $Q1$ and $q2$.

\textbf{Notes}

- Either or both $Q1$ and $q2$ can be a vector.

\textbf{References}


See also

\text{Quaternion.angvec}

\textbf{UnitQuaternion.angvec}

\textbf{Construct from angle and rotation vector}

$q = \text{UnitQuaternion.angvec}(\text{th}, \text{v})$ is a \text{UnitQuaternion} representing rotation of $\text{th}$ about the vector $\text{v}$ ($3 \times 1$).
See also

UnitQuaternion.omega

UnitQuaternion.animate

Animate a quaternion object

Q.animate(options) animates a quaternion array Q as a 3D coordinate frame.
Q.animate(qf, options) animates a 3D coordinate frame moving from orientation Q to orientation qf.

Options

Options are passed to tranimate and include:

- 'fps', fps Number of frames per second to display (default 10)
- 'nsteps', n The number of steps along the path (default 50)
- 'axis', A Axis bounds [xmin, xmax, ymin, ymax, zmin, zmax]
- 'movie', M Save frames as files in the folder M
- 'cleanup' Remove the frame at end of animation
- 'noxyz' Don’t label the axes
- 'rgb' Color the axes in the order x=red, y=green, z=blue
- 'retain' Retain frames, don’t animate

Additional options are passed through to TRPLOT.

See also

tranimate, trplot

UnitQuaternion.char

Convert to string

s = Q.char() is a compact string representation of the quaternion’s value as a 4-tuple.
If Q is a vector then s has one line per element.

See also

Quaternion.char
UnitQuaternion.dot

Quaternion derivative

qd = Q.dot(omega) is the rate of change in the world frame of a body frame with
attitude Q and angular velocity OMEGA (1 × 3) expressed as a quaternion.

Notes

• This is not a group operator, but it is useful to have the result as a quaternion.

Reference

• Robotics, Vision & Control, 2nd edition, Peter Corke, Chap 3.

See also

UnitQuaternion.dotb

UnitQuaternion.dotb

Quaternion derivative

qd = Q.dot(omega) is the rate of change in the body frame of a body frame with
attitude Q and angular velocity OMEGA (1 × 3) expressed as a quaternion.

Notes

• This is not a group operator, but it is useful to have the result as a quaternion.

Reference

• Robotics, Vision & Control, 2nd edition, Peter Corke, Chap 3.

See also

UnitQuaternion.dot
UnitQuaternion.eq

version for UnitQuaternions to support double mapping

UnitQuaternion.eul

Construct from Euler angles

\( q = UnitQuaternion.eul(\phi, \theta, \psi, \text{options}) \) is a UnitQuaternion representing rotation equivalent to the specified Euler angles angles. These correspond to rotations about the Z, Y, Z axes respectively.

\( q = UnitQuaternion.eul(eul, \text{options}) \) as above but the Euler angles are taken from the vector \((1 \times 3) eul = [\phi \theta \psi]\). If \( eul \) is a matrix \((N \times 3)\) then \( q \) is a vector \((1 \times N)\) of UnitQuaternion objects where the index corresponds to rows of \( eul \) which are assumed to be \([\phi, \theta, \psi]\).

Options

- ‘deg’ Compute angles in degrees (radians default)

Notes

- Is vectorised, see eul2r for details.

See also

UnitQuaternion.rpy, eul2r

UnitQuaternion.increment

Update quaternion by angular displacement

\( qu = Q.\text{increment}(\omega) \) updates \( Q \) by a rotation which is given as a spatial displacement \( \omega \) \((3 \times 1)\) whose direction is the rotation axis and magnitude is the amount of rotation.

See also

tr2delta
UnitQuaternion.interp

Interpolate UnitQuaternions

\( qi = Q.\text{scale}(s, \text{options}) \) is a UnitQuaternion that interpolates between a null rotation (identity quaternion) for \( s=0 \) to \( Q \) for \( s=1 \).

\( qi = Q.\text{interp}(q2, s, \text{options}) \) as above but interpolates a rotation between \( Q \) for \( s=0 \) and \( q2 \) for \( s=1 \).

If \( s \) is a vector \( qi \) is a vector of UnitQuaternions, each element corresponding to sequential elements of \( s \).

Options

- ‘shortest’ Take the shortest path along the great circle

Notes

- This is a spherical linear interpolation (slerp) that can be interpreted as interpolation along a great circle arc on a sphere.
- It is an error if \( s \) is outside the interval 0 to 1.

References


See also

ctraj

UnitQuaternion.inv

Invert a UnitQuaternion

\( qi = Q.\text{inv}() \) is a UnitQuaternion object representing the inverse of \( Q \).

Notes

- Is vectorized, can operate on a vector of UnitQuaternion objects.
UNITQUATERNION.MRDIVIDE

Divide unit quaternions

Q1/Q2  is a UnitQuaternion object formed by Hamilton product of Q1 and inv(q2) where Q1 and q2 are both UnitQuaternion objects.

Notes

• Overloaded operator ‘/’
• For case Q1/q2 both can be an N-vector, result is elementwise division.
• For case Q1/q2 if Q1 scalar and q2 a vector, scalar is divided by each element.
• For case Q1/q2 if q2 scalar and Q1 a vector, each element divided by scalar.
• If the dividend and divisor are UnitQuaternions, the quotient will be a unit quaternion.

See also

Quaternion.mtimes, Quaternion.mpower, Quaternion.plus, Quaternion.minus

UNITQUATERNION.MTIMES

Multiply unit quaternions

Q1*Q2  is a UnitQuaternion object formed by Hamilton product of Q1 and Q2 where Q1 and Q2 are both UnitQuaternion objects.

Q*V  is a vector (3 x 1) formed by rotating the vector V (3 x 1) by the UnitQuaternion Q.

Notes

• Overloaded operator ‘*’
• For case Q1*Q2 both can be an N-vector, result is elementwise multiplication.
• For case Q1*Q2 if Q1 scalar and Q2 a vector, scalar multiplies each element.
• For case \( Q^1 \times Q^2 \) if \( Q^2 \) scalar and \( Q^1 \) a vector, each element multiplies scalar.

• For case \( Q \times V \) where \( Q \) (1 \( \times \) \( N \)) and \( V \) (3 \( \times \) \( N \)), result (3 \( \times \) \( N \)) is elementwise product of UnitQuaternion and columns of \( V \).

• For case \( Q \times V \) where \( Q \) (1 \( \times \) 1) and \( V \) (3 \( \times \) \( N \)), result (3 \( \times \) \( N \)) is the product of the UnitQuaternion by each column of \( V \).

• For case \( Q \times V \) where \( Q \) (1 \( \times \) \( N \)) and \( V \) (3 \( \times \) 1), result (3 \( \times \) \( N \)) is the product of each element of \( Q \) by the vector \( V \).

See also

Quaternion.mrdivide, Quaternion.mpower, Quaternion.plus, Quaternion.minus

UnitQuaternion.new

Construct a new unit quaternion

\[ q_n = Q.\text{new}() \] constructs a new UnitQuaternion object of the same type as \( Q \).

\[ q_n = Q.\text{new}([S V1 V2 V3]) \] as above but specified directly by its 4 elements.

\[ q_n = Q.\text{new}(s, v) \] as above but specified directly by the scalar \( s \) and vector part \( v \) (1 \( \times \) 3)

Notes

• Polymorphic with Quaternion and RTBPose derived classes.

UnitQuaternion.omega

Construct from angle times rotation vector

\[ q = \text{UnitQuaternion.omega}(w) \] is a UnitQuaternion representing rotation of \( |w| \) about the vector \( w \) (3 \( \times \) 1).

See also

UnitQuaternion.angvec
UnitQuaternion.plot

Plot a quaternion object

Q.plot(options) plots the quaternion as an oriented coordinate frame.
H = Q.plot(options) as above but returns a handle which can be used for animation.

Animation

Firstly, create a plot and keep the the handle as per above.
Q.plot(’handle’, H) updates the coordinate frame described by the handle H to the orientation of Q.

Options

Options are passed to trplot and include:

- ‘color’, C  The color to draw the axes, MATLAB colorspec C
- ‘frame’, F  The frame is named {F} and the subscript on the axis labels is F.
- ‘view’, V   Set plot view parameters V=[az el] angles, or ‘auto’ for view toward origin of coordinate frame
- ‘handle’, h Update the specified handle

See also

trplot

UnitQuaternion.q2r

Convert UnitQuaternion to homogeneous transform

T = q2tr(q)

Return the rotational homogeneous transform corresponding to the unit quaternion q.
See also: TR2Q

Robotics Toolbox 10.3.1 for MATLAB® 439  Copyright ©Peter Corke 2018
**UnitQuaternion.qvmul**

Multiply unit quaternions defined by vector part

\[ qv = \text{UnitQuaternion.QVMUL}(qv1, qv2) \]

multiplies two unit-quaternions defined only by their vector components \(qv1\) and \(qv2\) (3 \(\times\) 1). The result is similarly the vector component of the product (3 \(\times\) 1).

**See also**

UnitQuaternion.tovec, UnitQuaternion.vec

---

**UnitQuaternion.R**

Convert to orthonormal rotation matrix

\[ R = Q.R() \] is the equivalent SO(3) orthonormal rotation matrix (3 \(\times\) 3). If \(Q\) represents a sequence \((N \times 1)\) then \(R\) is \(3 \times 3 \times N\).

**See also**

UnitQuaternion.T, UnitQuaternion.SO3

---

**UnitQuaternion.rand**

Construct a random unit quaternion

\[ q = \text{UnitQuaternion.rand}() \] is a UnitQuaternion representing a random rotation.

**Notes**

- Planning Algorithms, Steve LaValle, p164

---

**UnitQuaternion.rdivide**

Divide unit quaternions and unitize

\[ Q1./Q2 \] is a UnitQuaternion object formed by Hamilton product of \(Q1\) and \(Q2\).
\texttt{inv(q2)} where \( Q1 \) and \( q2 \) are both \texttt{UnitQuaternion} objects. The result is explicitly unitized.

**Notes**

- Overloaded operator ‘.*’
- For case \( Q1 ./ q2 \) both can be an N-vector, result is elementwise division.
- For case \( Q1 ./ q2 \) if \( Q1 \) scalar and \( q2 \) a vector, scalar is divided by each element.
- For case \( Q1 ./ q2 \) if \( q2 \) scalar and \( Q1 \) a vector, each element divided by scalar.

**See also**

\texttt{Quaternion.mtimes} \texttt{UnitQuaternion.rpy}

**UnitQuaternion.rpy**

**Construct from roll-pitch-yaw angles**

\( q = \texttt{UnitQuaternion.rpy(roll, pitch, yaw, options)} \) is a \texttt{UnitQuaternion} representing rotation equivalent to the specified roll, pitch, yaw angles angles. These correspond to rotations about the Z, Y, X axes respectively.

\( q = \texttt{UnitQuaternion.rpy(rpy, options)} \) as above but the angles are given by the passed vector \( rpy = [\text{roll}, \text{pitch}, \text{yaw}] \). If \( rpy \) is a matrix \( (N \times 3) \) then \( q \) is a vector \( (1 \times N) \) of \texttt{UnitQuaternion} objects where the index corresponds to rows of \( rpy \) which are assumed to be \([\text{roll},\text{pitch},\text{yaw}]\).

**Options**

- ‘deg’  Compute angles in degrees (radians default)
- ‘zyx’  Return solution for sequential rotations about Z, Y, X axes (default)
- ‘xyz’  Return solution for sequential rotations about X, Y, Z axes
- ‘yxz’  Return solution for sequential rotations about Y, X, Z axes

**UnitQuaternion.Rx**

**Construct from rotation about x-axis**

\( q = \texttt{UnitQuaternion.Rx(angle)} \) is a \texttt{UnitQuaternion} representing rotation of \texttt{angle} about the x-axis.
q = \texttt{UnitQuaternion.Rx}(\texttt{angle}, \texttt{deg}) \text{ as above but THETA is in degrees.}

\textbf{See also}

\texttt{UnitQuaternion.Ry, UnitQuaternion.Rz}

\textbf{UnitQuaternion.Ry}

\textbf{Construct from rotation about y-axis}

q = \texttt{UnitQuaternion.Ry}(\texttt{angle}) \text{ is a UnitQuaternion representing rotation of \texttt{angle} about the y-axis.}

q = \texttt{UnitQuaternion.Ry}(\texttt{angle}, \texttt{deg}) \text{ as above but THETA is in degrees.}

\textbf{See also}

\texttt{UnitQuaternion.Rx, UnitQuaternion.Rz}

\textbf{UnitQuaternion.Rz}

\textbf{Construct from rotation about z-axis}

q = \texttt{UnitQuaternion.Rz}(\texttt{angle}) \text{ is a UnitQuaternion representing rotation of \texttt{angle} about the z-axis.}

q = \texttt{UnitQuaternion.Rz}(\texttt{angle}, \texttt{deg}) \text{ as above but THETA is in degrees.}

\textbf{See also}

\texttt{UnitQuaternion.Rx, UnitQuaternion.Ry}

\textbf{UnitQuaternion.SE3}

\textbf{Convert to SE3 object}

x = Q.\texttt{SE3}() \text{ is an SE3 object with equivalent rotation and zero translation.}
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Notes

- The translational part of the SE3 object is zero
- If Q is a vector then an equivalent vector of SE3 objects is created.

See also

UnitQuaternion.SE3, SE3

UnitQuaternion.SO3

Convert to SO3 object

\[ x = Q.SO3() \] is an SO3 object with equivalent rotation.

Notes

- If Q is a vector then an equivalent vector of SO3 objects is created.

See also

UnitQuaternion.SE3, SO3

UnitQuaternion.T

Convert to homogeneous transformation matrix

\[ T = Q.T() \] is the equivalent SE(3) homogeneous transformation matrix (4 × 4). If Q is a sequence (\( N \times 1 \)) then \( T \) is \( 4 \times 4 \times N \).

Notes:

- Has a zero translational component.

See also

UnitQuaternion.R, UnitQuaternion.SE3
UnitQuaternion.times

Multiply a quaternion object and unitize

Q1.*Q2 is a UnitQuaternion object formed by Hamilton product of Q1 and Q2. The result is explicitly unitized.

Notes

- Overloaded operator ‘.*’
- For case Q1.*Q2 both can be an N-vector, result is elementwise multiplication.
- For case Q1.*Q2 if Q1 scalar and Q2 a vector, scalar multiplies each element.
- For case Q1.*Q2 if Q2 scalar and Q1 a vector, each element multiplies scalar.

See also

Quaternion.mtimes

UnitQuaternion.toangvec

Convert to angle-vector form

th = Q.toangvec(options) is the rotational angle, about some vector, corresponding to this quaternion.

[th,v] = Q.toangvec(options) as above but also returns a unit vector parallel to the rotation axis.

Q.toangvec(options) prints a compact single line representation of the rotational angle and rotation vector corresponding to this quaternion.

Options

‘deg’ Display/return angle in degrees rather than radians

Notes

- Due to the double cover of the quaternion, the returned rotation angles will be in the interval [-2pi, 2pi).
• If \( Q \) is a UnitQuaternion vector then print one line per element.
• If \( Q \) is a UnitQuaternion vector \((1 \times N)\) then \( \mathbf{th} \) \((1 \times N)\) and \( \mathbf{v} \) \((N \times 3)\).

**UnitQuaternion.toeul**

Convert to roll-pitch-yaw angle form.

\( \text{eul} = \text{Q.toeul}(\text{options}) \) are the Euler angles \((1 \times 3)\) corresponding to the *UnitQuaternion*. These correspond to rotations about the Z, Y, Z axes respectively. \( \text{eul} = [\text{PHI}, \text{THETA}, \text{PSI}] \).

**Options**

- ‘deg’ Compute angles in degrees (radians default)

**Notes**

- There is a singularity for the case where THETA=0 in which case PHI is arbitrarily set to zero and PSI is the sum (PHI+PSI).

**See also**

*UnitQuaternion.toeul, tr2rpy*

**UnitQuaternion.torpy**

Convert to roll-pitch-yaw angle form.

\( \text{rpy} = \text{Q.torpy}(\text{options}) \) are the roll-pitch-yaw angles \((1 \times 3)\) corresponding to the *UnitQuaternion*. These correspond to rotations about the Z, Y, X axes respectively. \( \text{rpy} = [\text{ROLL}, \text{PITCH}, \text{YAW}] \).

**Options**

- ‘deg’ Compute angles in degrees (radians default)
- ‘xyz’ Return solution for sequential rotations about X, Y, Z axes
- ‘yxz’ Return solution for sequential rotations about Y, X, Z axes
Notes

• There is a singularity for the case where $P=\pi/2$ in which case $R$ is arbitrarily set to zero and $Y$ is the sum $(R+Y)$.

See also

UnitQuaternion.toeul, tr2rpy

UnitQuaternion.tovec

Convert to unique 3-vector

$v = Q.tovec()$ is a vector $(1 \times 3)$ that uniquely represents the UnitQuaternion. The scalar component can be recovered by $1 - \text{norm}(v)$ and will always be positive.

Notes

• UnitQuaternions have double cover of SO(3) so the vector is derived from the quaternion with positive scalar component.

• This vector representation of a UnitQuaternion is used for bundle adjustment.

See also

UnitQuaternion.vec, UnitQuaternion.qvmul

UnitQuaternion.tr2q

Convert homogeneous transform to a UnitQuaternion

$q = \text{tr2q}(T)$

Return a UnitQuaternion corresponding to the rotational part of the homogeneous transform $T$.

Reference

Chapter 2. Functions and Classes

UnitQuaternion.vec

Construct from 3-vector

\( q = \text{UnitQuaternion.vec}(v) \) is a UnitQuaternion constructed from just its vector component \((1 \times 3)\) and the scalar part is \(1 - \text{norm}(v)\) and will always be positive.

Notes

- This unique and concise vector representation of a UnitQuaternion is used for bundle adjustment.

See also

UnitQuaternion.tovec, UnitVector.qvmul

Vehicle

Abstract vehicle class

This abstract class models the kinematics of a mobile robot moving on a plane and with a pose in SE(2). For given steering and velocity inputs it updates the true vehicle state and returns noise-corrupted odometry readings.

Methods

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle</td>
<td>constructor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>add_driver</td>
<td>attach a driver object to this vehicle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>control</td>
<td>generate the control inputs for the vehicle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f</td>
<td>predict next state based on odometry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>init</td>
<td>initialize vehicle state</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run</td>
<td>run for multiple time steps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run2</td>
<td>run with control inputs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>step</td>
<td>move one time step and return noisy odometry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>update</td>
<td>update the vehicle state</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plotting/display methods
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

char convert to string
display display state/parameters in human readable form
plot plot/animate vehicle on current figure
plot_xy plot the true path of the vehicle
Vehicle.plotv plot/animate a pose on current figure

Properties (read/write)

x true vehicle state: x, y, theta (3 \times 1)
V odometry covariance (2 \times 2)
odometry distance moved in the last interval (2 \times 1)
rdim dimension of the robot (for drawing)
L length of the vehicle (wheelbase)
alphalim steering wheel limit
speedmax maximum vehicle speed
T sample interval
verbose verbosity
x_hist history of true vehicle state (N \times 3)
driver reference to the driver object
x0 initial state, restored on init()

Examples

If veh is an instance of a Vehicle class then we can add a driver object

veh.add_driver( RandomPath(10) )

which will move the vehicle within the region -10 < x < 10, -10 < y < 10 which we can see by

veh.run(1000)

which shows an animation of the vehicle moving for 1000 time steps between randomly selected waypoints.

Notes

- Subclass of the MATLAB handle class which means that pass by reference semantics apply.

Reference

Robotics, Vision & Control, Chap 6 Peter Corke, Springer 2011

See also

Bicycle, Unicycle, RandomPath, EKF

Robotics Toolbox 10.3.1 for MATLAB® 448 Copyright © Peter Corke 2018
Vehicle.Vehicle

Vehicle object constructor

\( v = \text{Vehicle}(\text{options}) \) creates a Vehicle object that implements the kinematic model of a wheeled vehicle.

Options

- `‘covar’, C` specify odometry covariance \((2 \times 2)\) (default 0)
- `‘speedmax’, S` Maximum speed (default 1m/s)
- `‘L’, L` Wheel base (default 1m)
- `‘x0’, x0` Initial state (default \((0,0,0)\))
- `‘dt’, T` Time interval (default 0.1)
- `‘rdim’, R` Robot size as fraction of plot window (default 0.2)
- `‘verbose’` Be verbose

Notes

- The covariance is used by a “hidden” random number generator within the class.
- Subclasses the MATLAB handle class which means that pass by reference semantics apply.

Vehicle.add_driver

Add a driver for the vehicle

\( V.\text{add\_driver}(d) \) connects a driver object \( d \) to the vehicle. The driver object has one public method:

\[
[speed, \text{steer}] = D.\text{demand}();
\]

that returns a speed and steer angle.

Notes

- The Vehicle.step() method invokes the driver if one is attached.
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

See also

Vehicle.step, RandomPath

Vehicle.char

Convert to string

\[
s = \text{V.char}()\]

is a string showing vehicle parameters and state in a compact human readable format.

See also

Vehicle.display

Vehicle.control

Compute the control input to vehicle

\[
u = \text{V.control}(\text{speed}, \text{steer})\]

is a control input (1 × 2) = [speed,steer] based on provided controls speed,steer to which speed and steering angle limits have been applied.

\[
u = \text{V.control}()\]

as above but demand originates with a “driver” object if one is attached, the driver’s DEMAND() method is invoked. If no driver is attached then speed and steer angle are assumed to be zero.

See also

Vehicle.step, RandomPath

Vehicle.display

Display vehicle parameters and state

\[
\text{V.display}()\]

displays vehicle parameters and state in compact human readable form.

Notes

- This method is invoked implicitly at the command line when the result of an expression is a Vehicle object and the command has no trailing semicolon.
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

See also

Vehicle.char

Vehicle.init

Reset state

V.init() sets the state V.x := V.x0, initializes the driver object (if attached) and clears the history.

V.init(x0) as above but the state is initialized to x0.

Vehicle.path

Compute path for constant inputs

xf = V.path(tf, u) is the final state of the vehicle (3 x 1) from the initial state (0,0,0) with the control inputs u (vehicle specific). tf is a scalar to specify the total integration time.

xp = V.path(tv, u) is the trajectory of the vehicle (N x 3) from the initial state (0,0,0) with the control inputs u (vehicle specific). T is a vector (N) of times for which elements of the trajectory will be computed.

xp = V.path(T, u, x0) as above but specify the initial state.

Notes

- Integration is performed using ODE45.
- The ODE being integrated is given by the deriv method of the vehicle object.

See also

ode45

Vehicle.plot

Plot vehicle

The vehicle is depicted graphically as a narrow triangle that travels “point first” and has a length V.rdim.
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Vehicle.plot(options) plots the vehicle on the current axes at a pose given by the current robot state. If the vehicle has been previously plotted its pose is updated.

Vehicle.plot(x, options) as above but the robot pose is given by x (1 × 3).

H = Vehicle.plotv(x, options) draws a representation of a ground robot as an oriented triangle with pose x (1 × 3) [x,y,theta]. H is a graphics handle.

Vehicle.plotv(H, x) as above but updates the pose of the graphic represented by the handle H to pose x.

Options

'scale', S Draw vehicle with length S x maximum axis dimension
'size', S Draw vehicle with length S
'color', C Color of vehicle.
'fill' Filled
'trail', S Trail with line style S, use line() name-value pairs

Example

veh.plot('trail', {'Color', 'r', 'Marker', 'o', 'MarkerFaceColor', 'r', 'MarkerEdgeColor', 'r', 'MarkerSize', 3})

Vehicle.plot_xy

Plots true path followed by vehicle

Vehicle.plot_xy() plots the true xy-plane path followed by the vehicle.

Vehicle.plot_xy(1s) as above but the line style arguments 1s are passed to plot.

Notes

- The path is extracted from the x_hist property.

Vehicle.plotv

Plot ground vehicle pose

H = Vehicle.plotv(x, options) draws a representation of a ground robot as an oriented triangle with pose x (1 × 3) [x,y,theta]. H is a graphics handle. If x (N × 3) is a matrix it is considered to represent a trajectory in which case the vehicle graphic is animated.
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Vehicle.plotv(\(H, \mathbf{x}\)) as above but updates the pose of the graphic represented by the handle \(H\) to pose \(\mathbf{x}\).

**Options**

- ‘scale’, \(S\) Draw vehicle with length \(S\) x maximum axis dimension
- ‘size’, \(S\) Draw vehicle with length \(S\)
- ‘fillcolor’, \(C\) Color of vehicle.
- ‘fps’, \(F\) Frames per second in animation mode (default 10)

**Example**

Generate some path \(3 \times N\)

\[
p = \text{PRM.plan(start, goal)};
\]

Set the axis dimensions to stop them rescaling for every point on the path

\[
\text{axis([-5 5 -5 5])};
\]

Now invoke the static method

\[
\text{Vehicle.plotv(p)};
\]

**Notes**

- This is a class method.

**See also**

Vehicle.plot

---

**Vehicle.run**

**Run the vehicle simulation**

\(\text{V.run(n)}\) runs the vehicle model for \(n\) timesteps and plots the vehicle pose at each step.

\(\text{p = V.run(n)}\) runs the vehicle simulation for \(n\) timesteps and return the state history \((n \times 3)\) without plotting. Each row is \((x, y, \theta)\).

**See also**

Vehicle.step, Vehicle.run2

---

Robotics Toolbox 10.3.1 for MATLAB®453 Copyright ©Peter Corke 2018
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Vehicle.run2

run the vehicle simulation with control inputs

\[ p = V.\text{run2}(T, x_0, \text{speed}, \text{steer}) \] runs the vehicle model for a time \( T \) with speed \text{speed} and steering angle \text{steer}. \( p (N \times 3) \) is the path followed and each row is \((x,y,\theta)\).

Notes

- Faster and more specific version of run() method.
- Used by the RRT planner.

See also

Vehicle.run, Vehicle.step, RRT

Vehicle.step

Advance one timestep

\[ odo = V.\text{step}(\text{speed}, \text{steer}) \] updates the vehicle state for one timestep of motion at specified \text{speed} and \text{steer} angle, and returns noisy odometry.

\[ odo = V.\text{step}() \] updates the vehicle state for one timestep of motion and returns noisy odometry. If a “driver” is attached then its DEMAND() method is invoked to compute speed and steer angle. If no driver is attached then speed and steer angle are assumed to be zero.

Notes

- Noise covariance is the property \( V \).

See also

Vehicle.control, Vehicle.update, Vehicle.add_driver
**Vehicle.update**

*Update the vehicle state*

\( odo = V.\text{update}(u) \) is the true odometry value for motion with \( u=[\text{speed,steer}] \).

**Notes**

- Appends new state to state history property \( x_{\text{hist}} \).
- Odometry is also saved as property \( \text{odometry} \).

**Vehicle.verbosity**

*Set verbosity*

\( V.\text{verbosity}(a) \) set \( \text{verbosity} \) to \( a \). \( a=0 \) means silent.

**vex**

*Convert skew-symmetric matrix to vector*

\( v = \text{vex}(s) \) is the vector which has the corresponding skew-symmetric matrix \( s \).

In the case that \( s \ (2 \times 2) \) then \( v \) is \( 1 \times 1 \)

\[
S = \begin{bmatrix}
0 & -v \\
v & 0
\end{bmatrix}
\]

In the case that \( s \ (3 \times 3) \) then \( v \) is \( 3 \times 1 \).

\[
S = \begin{bmatrix}
0 & -v_z & v_y \\
v_z & 0 & -v_x \\
-v_y & v_x & 0
\end{bmatrix}
\]

**Notes**

- This is the inverse of the function \( \text{SKEW()} \).
- Only rudimentary checking (zero diagonal) is done to ensure that the matrix is actually skew-symmetric.
The function takes the mean of the two elements that correspond to each unique element of the matrix.

References


See also

skew, vexa

---

**vexa**

Convert augmented skew-symmetric matrix to vector

\[ \mathbf{v} = \text{vexa}(\mathbf{s}) \] is the vector which has the corresponding augmented skew-symmetric matrix \( \mathbf{s} \).

\( \mathbf{v} \) is \( 1 \times 3 \) in the case that \( \mathbf{s} (3 \times 3) = \\
\begin{bmatrix}
0 & -v_3 & v_1 \\
v_3 & 0 & v_2 \\
0 & 0 & 0
\end{bmatrix} \)

\( \mathbf{v} \) is \( 1 \times 6 \) in the case that \( \mathbf{s} (6 \times 6) = \\
\begin{bmatrix}
0 & -v_6 & v_5 & v_1 \\
v_6 & 0 & -v_4 & v_2 \\
-v_5 & v_4 & 0 & v_3 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 0
\end{bmatrix} \)

Notes

- This is the inverse of the function SKEWA().
- The matrices are the generator matrices for se(2) and se(3).
- This function maps se(2) and se(3) to twist vectors.

References

See also
skewa, vex, Twist

VREP

V-REP simulator communications object

A VREP object holds all information related to the state of a connection to an instance of the V-REP simulator running on this or a networked computer. Allows the creation of references to other objects/models in V-REP which can be manipulated in MATLAB.

This class handles the interface to the simulator and low-level object handle operations.

Methods

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gethandle</td>
<td>get handle to named object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>getchildren</td>
<td>get children belonging to handle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>getobjname</td>
<td>get names of objects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>object</td>
<td>return a VREP_obj object for named object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arm</td>
<td>return a VREP_arm object for named robot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>camera</td>
<td>return a VREP_camera object for named vision sensor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hokuyo</td>
<td>return a VREP_hokuyo object for named Hokuyo scanner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>getpos</td>
<td>return position of object given handle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>setpos</td>
<td>set position of object given handle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>getorient</td>
<td>return orientation of object given handle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>setorient</td>
<td>set orientation of object given handle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>getpose</td>
<td>return pose of object given handle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>setpose</td>
<td>set pose of object given handle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>setobjparam_bool</td>
<td>set object boolean parameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>setobjparam_int</td>
<td>set object integer parameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>setobjparam_float</td>
<td>set object float parameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>getobjparam_bool</td>
<td>get object boolean parameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>getobjparam_int</td>
<td>get object integer parameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>getobjparam_float</td>
<td>get object float parameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>signal_int</td>
<td>send named integer signal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>signal_float</td>
<td>send named float signal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>signal_str</td>
<td>send named string signal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>setparam_bool</td>
<td>set simulator boolean parameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>setparam_int</td>
<td>set simulator integer parameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>setparam_str</td>
<td>set simulator string parameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>setparam_float</td>
<td>set simulator float parameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>getparam_bool</td>
<td>get simulator boolean parameter</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
getparam_int  get simulator integer parameter
getparam_str  get simulator string parameter
getparam_float get simulator float parameter
delete        shutdown the connection and cleanup
simstart      start the simulator running
simstop       stop the simulator running
simpause      pause the simulator
getversion    get V-REP version number
checkcomms    return status of connection
pausecomms    pause the comms
loadscene     load a scene file
clearscene    clear the current scene
loadmodel     load a model into current scene
display       print the link parameters in human readable form
char          convert to string

See also

VREP_obj, VREP_arm, VREP_camera, VREP_hokuyo

VREP.VREP

VREP object constructor

v = VREP(options) create a connection to an instance of the V-REP simulator.

Options

'timeout', T  Timeout T in ms (default 2000)
'cycle', C    Cycle time C in ms (default 5)
'port', P     Override communications port
'reconnect'   Reconnect on error (default noreconnect)
'path', P     The path to VREP install directory

Notes

- The default path is taken from the environment variable VREP
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

**VREP.arm**

Return VREP_arm object

`V.arm(name)` is a factory method that returns a VREP_arm object for the V-REP robot object named NAME.

**Example**

```matlab
vrep.arm('IRB 140');
```

**See also**

VREP_arm

**VREP.camera**

Return VREP_camera object

`V.camera(name)` is a factory method that returns a VREP_camera object for the V-REP vision sensor object named NAME.

**See also**

VREP_camera

**VREP.char**

Convert to string

`V.char()` is a string representation the VREP parameters in human readable format.

**See also**

VREP.display
**VREP.checkcomms**

Check communications to V-REP simulator

V.rep.checkcomms() is true if a valid connection to the V-REP simulator exists.

**VREP.clearscene**

Clear current scene in the V-REP simulator

V.rep.clearscene() clears the current scene and switches to another open scene, if none, a new (default) scene is created.

**See also**

VREP.loadscene

**VREP.delete**

VREP object destructor

delete(v) closes the connection to the V-REP simulator

**VREP.display**

Display parameters

V.rep.display() displays the VREP parameters in compact format.

**Notes**

- This method is invoked implicitly at the command line when the result of an expression is a VREP object and the command has no trailing semicolon.

**See also**

VREP.char
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

VREP.getchildren

Find children of object

\[ C = \text{V.REP.getchildren}(H) \]

is a vector of integer handles for the children of the V-REP object denoted by the integer handle \( H \).

VREP.gethandle

Return handle to VREP object

\[ H = \text{V.REP.gethandle}(\text{name}) \]

is an integer handle for named V-REP object.

\[ H = \text{V.REP.gethandle}(\text{fmt}, \text{arglist}) \]

as above but the name is formed from \( \text{sprintf(fmt, arglist)} \).

See also

\text{sprintf}

VREP.getjoint

Get value of V-REP joint object

\[ \text{V.REP.getjoint}(H, q) \]

is the position of joint object with integer handle \( H \).

VREP.getobjname

Find names of objects

\[ \text{V.REP.getobjname}() \]

will display the names and object handle (integers) for all objects in the current scene.

\[ \text{name} = \text{V.REP.getobjname}(H) \]

will return the name of the object with handle \( H \).
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

VREP.getobjparam_bool

Get boolean parameter of a V-REP object

V.getobjparam_bool(H, param) gets the boolean parameter with identifier param of object with integer handle H.

VREP.getobjparam_float

Get float parameter of a V-REP object

V.getobjparam_float(H, param) gets the float parameter with identifier param of object with integer handle H.

VREP.getobjparam_int

Get integer parameter of a V-REP object

V.getobjparam_int(H, param) gets the integer parameter with identifier param of object with integer handle H.

VREP.getorient

Get orientation of V-REP object

R = V.getorient(H) is the orientation of the V-REP object with integer handle H as a rotation matrix (3 × 3).

EUL = V.getorient(H, 'euler', OPTIONS) as above but returns ZYZ Euler angles.

V.getorient(H, hrr) as above but orientation is relative to the position of object with integer handle HR.

V.getorient(H, hrr, 'euler', OPTIONS) as above but returns ZYZ Euler angles.

Options

See tr2eul.

Robotics Toolbox 10.3.1 for MATLAB®462 Copyright ©Peter Corke 2018
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

See also

VREP.setorient, VREP.getpos, VREP.getpose

VREP.getparam_bool

Get boolean parameter of the V-REP simulator

V.getparam_bool(name) is the boolean parameter with name name from the V-REP simulation engine.

Example

v = VREP();
v.getparam_bool('sim_boolparam_mirrors_enabled')

See also

VREP.setparam_bool

VREP.getparam_float

Get float parameter of the V-REP simulator

V.getparam_float(name) gets the float parameter with name name from the V-REP simulation engine.

Example

v = VREP();
v.getparam_float('sim_floatparam_simulation_time_step')

See also

VREP.setparam_float
VREP.getparam_int

Get integer parameter of the V-REP simulator

V.getparam_int(name) is the integer parameter with name name from the V-REP simulation engine.

Example

v = VREP();
v.getparam_int('sim_intparam_settings')

See also

VREP.setparam_int

VREP.getparam_str

Get string parameter of the V-REP simulator

V.getparam_str(name) is the string parameter with name name from the V-REP simulation engine.

Example

v = VREP();
v.getparam_str('sim_stringparam_application_path')

See also

VREP.setparam_str

VREP.getpos

Get position of V-REP object

V.getpos(H) is the position (1 × 3) of the V-REP object with integer handle H.

V.getpos(H, hr) as above but position is relative to the position of object with integer handle hr.
See also

VREP.setpose, VREP.getpose, VREP.getorient

VREP.getpose

Get pose of V-REP object

$T = \text{V.getpose}(H)$ is the pose of the V-REP object with integer handle $H$ as a homogeneous transformation matrix ($4 \times 4$).

$T = \text{V.getpose}(H, hr)$ as above but pose is relative to the pose of object with integer handle $R$.

See also

VREP.setpose, VREP.getpos, VREP.getorient

VREP.getversion

Get version of the V-REP simulator

V.getversion() is the version of the V-REP simulator server as an integer MNNNNN where $M$ is the major version number and NNNN is the minor version number.

VREP.hokuyo

Return VREP_hokuyo object

V.hokuyo(name) is a factory method that returns a VREP_hokuyo object for the V-REP Hokuyo laser scanner object named NAME.

See also

VREP_hokuyo
**VREP.loadmodel**

**Load a model into the V-REP simulator**

\[ m = \text{V.loadmodel}(\text{file, options}) \]

loads the model file `file` with extension `.ttm` into the simulator and returns a VREP_obj object that mirrors it in MATLAB.

**Options**

- `local` The file is loaded relative to the MATLAB client’s current folder, otherwise from the V-REP root folder.

**Example**

\[ \text{vrep.loadmodel('people/Walking Bill')}; \]

**Notes**

- If a relative filename is given in non-local (server) mode it is relative to the V-REP models folder.

**See also**

VREP.arm, VREP.camera, VREP.object

---

**VREP.loadscene**

**Load a scene into the V-REP simulator**

\[ \text{V.loadscene}(\text{file, options}) \]

loads the scene file `file` with extension `.ttt` into the simulator.

**Options**

- `local` The file is loaded relative to the MATLAB client’s current folder, otherwise from the V-REP root folder.

**Example**

\[ \text{vrep.loadscene('2IndustrialRobots')}; \]
Notes

- If a relative filename is given in non-local (server) mode it is relative to the V-REP scenes folder.

See also

VREP.clearscene

VREP.mobile

Return VREP_mobile object

V.mobile(name) is a factory method that returns a VREP_mobile object for the V-REP mobile base object named NAME.

See also

VREP_mobile

VREP.object

Return VREP_obj object

V.obj(name) is a factory method that returns a VREP_obj object for the V-REP object or model named NAME.

Example

vrep.obj('Walking Bill');

See also

VREP_obj
VREP.pausecomms

Pause communications to the V-REP simulator

V.pausecomms(p) pauses communications to the V-REP simulation engine if p is true else resumes it. Useful to ensure an atomic update of simulator state.

VREP.setjoint

Set value of V-REP joint object

V.setjoint(H, q) sets the position of joint object with integer handle H to the value q.

VREP.setjointtarget

Set target value of V-REP joint object

V.setjointtarget(H, q) sets the target position of joint object with integer handle H to the value q.

VREP.setjointvel

Set velocity of V-REP joint object

V.setjointvel(H, qd) sets the target velocity of joint object with integer handle H to the value qd.

VREP.setobjparam_bool

Set boolean parameter of a V-REP object

V.setobjparam_bool(H, param, val) sets the boolean parameter with identifier param of object H to value val.
### VREP.setobjparam_float

Set float parameter of a V-REP object

\[
\text{V.REP.setobjparam_float}(H, \text{param}, \text{val}) \text{ sets the float parameter with identifier } \text{param} \text{ of object } H \text{ to value } \text{val}.
\]

### VREP.setobjparam_int

Set Integer parameter of a V-REP object

\[
\text{V.REP.setobjparam_int}(H, \text{param}, \text{val}) \text{ sets the integer parameter with identifier } \text{param} \text{ of object } H \text{ to value } \text{val}.
\]

### VREP.setorient

Set orientation of V-REP object

\[
\text{V.REP.setorient}(H, R) \text{ sets the orientation of V-REP object with integer handle } H \text{ to that given by rotation matrix } R (3 \times 3).
\]

\[
\text{V.REP.setorient}(H, T) \text{ sets the orientation of V-REP object with integer handle } H \text{ to rotational component of homogeneous transformation matrix } T (4 \times 4).
\]

\[
\text{V.REP.setorient}(H, E) \text{ sets the orientation of V-REP object with integer handle } H \text{ to ZYZ Euler angles } (1 \times 3).
\]

\[
\text{V.REP.setorient}(H, x, hr) \text{ as above but orientation is set relative to the orientation of object with integer handle } hr.
\]

**See also**

VREP.getorient, VREP.setpos, VREP.setpose

### VREP.setparam_bool

Set boolean parameter of the V-REP simulator

\[
\text{V.REP.setparam_bool}(\text{name}, \text{val}) \text{ sets the boolean parameter with name } \text{name} \text{ to value } \text{val} \text{ within the V-REP simulation engine.}
\]
See also

VREP.setparam_bool

VREP.setparam_float

Set float parameter of the V-REP simulator

V.setparam_float(name, val) sets the float parameter with name name to value val within the V-REP simulation engine.

See also

VREP.getparam_float

VREP.setparam_int

Set integer parameter of the V-REP simulator

V.setparam_int(name, val) sets the integer parameter with name name to value val within the V-REP simulation engine.

See also

VREP.getparam_int

VREP.setparam_str

Set string parameter of the V-REP simulator

V.setparam_str(name, val) sets the integer parameter with name name to value val within the V-REP simulation engine.

See also

VREP.getparam_str
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

VREP.setpos

Set position of V-REP object

\( V \text{.setpos}(H, T) \) sets the position of V-REP object with integer handle \( H \) to \( T \) (1 \( \times \) 3).

\( V \text{.setpos}(H, T, hr) \) as above but position is set relative to the position of object with integer handle \( hr \).

See also

VREP.getpos, VREP.setpose, VREP.setorient

VREP.setpose

Set pose of V-REP object

\( V \text{.setpose}(H, T) \) sets the pose of V-REP object with integer handle \( H \) according to homogeneous transform \( T \) (4 \( \times \) 4).

\( V \text{.setpose}(H, T, hr) \) as above but pose is set relative to the pose of object with integer handle \( hr \).

See also

VREP.getpose, VREP.setpos, VREP.setorient

VREP.signal_float

Send a float signal to the V-REP simulator

\( V \text{.signal\_float}(name, val) \) send a float signal with name \( name \) and value \( val \) to the V-REP simulation engine.

VREP.signal_int

Send an integer signal to the V-REP simulator

\( V \text{.signal\_int}(name, val) \) send an integer signal with name \( name \) and value \( val \) to the V-REP simulation engine.

Robotics Toolbox 10.3.1 for MATLAB®471   Copyright ©Peter Corke 2018
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

VREP.signal_str

Send a string signal to the V-REP simulator

V.signal_str(name, val) send a string signal with name name and value val to the V-REP simulation engine.

VREP.simpause

Pause V-REP simulation

V.simpause() pauses the V-REP simulation engine. Use V.simstart() to resume the simulation.

See also

VREP.simstart

VREP.simstart

Start V-REP simulation

V.simstart() starts the V-REP simulation engine.

See also

VREP.simstop, VREP.simpause

VREP.simstop

Stop V-REP simulation

V.simstop() stops the V-REP simulation engine.

See also

VREP.simstart
VREP.youbot

Return VREP_youbot object

V.youbot(name) is a factory method that returns a VREP_youbot object for the V-REP YouBot object named NAME.

See also

VREP.youbot

---

VREP_arm

Mirror of V-REP robot arm object

Mirror objects are MATLAB objects that reflect the state of objects in the V-REP environment. Methods allow the V-REP state to be examined or changed.

This is a concrete class, derived from VREP_mirror, for all V-REP robot arm objects and allows access to joint variables.

Methods throw exception if an error occurs.

Example

vrep = VREP();
arm = vrep.arm('IRB140');
q = arm.getq();
arm.setq(zeros(1,6));
arm.setpose(T); % set pose of base

Methods

- `getq`: get joint coordinates
- `setq`: set joint coordinates
- `setjointmode`: set joint control parameters
- `animate`: animate a joint coordinate trajectory
- `teach`: graphical teach pendant

Superclass methods (VREP_obj)

- `getpos`: get position of object
setpos set position of object
getorient get orientation of object
setorient set orientation of object
getpose get pose of object given
setpose set pose of object

can be used to set/get the pose of the robot base.

**Superclass methods (VREP_mirror)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>getname</td>
<td>get object name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>setparam_bool</td>
<td>set object boolean parameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>setparam_int</td>
<td>set object integer parameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>setparam_float</td>
<td>set object float parameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>getparam_bool</td>
<td>get object boolean parameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>getparam_int</td>
<td>get object integer parameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>getparam_float</td>
<td>get object float parameter</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Properties**

n  Number of joints

**See also**

VREP_mirror, VREP_obj, VREP_arm, VREP_camera, VREP_hokuyo

**VREP_arm.VREP_arm**

Create a robot arm mirror object

arm = VREP_arm(name, options) is a mirror object that corresponds to the robot arm named name in the V-REP environment.

**Options**

‘fmt’, F  Specify format for joint object names (default ‘%s_joint%d’)
Notes

- The number of joints is found by searching for objects with names systematically derived from the root object name, by default named NAME_N where N is the joint number starting at 0.

See also

VREP.arm

VREP_arm.animate

Animate V-REP robot

R.animate(qt, options) animates the corresponding V-REP robot with configurations taken from consecutive rows of qt (M × N) which represents an M-point trajectory and N is the number of robot joints.

Options

‘delay’, D Delay (s) between frames for animation (default 0.1)
‘fps’, fps Number of frames per second for display, inverse of ‘delay’ option
‘[no]loop’ Loop over the trajectory forever

See also

SerialLink.plot

VREP_arm.getq

Get joint angles of V-REP robot

ARM.getq() is the vector of joint angles (1 × N) from the corresponding robot arm in the V-REP simulation.

See also

VREP_arm.setq
VREP_arm.setjointmode

Set joint mode

ARM.setjointmode(m, C) sets the motor enable m (0 or 1) and motor control C (0 or 1) parameters for all joints of this robot arm.

VREP_arm.setq

Set joint angles of V-REP robot

ARM.setq(q) sets the joint angles of the corresponding robot arm in the V-REP simulation to q (1 × N).

See also

VREP_arm.getq

VREP_arm.setqt

Set joint angles of V-REP robot

ARM.setq(q) sets the joint angles of the corresponding robot arm in the V-REP simulation to q (1 × N).

VREP_arm.teach

Graphical teach pendant

R.teach(options) drive a V-REP robot by means of a graphical slider panel.

Options

'degrees' Display angles in degrees (default radians)
'q0', q Set initial joint coordinates
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

Notes

- The slider limits are all assumed to be [-pi, +pi]

See also

SerialLink.plot

VREP_camera

Mirror of V-REP vision sensor object

Mirror objects are MATLAB objects that reflect the state of objects in the V-REP environment. Methods allow the V-REP state to be examined or changed.

This is a concrete class, derived from VREP_mirror, for all V-REP vision sensor objects and allows access to images and image parameters.

Methods throw exception if an error occurs.

Example

```matlab
vrep = VREP();
camera = vrep.camera('Vision_sensor');
im = camera.grab();
camera.setpose(T);
R = camera.getorient();
```

Methods

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>grab</td>
<td>return an image from simulated camera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>setangle</td>
<td>set field of view</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>setresolution</td>
<td>set image resolution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>setclipping</td>
<td>set clipping boundaries</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Superclass methods (VREP_obj)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>getpos</td>
<td>get position of object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>setpos</td>
<td>set position of object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>getorient</td>
<td>get orientation of object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>setorient</td>
<td>set orientation of object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>getpose</td>
<td>get pose of object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>setpose</td>
<td>set pose of object</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Robotics Toolbox 10.3.1 for MATLAB©477        Copyright ©Peter Corke 2018
can be used to set/get the pose of the robot base.

**Superclass methods (VREP_mirror)**

- `getname`  
  get object name

- `setparam_bool`  
  set object boolean parameter

- `setparam_int`  
  set object integer parameter

- `setparam_float`  
  set object float parameter

- `getparam_bool`  
  get object boolean parameter

- `getparam_int`  
  get object integer parameter

- `getparam_float`  
  get object float parameter

**See also**

VREP_mirror, VREP_obj, VREP_arm, VREP_camera, VREP_hokuyo

---

### VREP_camera.VREP_camera

**Create a camera mirror object**

*C = VREP_camera(name, options)* is a mirror object that corresponds to the vision sensor named `name` in the V-REP environment.

**Options**

- `'fov'`, `A`  
  Specify field of view in degrees (default 60)

- `'resolution'`, `N`  
  Specify resolution. If scalar `N × N` else `N(1) × N(2)`

- `'clipping'`, `Z`  
  Specify near `Z(1)` and far `Z(2)` clipping boundaries

**Notes**

- Default parameters are set in the V-REP environment
- Can be applied to “DefaultCamera” which controls the view in the simulator GUI

**See also**

VREP_obj
VREP_camera.char

Convert to string

V.char() is a string representation the VREP parameters in human readable foramt.

See also

VREP.display

VREP_camera.getangle

Fet field of view for V-REP vision sensor

fov = C.getangle(fov) is the field-of-view angle to fov in radians.

See also

VREP_camera.setangle

VREP_camera.getclipping

Get clipping boundaries for V-REP vision sensor

C.getclipping() is the near and far clipping boundaries (1 x 2) in the Z-direction as a 2-vector [NEAR,FAR].

See also

VREP_camera.setclipping

VREP_camera.getresolution

Get resolution for V-REP vision sensor

R = C.getresolution() is the image resolution (1 x 2) of the vision sensor R(1)xR(2).
See also

VREP_camera.setresolution

VREP_camera.grab

Get image from V-REP vision sensor

\( \text{im} = \text{C.grab(options)} \) is an image \((W \times H)\) returned from the V-REP vision sensor. C.grab(options) as above but the image is displayed using idisp.

Options

‘grey’  Return a greyscale image (default color).

Notes

- V-REP simulator must be running.
- Color images can be quite dark, ensure good light sources.
- Uses the signal ‘handle_rgb_sensor’ to trigger a single image generation.

See also

idisp, VREP.simstart

VREP_camera.setangle

Set field of view for V-REP vision sensor

\( \text{C.setangle(fov)} \) set the field-of-view angle to \( \text{fov} \) in radians.

See also

VREP_camera.getangle
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

VREP_camera.setclipping

Set clipping boundaries for V-REP vision sensor

\texttt{C.setclipping(near, far)} set clipping boundaries to the range of \( Z \) from \texttt{near} to \texttt{far}. Objects outside this range will not be rendered.

See also

\texttt{VREP_camera.getclipping}

VREP_camera.setresolution

Set resolution for V-REP vision sensor

\texttt{C.setresolution(R)} set image resolution to \( R \times R \) if \( R \) is a scalar or \( R(1)xR(2) \) if it is a 2-vector.

Notes

- By default V-REP cameras seem to have very low (32 \( \times \) 32) resolution.
- Frame rate will decrease as frame size increases.

See also

\texttt{VREP_camera.getresolution}

VREP_mirror

V-REP mirror object class

Mirror objects are MATLAB objects that reflect the state of objects in the V-REP environment. Methods allow the V-REP state to be examined or changed.

This abstract class is the root class for all V-REP mirror objects.

Methods throw exception if an error occurs.
### Methods

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>getname</td>
<td>get object name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>setparam_bool</td>
<td>set object boolean parameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>setparam_int</td>
<td>set object integer parameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>setparam_float</td>
<td>set object float parameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>getparam_bool</td>
<td>get object boolean parameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>getparam_int</td>
<td>get object integer parameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>getparam_float</td>
<td>get object float parameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>remove</td>
<td>remove object from scene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>display</td>
<td>display object info</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>char</td>
<td>convert to string</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Properties (read only)

- **h**: V-REP integer handle for the object
- **name**: Name of the object in V-REP
- **vrep**: Reference to the V-REP connection object

### Notes

- This has nothing to do with mirror objects in V-REP itself which are shiny reflective surfaces.

### See also

VREP_obj, VREP_arm, VREP_camera, VREP_hokuyo

### VREP_mirror.VREP_mirror

**Construct VREP_mirror object**

```matlab
obj = VREP_mirror(name)
```

is a V-REP mirror object that represents the object named `name` in the V-REP simulator.

### VREP_mirror.char

**Convert to string**

```matlab
OBJ.char()
```

is a string representation the VREP parameters in human readable format.
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

See also

VREP.display

VREP_mirror.display

Display parameters

OBJ.display() displays the VREP parameters in compact format.

Notes

- This method is invoked implicitly at the command line when the result of an expression is a VREP object and the command has no trailing semicolon.

See also

VREP.char

VREP_mirror.getname

Get object name

OBJ.getname() is the name of the object in the VREP simulator.

VREP_mirror.getparam_bool

Get boolean parameter of V-REP object

OBJ.getparam_bool(id) is the boolean parameter with id of the corresponding V-REP object.

See also VREP_mirror.setparam_bool, VREP_mirror.getparam_int, VREP_mirror.getparam_float.
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

**VREP_mirror.getparam_float**

Get float parameter of V-REP object

OBJ.getparam_float(id) is the float parameter with id of the corresponding V-REP object.

See also VREP_mirror.setparam_bool, VREP_mirror.getparam_bool, VREP_mirror.getparam_int.

**VREP_mirror.getparam_int**

Get integer parameter of V-REP object

OBJ.getparam_int(id) is the integer parameter with id of the corresponding V-REP object.

See also VREP_mirror.setparam_int, VREP_mirror.getparam_bool, VREP_mirror.getparam_float.

**VREP_mirror.setparam_bool**

Set boolean parameter of V-REP object

OBJ.setparam_bool(id, val) sets the boolean parameter with id to value val within the V-REP simulation engine.

See also VREP_mirror.getparam_bool, VREP_mirror.setparam_int, VREP_mirror.setparam_float.

**VREP_mirror.setparam_float**

Set float parameter of V-REP object

OBJ.setparam_float(id, val) sets the float parameter with id to value val within the V-REP simulation engine.

See also VREP_mirror.getparam_float, VREP_mirror.setparam_bool, VREP_mirror.setparam_int.
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

VREP_mirror.setparam_int

Set integer parameter of V-REP object

OBJ.setparam_int(id, val) sets the integer parameter with id to value val within the V-REP simulation engine.

See also VREP_mirror.getparam_int, VREP_mirror.setparam_bool, VREP_mirror.setparam_float.

VREP_obj

V-REP mirror of simple object

Mirror objects are MATLAB objects that reflect objects in the V-REP environment.

Methods allow the V-REP state to be examined or changed.

This is a concrete class, derived from VREP_mirror, for all V-REP objects and allows access to pose and object parameters.

Example

vrep = VREP();
bill = vrep.object('Bill'); % get the human figure Bill
bill.setpos([1,2,0]);
bill.setorient([0 pi/2 0]);

Methods

getpos get position of object
setpos set position of object
getorient get orientation of object
setorient set orientation of object
getpose get pose of object
setpose set pose of object

Superclass methods (VREP_mirror)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>getname</th>
<th>get object name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>setparam_bool</td>
<td>set object boolean parameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>setparam_int</td>
<td>set object integer parameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>setparam_float</td>
<td>set object float parameter</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Robotics Toolbox 10.3.1 for MATLAB®️485 Copyright ©Peter Corke 2018
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>getparam_bool</td>
<td>get object boolean parameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>getparam_int</td>
<td>get object integer parameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>getparam_float</td>
<td>get object float parameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>display</td>
<td>print the link parameters in human readable form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>char</td>
<td>convert to string</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See also

VREP_mirror, VREP_obj, VREP_arm, VREP_camera, VREP_hokuyo

VREP_obj.VREP_obj

VREP_obj mirror object constructor

v = VREP_base(name) creates a V-REP mirror object for a simple V-REP object type.

VREP_obj.getorient

Get orientation of V-REP object

V.getorient() is the orientation of the corresponding V-REP object as a rotation matrix (3 × 3).

V.getorient('euler', OPTIONS) as above but returns ZYZ Euler angles.

V.getorient(base) is the orientation of the corresponding V-REP object relative to the VREP_obj object base.

V.getorient(base, 'euler', OPTIONS) as above but returns ZYZ Euler angles.

Options

See tr2eul.

See also

VREP_obj.setorient, VREP_obj.getpos, VREP_obj.getpose
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

VREP_obj.getpos

Get position of V-REP object

V.getpos() is the position (1 × 3) of the corresponding V-REP object.
V.getpos(base) as above but position is relative to the VREP_obj object base.

See also

VREP_obj.setpos, VREP_obj.getorient, VREP_obj.getpose

VREP_obj.getpose

Get pose of V-REP object

V.getpose() is the pose (4 × 4) of the corresponding V-REP object.
V.getpose(base) as above but pose is relative to the pose the VREP_obj object base.

See also

VREP_obj.setpose, VREP_obj.getorient, VREP_obj.getpose

VREP_obj.setorient

Set orientation of V-REP object

V.setorient(R) sets the orientation of the corresponding V-REP to rotation matrix R (3 × 3).
V.setorient(T) sets the orientation of the corresponding V-REP object to rotational component of homogeneous transformation matrix T (4 × 4).
V.setorient(E) sets the orientation of the corresponding V-REP object to ZYZ Euler angles (1 × 3).
V.setorient(x, base) as above but orientation is set relative to the orientation of VREP_obj object base.

See also

VREP_obj.getorient, VREP_obj.setpos, VREP_obj.setpose
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

VREP_obj.setpos

Set position of V-REP object

V.setpos(T) sets the position of the corresponding V-REP object to T (1 × 3).
V.setpos(T, base) as above but position is set relative to the position of the VREP_obj object base.

See also
VREP_obj.getpos, VREP_obj.setorient, VREP_obj.setpose

VREP_obj.setpose

Set pose of V-REP object

V.setpose(T) sets the pose of the corresponding V-REP object to T (4 × 4).
V.setpose(T, base) as above but pose is set relative to the pose of the VREP_obj object base.

See also
VREP_obj.getpose, VREP_obj.setorient, VREP_obj.setpose

wtrans

Transform a wrench between coordinate frames

wt = wtrans(T, w) is a wrench (6 × 1) in the frame represented by the homogeneous transform T (4 × 4) corresponding to the world frame wrench w (6 × 1).
The wrenches w and wt are 6-vectors of the form [Fx Fy Fz Mx My Mz]'.

See also
tr2delta, tr2jac
CHAPTER 2. FUNCTIONS AND CLASSES

**xaxis**

Set X-axis scaling

- `xaxis(max)` set x-axis scaling from 0 to `max`.
- `xaxis(min, max)` set x-axis scaling from `min` to `max`.
- `xaxis([min, max])` as above.
- `xaxis` restore automatic scaling for x-axis.

**See also**

yaxis

---

**xyzlabel**

Label X, Y and Z axes

XYZLABEL label the x-, y- and z-axes with ‘X’, ‘Y’, and ‘Z’ respectively.

---

**yaxis**

Y-axis scaling

- `yaxis(max)` set y-axis scaling from 0 to `max`.
- `yaxis(min, max)` set y-axis scaling from `min` to `max`.
- `yaxis([min, max])` as above.
- `yaxis` restore automatic scaling for y-axis.

**See also**

yaxis